

REVISED

Mastermind Use of English

for Advanced &
Proficiency classes

Paul Hains
Anna Johnson

 *Burlington Books*

FREE MINI-COMPANION INCLUDED

CONTENTS

1 GRAMMAR	Present and Future Tenses Present Simple and Continuous; Present Perfect Simple and Continuous; future tenses; <i>be going to</i> ; <i>be to</i> + infinitive; expressions with future meaning	7
2 VOCABULARY	Business and Employment	14
REVIEW 1		20
3 GRAMMAR	Past Tenses, <i>used to</i> / <i>would</i> Past Simple and Continuous; Past Perfect Simple and Continuous; <i>used to</i> , <i>would</i> , future in the past	23
4 VOCABULARY	Entertainment	30
REVIEW 2		37
5 GRAMMAR	Modals, Semi-modals, Modal Perfects <i>can</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>be able to</i> , <i>may</i> , <i>might</i> , <i>must</i> , <i>have to</i> , <i>need</i> , <i>should</i> , <i>ought to</i> , <i>will</i> , <i>would</i> , <i>shall</i> , <i>used to</i> , <i>had better</i> , <i>be supposed to</i>	40
6 VOCABULARY	Body and Mind	47
REVIEW 3		53
7 GRAMMAR	Gerunds and Infinitives Uses of gerunds and infinitives; full or bare infinitive; verbs of perception / sensory verbs	56
8 VOCABULARY	Travel and Tourism	63
REVIEW 4		69
9 GRAMMAR	Passive, Causative Forms Passive forms; the causative and related forms; special structures with <i>have</i> / <i>get</i>	72
10 VOCABULARY	The Natural World	78
REVIEW 5		84
11 GRAMMAR	Reported Speech, Subjunctive Reported statements, imperatives and questions; reporting verbs; subjunctive	87
12 VOCABULARY	Language and Literature	95
REVIEW 6		102
13 GRAMMAR	Conditionals Zero, first, second, third, mixed conditionals; temporal clauses; inversion in conditionals; conditional sentences without <i>if</i>	105
14 VOCABULARY	Homes and Lifestyle	111
REVIEW 7		116
15 GRAMMAR	<i>wish</i> , Unreal Past <i>wish</i> ; <i>would rather</i> / <i>sooner</i> , <i>would prefer</i> ; <i>it's time</i> ; <i>as if</i>	119
16 VOCABULARY	Science and Technology	126
REVIEW 8		132

17 GRAMMAR	Word Order, Inversion and Emphasis Word order in sentences and questions; question tags; inversion; other ways of adding emphasis: cleft sentences, fronting, auxiliary verbs, reflexives	135
18 VOCABULARY	Geography and Weather	142
REVIEW 9		148
19 GRAMMAR	Relative Clauses and Participle Clauses Relative pronouns and clauses; quantifying / adding to relative clauses; reduced clauses; participle clauses	151
20 VOCABULARY	Arts and Crafts	158
REVIEW 10		165
21 GRAMMAR	Connectors and Conjunctions Adding information; showing cause / reason; expressing purpose; concession and contrast; sequencing ideas; making exceptions; giving examples; restating and explaining; introducing a new subject	168
22 VOCABULARY	Nutrition	174
REVIEW 11		181
23 GRAMMAR	Adjectives, Adverbs, Comparison Common ways of forming adjectives; order of adjectives; adverbs; adjectives and adverbs with similar forms; gradable and ungradable adjectives; comparison	184
24 VOCABULARY	Education and Assessment	191
REVIEW 12		197
25 GRAMMAR	Countable and Uncountable Nouns, Articles, Quantifiers Problems with plurals; uncountable nouns; articles: <i>a, an, the</i> , zero article; quantifiers: <i>some, any, each, every, (a) little, (a) few</i> , etc.	200
26 VOCABULARY	Shopping and Money	207
REVIEW 13		213
Appendices	Grammar Spelling Punctuation Phrasal Verbs Prepositional Phrases Dependent Prepositions British and American English	216 219 220 222 224 225 227

Present and Future Tenses

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. A barbecue this Sunday? That sounds / is sounding great!
2. The flat is currently decorated / is currently being decorated.
3. As soon as you've received / you will receive the fax, phone me.
4. New shopping malls have opened up / are opening up all the time.
5. The drug won't have taken / won't be taken effect yet – you only took it a minute ago.
6. He's so far ahead – he will be winning / is going to win easily.
7. Now that I've lost weight, my jeans fit / are fitting me better.
8. Kate is measuring / measures the window for new curtains.
9. "I'm visiting my sister on Sunday." "Will you be staying / have stayed for lunch?"
10. I know Alex quite well but I don't consider / am not considering him a friend.
11. In our history class we are discussing / have been discussing the causes of World War II all week.
12. Unfortunately, I don't have / am not having a birthday party this year.

B. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning to the first one.

1. The show will start any minute now.
 - a. The show is currently starting.
 - b. The show is about to start.
2. Our taxi has arrived.
 - a. The taxi is coming.
 - b. The taxi is here.
3. My brothers still play chess.
 - a. My brothers haven't finished their chess game.
 - b. My brothers play chess sometimes.
4. John hasn't been to London for ages.
 - a. It is a long time since John went to London.
 - b. John arrived in London a short time ago.
5. Uncle Ron is here for a week.
 - a. Uncle Ron has already spent a week here.
 - b. Uncle Ron is spending a week here.
6. Trudy is being very stubborn.
 - a. Trudy is a very stubborn person.
 - b. Trudy is behaving stubbornly at the moment.
7. Jim is constantly sending me text messages.
 - a. I get messages from Jim all the time.
 - b. I sometimes get text messages from Jim.
8. The match is to be played at the stadium.
 - a. They will play the match at the stadium.
 - b. They are playing the match at the stadium now.

Score: / 20

RULES

PRESENT SIMPLE

- fact, general truth, permanent situation
- habit, regular occurrence
- state (see Note 1)
- declaration
- newspaper headline
- live sports commentary
- instructions
- plot of a film, story or joke
- definite event in the future (timetable, schedule, date)

Love **changes** everything.
Buses to York **depart** on the hour.
This land **belongs** to my family.
We **apologise** for any inconvenience.
Fire **breaks out** in city centre!
He **shoots**. He **scores**!
You **fry** the onion in oil, then **add** the chicken.
In the end Rose **is rescued**, but Jack **dies**.
The law **comes** into effect on May 1st next year.

Time expressions: usually, always, every day, in the morning, once / twice a year, nowadays

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

- action happening at or around the time of speaking
- temporary situation
- changing / developing situation
- future arrangement
- annoying or amusing actions that happen very often (with *always, constantly, forever*)

I'm **warning** you – I won't accept any excuses.
Sue **is staying** with her cousin in Rome.
More families **are buying** a second car.
The board **is meeting** in London next month.
Tim **is always losing** his keys.

Time expressions: for the time being, currently, at present, now, this week / year, at the moment

Notes

1. **Stative verbs** Some verbs are not usually used in the continuous form because they describe states, not actions. (See Grammar Appendix, page 216.)
2. The Present Simple form of *be* + adjective is used to describe character.
Greg **is** selfish. He would never put himself out to help anyone. (*he is always selfish*)
The Present Continuous of *be* suggests that somebody is behaving a certain way at one time or about one thing.
Shelly, you **are being** selfish. Let the others have a turn on the computer too! (*behaviour at a particular time*)

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE *have / has* + past participle

- recent or past event which is relevant to the present without a definite time reference
- state, habit or action which started in the past and continues up to the present (with *for* and *since*)
- to show completion, achievement, or number of times something has occurred up to the present
- with *first time / best / ever / never*

The college **has introduced** a media studies course.
Tom **has dreamed** of stardom **since** childhood.
I've **cracked** the code!
They **have been** to this exhibition three times so far.
This is the **best** book I **have ever read**.

Time expressions: since, for, just, already, recently, lately, always, yet, so far, ever, never, up until now, ever since, for ages, for a while, for long

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS *have / has been* + verb -ing

- repeated or continuing activity, relevant to the present or about to change
- action which started in the past but has not yet been completed, or to emphasise the duration of an action, not the results

The cast **has been rehearsing** hard for the production.
The council **has been debating** proposals for a new road for years.

Time expressions: since, for, all day / afternoon, how long, ever since, for a while, for long

Note

have been / have gone

Todd's **been to** that resort – why don't you ask him what it was like? (*has visited and returned*)
"Where's Jen?" "Oh, she's **gone to** the library to study." (*went there but hasn't returned yet*)

FUTURE SIMPLE *will* + bare infinitive

- prediction for the future
- event considered certain
- decision, offer, etc. made at the time of speaking
- with expressions such as: *I think / hope / promise, I'm sure, definitely, probably*

Time expressions: next week / year, tomorrow, shortly, presently, soon, in a while, in 2050, in two weeks' time

FUTURE CONTINUOUS *will be* + verb *-ing*

- action that will be in progress at a specific time in the future
- action that is planned (similar to using Present Continuous to talk about the future)
- what is expected to happen at the moment of speaking or soon after
- polite question about somebody's plans

This time next week, we'll be sipping cocktails by the pool!

We'll be interviewing candidates tomorrow.

Our guests will be arriving any minute now!

Will you be attending the wedding?

Time expressions: this time next year, all day tomorrow, from now on, a week today

FUTURE PERFECT *will have* + past participle

- prediction that something will be completed before a specific time in the future
- period of time that will be completed at a specific time in the future
- what we expect or know to have happened already

I'll have finished this book by the end of the week.

We'll have known each other for 10 years next month!

The film will have started by now.

Time expressions: next month / year, by now / then, by the time

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS *will have been* + verb *-ing*

action in progress that will be completed in the future (to emphasise the duration rather than the action)

By the time we arrive, we will have been travelling for 20 hours.

Time expressions: by the time, by 11 o'clock

be going to

- intention, talking about plans
- prediction for the future based on evidence in the present

We're going to organise a school reunion next year.

Judging by the reviews, her new record is going to be a hit!

Time expressions: see Future Simple

be to + bare infinitive

- formal schedule, arrangement
- future obligation, plan, instruction
- newspaper headline – future event possible (without *be*)

The president is to meet the prime minister tomorrow.

New students are to report to the office on arrival. (formal)

BECKHAM TO ASK FOR NEW PAY DEAL!

EXPRESSIONS WITH FUTURE MEANING

be about + full infinitive (= going to happen very soon)

Hurry up! The train is about to leave.

be due + full infinitive (= expected)

Our flight is due to take off at 7.00 but there might be a delay.

be on the verge / point / brink of (= likely to happen soon)

Scientists are on the verge of finding a cure for AIDS.

Notes

1. There is often little or no difference in meaning between ***will*** and ***be going to***. Intonation affects meaning, though. *Will* is more common in formal, written English. *I will pass* my exams this time. (emphasis on "will" implies strong intention)
2. In clauses beginning with a time word with future reference (*when, as soon as, once, before, after, till, until, by the time*), we use Present Simple or Present Perfect, **not** future tenses.

We'll phone you as soon as we get to the hotel. (***not:*** as soon as we will get to the hotel *X*)

Once you've read the book, you'll know what I mean. (to emphasise completion = when you have read the whole book)

PRACTICE

A. Complete the dialogues with the correct form of the verbs given.

1. "I think I **will phone** (phone) Mary to see if she wants to come to the cinema with us."
"That's not such a good idea. She (rest)."
2. "What are you going to do once your new novel (publish)?"
"I (go) on an extended publicity tour and then I think I'll take it easy for a while."
3. "..... (consider) your job to be a difficult one?"
"Not really. That's why I (think) of finding something more challenging."
4. "I (work) late every day this week."
"I suppose that means that I (not see) you until Saturday."
5. "Julie! You (be) very silly today."
"Sorry, Miss. I promise I (pay) attention from now on."
6. "I (read) the same newspaper for years."
"I suppose it (deliver) to your house every day."
7. "Brrr! It (get) cold in here."
"You're right. I (turn) the heating on."
8. "..... (still plan) to do a media studies course next year?"
"Actually, I've changed my mind. I (study) environmental science instead."

B. Complete the sentences with the time expressions below. There are more words than you need.

all night • from now on • shortly • nowadays • for long • lately
ever since • forever • all day tomorrow • currently • by now

1. I'm sorry to say we do not have any vacancies. Possibly there will be some in the near future.
2. I've been studying and I can't keep my eyes open.
3. The law has been changed; there are going to be tougher penalties for speeding.
4. People are getting me confused with my sister.
5. Have you heard anything from Gavin ?
6. It's not worth calling Janet at the office. She will have left
7. Dan and I met in 2001 and we've been sharing a flat
8. Fasten your seat belts as we will be starting our descent into the airport.

C. Rewrite the sentences below starting with the words given.

1. It will take them three weeks to finish renovating the shop.
In three weeks, they
2. Mr Thomas started teaching 15 years ago.
Mr Thomas has
3. The committee is announcing the name of the new chairperson tomorrow.
The name of the new chairperson will
4. It seems like Simon and Liz might split up soon.
Simon and Liz are on the
5. John will spend nine months working on his thesis before he completes it.
By the time he completes it, John
6. When is your next doctor's appointment?
When are you due
7. You can't know how difficult it is to get a novel published until you try.
Once you've tried to get a novel published,
8. Sally never seems to remember her friends' birthdays.
Sally is

D. Write full sentences using the words given.

1. Managers / due to / meet with / union leaders / tomorrow. **Managers are due to meet with union leaders tomorrow.**
2. I / on the point of / resign / because of stress.
3. What time / next train / due to / arrive?
4. The country / not yet / on the point of / declare war.
5. I think / the lecture / about to / start.
6. You / not to touch / any of the photographic equipment.
7. The committee / to announce / its decision / on Monday.

E. Complete each paragraph using the correct form of one of the following verbs. There may be more than one possible answer.

not submit • welcome • finalise • distribute • hold

1. “The programme of events for this year’s student induction week (1) **has been finalised**. The principal (2) the new students at 12 o’clock on Monday 5th September in the main hall. Individual departments (3) meetings that afternoon, so booklists can be handed out. By the end of the day, tutors (4) the lists to all new students. Second-year students who (5) their course request forms must do so by Wednesday 7th September at the latest. ”

wait • recognise • get • take • arrange • drive

2. “I’ve got to go to the doctor’s the afternoon you arrive. I hope you don’t mind, but I (1) for someone to come and pick you up. When you (2) to the airport, go straight to the information desk, where Tina (3) with a sign with your name on it, so you (4) her right away. She (5) you to my house. I (6) a few days off work so we can do some sightseeing together. Can’t wait to see you! ”

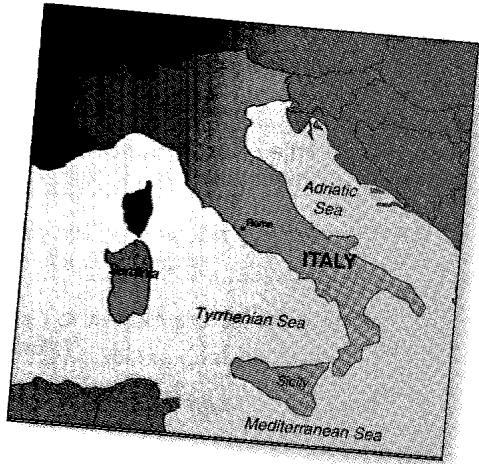
appeal • measure • not need • realise • consider • buy • grow • keep

3. “So, you (1) getting a pet. Hamsters and canaries are so old-fashioned. The local pet shop has snakes and lizards, and the idea of an iguana in your bedroom really (2) to you. But before you (3) one on impulse, there are a few things you should know. A baby iguana (4) a lot of space at first, but it (5) very quickly. An adult male (6) up to six feet long. Where (7) a creature of that size? And (8) that it will probably live for up to 20 years? ”

F. Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

WHERE LIFE IS LONG

The Italian island of Sardinia holds the world record for the highest percentage of people who (1) to be over 100 years old. Most of the locals (2) that the reason lies in the place itself – the air or the food, for example. But scientists (3) another hypothesis. For centuries, the islanders (4) rarely intermarried with outsiders, so it is very likely that Sardinians are genetically similar to each other. Therefore, it's logical to assume that they (5) a gene for longevity. A team of doctors and biologists (6) the proteins which (7) contained in the Y chromosome. They are (8) to find the key gene, but the research coordinator confidently (9) his team to come up with an answer some time in the near future. (10) they do, the discovery will certainly generate a great deal of interest.



- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A have lived | B are living | C are going to live | D will live |
| 2. A are believing | B will believe | C have believed | D believe |
| 3. A are now investigating | B do now investigate | C are due to investigate | D now investigate |
| 4. A are | B will be | C have | D are being |
| 5. A are sharing | B have been sharing | C have shared | D share |
| 6. A have been analysing | B have been analysed | C are analysed | D analyse |
| 7. A is | B has been | C are | D will be |
| 8. A until | B yet | C already | D still |
| 9. A is expecting | B is going to expect | C will expect | D expects |
| 10. A By the time | B As soon as | C So far | D Before |

G. Complete the passage with the correct auxiliary.

been ● will ● being ● are ● has ● have ● is ● do ● be

Unusual Spa Treatments

Spas all over the world offer a wide variety of treatments – some traditional, some more unusual – and new treatments (1) being developed all the time.

The Yunessun Spa in the hot spring town of Hakone, Japan has long (2) known for its novelty treatments. For years now, the establishment (3) been attracting clients with treatments such as its green tea spa and its wine bath. Now yet another new treatment is (4) enjoyed by clients: the noodle bath. According to officials at the spa, a noodle bath is highly beneficial to the health. By taking one, they claim, not only (5) you be speeding up your metabolism but cleansing your skin too. Because of health regulations, patrons (6) not bathe in water with edible noodles floating in it but in water containing the pork broth that this Japanese staple (7) traditionally cooked in. Whether or not taking a dip in pork broth is really good for us is yet to (8) proved. What is really attracting the public is probably the novelty value of the noodle bath rather than its health-giving properties. Before long, the spa will no doubt (9) come up with another novel idea to attract attention and draw in the crowds. I wonder what this will be.



EXAM PRACTICE

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

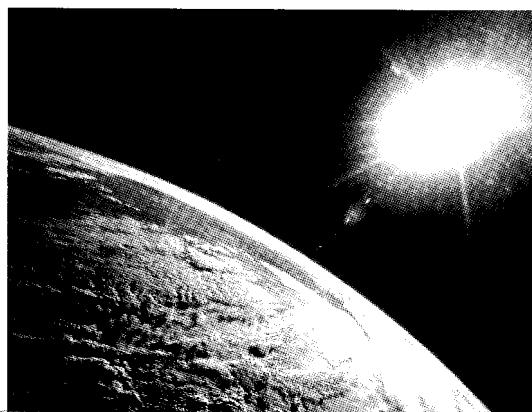
1. The lecture hall is full of students, but Professor Wilkins has not arrived.
 - a. still
 - b. yet
 - c. already
 - d. just
2. When the ferry the island, get ready to disembark.
 - a. is approached
 - b. will approach
 - c. approaches
 - d. will have approached
3. All applicants out this form on arrival.
 - a. are filled
 - b. to fill
 - c. filling
 - d. are to fill
4. The staff has known that they might lose their jobs.
 - a. recently
 - b. for long
 - c. so far
 - d. for a while
5. "Are you over your illness now?"
"Almost, but I tired easily."
 - a. still get
 - b. have still got
 - c. will still have got
 - d. still am getting
6. "I'm going away next weekend."
"Will you a camera?"
 - a. taking
 - b. be taking
 - c. have taken
 - d. be taken
7. The demonstration is due in an hour.
 - a. will start
 - b. of starting
 - c. to start
 - d. be starting
8. I'm taking the dog to the vet as it anything for days.
 - a. won't be eating
 - b. hasn't to eat
 - c. isn't eating
 - d. hasn't eaten

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

SPACE TRAVEL: GOING WHERE NO MAN HAS GONE BEFORE

Scientists and businesspeople alike are waking up to the idea that the next development in tourism is probably (1) to be mass participation in space travel. Up (2) now, space exploration and research have been the domain of governmental organisations, but private enterprises are (3) involved because they recognise that (4) is a huge demand for this new experience. Analysts predict that spacecraft will (5) making as many as five million trips (6) year by 2030. In fact, the technology (7) exists to transport and accommodate people but it has not yet (8) developed for commercial purposes, despite the large numbers of people who are willing to pay whatever it (9) for the experience of seeing earth from orbit. It is simply a matter of (10) before the first few passengers get their chance, and once it becomes more common, prices (11) fall and an increased range of activities will be made available.

In space, gravity has no effect; as (12) as they are in orbit, travellers will feel weightless. (13) the idea of a few days floating around a supermodern hotel, with a view of the stars and the earth outside the window, appeal to you? If (14) , you may be interested to learn that the first fully commercial spacecraft is going to blast off in the very near future. Bookings are already (15) taken, so what are you waiting for?



TOPIC VOCABULARY

READ AND ANSWER

A. Read about four people below. Then answer the questions (a-i). More than one answer may be possible.

1. **Bob** has been on the dole since he was made redundant last year. He scans the Situations Vacant columns hopefully every week. He was a foreman at a factory until the board decided to make cutbacks because of falling profits. Bob is just one of thousands of employees who have been laid off in the manufacturing sector recently.
2. **Jenny** is a freelance journalist so she doesn't have a permanent contract with a single employer. She values her freedom and is not interested in climbing the career ladder.
3. **Tim** recently finished his apprenticeship and has just been taken on as a junior stylist at a central hairdressing salon. He took the post because it offers good long-term prospects.
4. **Alison** is a senior executive at an advertising agency. She delegates routine tasks such as paperwork to her PA but she still works overtime on a regular basis in order to cope with her workload. She receives a generous salary and her perks include a company car and private health insurance.

Who ...

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|--|-------|
| a. puts in long hours? | | Alison | |
| b. has an assistant? | | f. is looking for a job? | |
| c. receives unemployment benefit? | | g. used to supervise others? | |
| d. seems ambitious? | | h. receives extra benefits in addition to pay? | |
| e. is inexperienced? | | i. works for different companies? | |

B. Read the following letters. Find words or phrases for the definitions below.

1. JOB REFERENCE

To whom it may concern,

Diana Cole has been working for Trusty Catering Services PLC since January 2001. She was initially employed as a clerical assistant, but was promoted to office manager in June 2002. Her duties include all aspects of office administration and her organisational abilities have resulted in a dramatic increase in office efficiency. Her people skills are highly developed and she is popular with her colleagues. She has shown herself to be hardworking and trustworthy, and has risen to the challenge of a managerial position admirably. Ms Cole will be missed at Trusty Catering, but we realise that she will be better able to further her career in a larger organisation.

Paul McBain
Human Resources Manager

1. tasks which are part of your job
2. organisation / management
3. other members of staff
4. get ahead
5. manager in charge of personnel

2. LETTER TO A FRIEND

Dear Sharon,

Are you still job hunting? Well, the firm I work for is going to need someone to help out in the marketing department for a few months to cover for a woman who'll be on maternity leave. It will only be a short-term contract, but they might keep you on if they like you. The salary isn't bad - you'd earn a bit more than you get now. If you're interested, send your CV to the personnel manager (her name's Janice Wilcox). I can have a word with her too - I'll tell her what an asset you'd be to the company!

Let me know if you decide to apply.

Ellen

1. company
2. time taken off work while having a baby
3. temporary
4. pay
5. document giving details of your educational and professional background
6. useful and valuable person

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Choose two verbs from the list that combine with the nouns below. Use each word only once.

set • circulate • hold • select • negotiate • demand
set up • draft • run • recruit • meet • chair

1. **circulate**
draft ➤ a memo

4. ➤ staff

2. ➤ a pay rise

5. ➤ a meeting

3. ➤ a business

6. ➤ a deadline

B. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.



- handle
cope
administer
- name
occupation
location
- efficient
effective
affectionate
- domain
field
aspect
- leave
permit
permission
- outlook
prospect
perspective
- significance
priority
expertise
1. a. Shop assistants are trained to **handle** difficult customers.
b. A new department was set up to the building project.
c. Regular exercise helps me with stress.

 2. a. You must state your name, age and on the form.
b. Ruth loves nursing – she says she has found her true
c. What of work are you in these days?

 3. a. Chloe is a loving and child.
b. The new secretary is very at organising our schedules.
c. The government believes that the new measures are the most way to tackle unemployment.

 4. a. The managing director is responsible for all of the business.
b. Professor Jarvis is considered an expert in his
c. I can't answer technical questions about the product – that's the of the engineers.

 5. a. You have to ask your supervisor for to leave work early.
b. Foreign nationals need to have a work to be legally employed.
c. Each employee is entitled to 20 days' per year.

 6. a. The for the economy in this country is quite good.
b. From a financial , the decision to lay off the workers was a good one.
c. A position with a large corporation can offer good if you're willing to work hard.

 7. a. This firm must make customer service its
b. The trade agreement is of great for this country's future.
c. Sarah has considerable in international sales.

C. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with adjectives formed from the words below. Make any necessary changes.

addition	construct	excess	innovate	occupation	residence
administer	co-operate	experiment	instruct	office	select
benefit	department	extend	intention	organisation	support
commerce	education	finance	invent	person	vocation
compete	effect	include	logic	preference	
confidence	emotion	influence	manager	profession	

-ive

administrative

-al

additional

-ial

beneficial

2. Complete the sentences below with adjectives you formed in Exercise 1. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. They have developed a(n) sales strategy.
2. I enjoy working with her because she's very
3. She sold the company for reasons.
4. Our boss has excellent skills.
5. The human resources department keeps records about each staff member.

3. Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. He gets treatment because he's the manager's son.
 - a. competitive
 - b. influential
 - c. preferential
 - d. emotional
2. Young people need guidance before making decisions about what to study.
 - a. vocational
 - b. selective
 - c. intentional
 - d. commercial
3. The information that Sonia gave me was so I can't reveal anything.
 - a. residential
 - b. co-operative
 - c. confidential
 - d. occupational
4. I think going to the gym every day is – twice a week is enough.
 - a. excessive
 - b. supportive
 - c. instructive
 - d. additional
5. Do you need permission to open a detective agency?
 - a. vocational
 - b. official
 - c. beneficial
 - d. influential
6. Doctors are hopeful that the new drugs will be effective, but the treatment is still at an stage.
 - a. educational
 - b. inclusive
 - c. inventive
 - d. experimental

D. RELATED WORDS increase decrease

1. Mark the following verbs + (an increase in size or strength) or - (a decrease in size or strength).

boost contract diminish enlarge extend swell
broaden deteriorate downsize expand shrink widen

2. Complete the sentences using the correct form of a verb from Exercise 1.

1. Don't wash that T-shirt at high temperatures – it will **shrink**
2. When I twisted my knee, it wasn't too painful but it started to immediately.
3. At 105, it's hardly surprising that Mary's health is
4. The managers gave the team a bonus to their confidence.
5. If you heat metal, it ; when it cools, it
6. We were enjoying our holiday so much that we our stay by three nights.
7. That's a beautiful photo! You should it and have it framed!
8. Working abroad for a year was a great opportunity to my horizons.
9. After such heavy losses, the company's directors have no choice but to
10. There are plans to the business by opening two new shops.
11. The main road needs to be to cope with increased traffic.
12. Houses in the area in value by 20% last year.

E. METAPHOR AND MEANING

Words and expressions connect success with **up** or **high**.

Failure and negativity are sometimes connected with **down** or **low**.

a **top** job (= a *very good job*)

low status

1. Mark the following words (for up) or (for down) .

top  under fall dive
bottom fly rise

2. Match the words and phrases in colour to their meanings.

- | | | |
|---|-------|--|
| 1. When the economy does badly, it is the small businesses that go under. | | a. sudden success |
| 2. The actress was flying high after she won the Oscar. | | b. did not work out as planned |
| 3. The company is looking to recruit high-flying salespeople. | | c. happy as a result of success |
| 4. Our holiday plans fell through because Josh couldn't get leave. | | d. very poor people |
| 5. You often see down-and-outs sleeping under bridges in central London. | | e. go out of business |
| 6. The young novelist was unprepared for his meteoric rise to fame. | | f. successful and determined to achieve more |

3. Explain the meaning of the words and expressions in colour.

1. Maria will do whatever it takes to reach the top in her profession. **succeed**
2. This suburb is popular with young up-and-coming businesspeople.
3. The stock market took a dive yesterday.
4. I'm sure business will pick up before Christmas.
5. His career really took off after he appeared on TV.
6. He started out as a lowly shop assistant.
7. Gregson is the new rising star of the computer industry.

F. MULTIPLE MEANINGS apply deal resign

Words can have more than one meaning or take on new meanings when they combine with different words.

Match the words in colour to their meanings. Give the part of speech for **apply**, **deal** and **resign** in each sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I'll apply but I don't think I'll get accepted. verb | a. concentrate one's efforts |
| 2. In the laboratory, you have to apply the theory you have studied. | b. leave a job |
| 3. Robert needs to apply himself more to his studies. | c. unfair treatment |
| 4. The special offer only applies to people travelling together. | d. give out cards |
| 5. I learnt a great deal on the course. | e. put into practice |
| 6. I won that hand! Whose turn is it to deal now? | f. agreement |
| 7. How should I deal with angry customers? | g. accept an unpleasant situation |
| 8. A British firm has just made a billion dollar deal with a French company. | h. formally ask for a position |
| 9. We felt we'd been given a raw deal. | i. handle |
| 10. Under pressure from the club chairman, the manager resigned. | j. large amount |
| 11. John resigned himself to a few years of low pay until he qualified. | k. be valid |

G. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following newspaper article with the correct prepositions.

GRADUATE JOBLESSNESS

Large numbers of young people who completed university and went out in search (1) a job last summer are still (2) of work. A rise (3) the number of graduates this year, together with cuts (4) graduate training schemes, have resulted in record levels (5) graduate unemployment this year. What can you do to make sure that you're not (6) this position when you

finish your studies? Career advisors recommend working (7) nothing during the school holidays to get experience (8) the kind (9) work you want to do eventually. This tactic may even result (10) a permanent position once the firm sees what you are capable (11) doing.

H. IN OTHER WORDS Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. It was none of their business. | a. increased profits |
| 2. It won't work in practice. | b. told me what they thought of my work |
| 3. They boosted company earnings. | c. is not feasible |
| 4. They got down to business. | d. found the task difficult |
| 5. They are our superiors. | e. didn't concern them |
| 6. They had their work cut out for them. | f. offered to work unpaid |
| 7. They gave me detailed feedback. | g. started working |
| 8. They did voluntary work. | h. have higher status than us |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

Key Word Transformations often test the grammar which follows words or expressions, (e.g., prepositions, gerunds or infinitives).

1. Helena is incredibly ambitious. **DETERMINED**
Helena is determined to reach the top.
2. Do you think Julie could manage the department? **CAPABLE**
Is Julie the department?
3. George knows that he'll never become a professional footballer. **RESIGNED**
George has a professional footballer.
4. They were about to make a deal, but they couldn't agree on the price. **FELL**
The deal a disagreement about the price.

5. He decided to change jobs because he didn't like working long hours. **COPE**
He decided to change jobs because the long working hours.
6. The factory laid off 20 workers last month. **REDUNDANT**
Twenty workers last month.
7. The best solution to the problem is to downsize the company. **EFFECTIVE**
Downsizing the company solve the problem.
8. You'll find it very difficult to finish the project on time. **CUT**
You'll have your work finishing the project on time.

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Cook Your Way to the Top

When a vacancy for a senior (1) post comes up, there may be more than a thousand (2), so many corporations hire (3) consultants to handle the selection process. One team in Germany uses an unusual method for putting potential (4) to the test: they get them to cook a meal together! This way the process of (5) becomes a highly (6) one because it demonstrates how a candidate performs under pressure when faced with a (7) task. Human resource managers attend the sessions and assess the candidates' (8) and communication skills. Cooking, they say, is an ideal task since it allows for (9) contact with those they are thinking of taking on, without creating a (10) environment, as participants must work together to create the menu.

MANAGE

APPLY

PROFESSION

EMPLOY

RECRUIT

EFFECT

PRACTICE

ORGANISE

PERSON

COMPETE

C. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

WHERE MANNERS ARE THE KEY TO SUCCESS

Whatever (1) of work you're in, there's a lot to learn when you start a new job. At big Japanese companies, new employees have to undergo several weeks of formal instruction in the basics of how to behave at work. After mastering the company song, new (2) are taught everything from how to shake hands to how to hand over a cup of tea correctly. In Japan, manners play an important role in all (3) of adult life. Business has its own rules of behaviour, which must be adhered to. Business cards, for example, must be presented and received with the body held at a specific angle. Cards must be (4) respectfully as they are considered an (5) of the holder's identity. An (6) businessman, for instance, who put a card he had just (7) into his trouser pocket would cause great offence. This would seriously (8) his chances of closing a deal. Therefore, the correct gestures have to be learnt and practised.

Even after completing the training course, new employees may still find that corporate life is not easy. Workers at large Japanese firms are expected to sacrifice a great (9) for the company. They often live in company-owned accommodation with their colleagues and put in (10) hours at work. In offices, workers are not (11) to leave until their (12) have done so.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A line | B way | C route | D ladder |
| 2. A employers | B contracts | C recruits | D resources |
| 3. A perspectives | B aspects | C worlds | D sides |
| 4. A delegated | B demanded | C handled | D dealt |
| 5. A extension | B expansion | C asset | D occupation |
| 6. A innovative | B impersonal | C unemployed | D inexperienced |
| 7. A taken on | B received | C circulated | D set up |
| 8. A fall | B shrink | C downsize | D diminish |
| 9. A status | B deal | C increase | D field |
| 10. A broad | B high | C long | D great |
| 11. A clear | B free | C official | D feasible |
| 12. A employees | B staff | C prospects | D superiors |

REVIEW 1

- A. OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

TAKE CONTROL OF YOUR TIME

Busy people, whether they are mothers or executives, have to manage their time. Most people have their work (1) out for them getting everything done in 24 hours, but there (2) some useful principles of time management that can be applied (3) almost any line of (4) Planning your time not only helps you get more done, but also relieves stress (5) making you feel in control. Planning also helps you cope (6) large tasks, which will seem less daunting (7) they are broken down into the steps that (8) required. For instance, when writing assignments, plan (9) many hours you will need for research, writing your first draft, checking and so on. It is best to overestimate the amount of time a task will take, as (10) practice there will probably (11) interruptions or delays. Others (12) be satisfied when you meet your deadline and even more impressed if you manage to deliver the assignment early. The best plans cover all areas of your life, not just work. Typically, we (13) time with family and friends only when we (14) fulfilled our other obligations. However, including personal time in your schedule will result in a better balance (15) work and leisure.

- B. WORD FORMATION** Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Superwoman

In the 1970s, as more and more women began to pursue careers, a new icon was created: *Superwoman*. Women were told that they could (1) combine motherhood, homemaking and a career. Nowadays, when two salaries are considered a (2) necessity, working mothers are the norm rather than the exception. Most (3) are open to women today, from surgery to stockbroking, and there are many women with (4) positions in government and business. In Britain, women now hold about 25% of (5) positions. Despite their (6) success, many women are finding the struggle to meet the demands of home and work incredibly (7) A recent survey revealed that most women believe that children suffer (8) if both parents work. It seems that although women have proved that they can equal male (9) in the world of work, not all women are convinced that being Superwoman is worth the sacrifice. However, in today's (10) job market, it is not easy to take time off to stay home with children.

SUCCEED
FINANCE
OCCUPY
INFLUENCE
MANAGER
PROFESSION
STRESS
EMOTION
ACHIEVE
COMPETE

- C. GAPPED SENTENCES** Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. A victory in this race would really the athlete's confidence.
Working through the exercises in this book will your vocabulary.
The advertising campaign helped to profits.
2. We've on a new warehouse assistant on a temporary contract.
Sales of new cars have a dive this season.
His career as an actor has really off.
3. If you successfully pass the training course, you will be offered a permanent
I'm thinking of applying for the of teaching assistant.
Many of my friends' exam results were not good enough for university, but luckily I was not in the same
4. There has been a in the number of Internet users this year.
It must be difficult to cope with a sudden to fame.
Employees were given a 10% pay at the beginning of the financial year.

D. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The storm to be over now.
 - a. has appeared
 - b. is appearing
 - c. appears
 - d. is appeared
2. "You look tired."

"I know, I haven't been sleeping well"

 - a. presently
 - b. currently
 - c. shortly
 - d. lately
3. "Why did they stop the tennis game?"
 "They could see that it was rain."
 - a. due to
 - b. going
 - c. about to
 - d. the point of
4. "Can we use the pool yet?"
 "No, it"
 - a. is still being cleaned
 - b. isn't cleaned yet
 - c. is yet to clean
 - d. is still cleaning
5. "Should I phone Annie now?"
 "I wouldn't. She the baby to bed about now."
 - a. is putting
 - b. will be putting
 - c. going to put
 - d. will have put
6. Farmers a protest against falling grain prices.
 - a. are to stage
 - b. staging
 - c. are staged
 - d. will be staged
7. The managing director to lay off workers.
 - a. threatens forever
 - b. does forever threaten
 - c. is forever threatening
 - d. is threatening forever
8. "When can Chris move into her new flat?"
 "As soon as her new furniture."
 - a. they will deliver
 - b. they have delivered
 - c. they are being delivered
 - d. do they deliver
9. Josh was hired last month, and , he's been a real asset.
 - a. so far
 - b. until
 - c. for ages
 - d. ever since
10. The board a new chairman before next month's meeting.
 - a. will have been selecting
 - b. has selected
 - c. is selecting
 - d. will have selected

VOCABULARY

11. Would it be to offer bonuses to staff who reach their targets?
 - a. inclusive
 - b. feasible
 - c. financial
 - d. freelance
12. The post office has difficulty the volume of mail at Christmas time.
 - a. coping
 - b. running
 - c. dealing
 - d. handling
13. The office needs renovation.
 - a. instructive
 - b. selective
 - c. extensive
 - d. inventive
14. As a result of their financial problems, the company got a consultant to help them
 - a. deteriorate
 - b. shrink
 - c. diminish
 - d. downsize
15. Dan wouldn't sign the contract because he felt it was
 - a. his line of work
 - b. none of his business
 - c. out of work
 - d. a raw deal
16. Why doesn't Mike some of his work to his assistant?
 - a. demand
 - b. resign
 - c. widen
 - d. delegate
17. I think we need to look at the problem from a different
 - a. perspective
 - b. feedback
 - c. administration
 - d. workload
18. Rose gets a great deal of satisfaction from doing work.
 - a. maternity
 - b. voluntary
 - c. affectionate
 - d. occupational
19. Legal matters are not my – you'll have to consult a lawyer.
 - a. domain
 - b. aspect
 - c. prospect
 - d. excess
20. The senator disapproved of his daughter's marrying a gardener.
 - a. short-term
 - b. high-flying
 - c. lowly
 - d. meteoric

REVIEW 1

E. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

In today's business world, companies often pay other (1) to perform certain tasks or even whole projects in order to save money or time. This practice is (2) as outsourcing and is common in several (3), particularly information technology, customer services and market research.

Outsourcing is not a new phenomenon. It has been (4) in the manufacturing (5) for decades, but the 1990s saw a huge (6) in outsourcing in the service sector. Advances in the Internet and communications technology (7) it possible to assign routine tasks to workers in countries such as India, which has the largest educated English-speaking population in the world. (8) benefit is the 12-hour time difference (9) India and the United States, which means that a job that is submitted at the end of America's working (10) arrives in India early in the morning, and can be completed (11) the American company (12) for business again the next day.

In many (13) work is outsourced overseas, which results (14) financial gains as (15) are often considerably lower, not to mention the savings made by not maintaining office space. It is also more (16) than employing staff (17) when there may be no need for them and there is no need to (18) on extra workers at busy times. Given the advantages, it is not surprising that business experts are predicting a huge (19) in the number of companies which regularly outsource work in the (20).

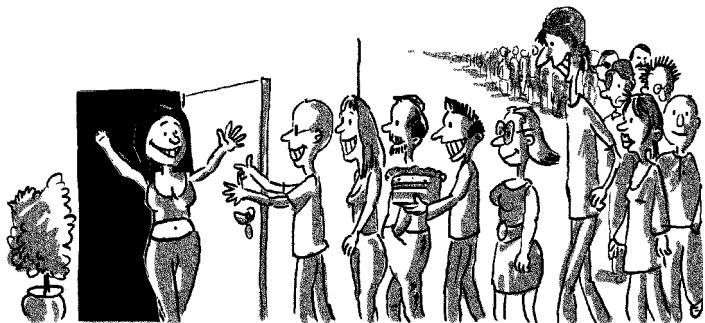
- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. boards | c. assets |
| b. firms | d. posts |
| 2. a. called | c. said |
| b. describing | d. known |
| 3. a. fields | c. aspects |
| b. duties | d. levels |
| 4. a. happened | c. occurring |
| b. there | d. swelling |
| 5. a. sector | c. also |
| b. work | d. as |
| 6. a. climbing | c. delegating |
| b. result | d. expansion |
| 7. a. was | c. set |
| b. had | d. made |
| 8. a. Another | c. First |
| b. This | d. Great |
| 9. a. of | c. for |
| b. between | d. about |
| 10. a. term | c. deadline |
| b. day | d. meeting |
| 11. a. during | c. before |
| b. due | d. if |
| 12. a. opens | c. handles |
| b. starting | d. began |
| 13. a. experiences | c. works |
| b. effects | d. cases |
| 14. a. in | c. to |
| b. with | d. about |
| 15. a. salaries | c. situations |
| b. well | d. deadlines |
| 16. a. cooperative | c. ambitious |
| b. efficient | d. administrative |
| 17. a. additionally | c. here |
| b. abroad | d. permanently |
| 18. a. lay | c. demand |
| b. take | d. call |
| 19. a. deal | c. rise |
| b. deterioration | d. further |
| 20. a. past | c. time |
| b. future | d. business |

5 Past Tenses, used to / would

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. The journey took a long time because the bus stopped / was stopping at every village on the way to the coast.
 2. When the athlete retired, she was competing / had been competing professionally for nearly two decades.
 3. Can you name all the actors who had played / have played James Bond up until now?
 4. Why weren't you paying / didn't you use to pay attention when I explained how to use the camera?
 5. When I had seen / saw the final bill, I was horrified.
 6. Quite simply, it was the best holiday we had ever had / had ever been having.
 7. Susan has been a member of this gym since she has moved / moved to the neighbourhood.
 8. Fran would make / was making her own gifts every Christmas.
 9. We spent / were spending far too much money yesterday.
 10. Stella had been reporting / had reported her noisy neighbour to the police a number of times.
 11. I'm glad you popped in – I would just make / was just making coffee.
 12. My sister was always inviting / had always been inviting her friends over.



B. Choose the correct answer.

Score: / 20

RULES

PAST SIMPLE

- states or actions (single or repeated) that finished in the past (often given with a specific time in the past)
 - narration of single past actions in the order they occurred
- The committee **debated** the proposals for months.
The dog **ran** into the garden and **chased** the cat, who **climbed** up a tree.

Time expressions: ago, last week / year, the day before yesterday, the other day, when, then, not until, whenever, later, after / afterwards, before / beforehand

Past Simple or Present Perfect?

- We use Present Perfect Simple to refer to past events (see Unit 1), but we don't normally use it when mentioning a specific past time.

Compare: I've **submitted** my application. I **submitted** my application **last week**.

- With time expressions like *today* and *this week / year*, we can use Past Simple if this time period is finished.

We only won three matches this season. (*The season is now over.*)

We have only won three matches this season. (*The season is not over – we may win more matches.*)

- With *since*, it is common to use Past Simple in the clause beginning with *since* and Present Perfect in the main clause.

Margaret **has developed** new interests **since** she **left** college. (*not: since she has left college X*)

- In American English it is possible to use the Past Simple with the adverbs such as *just, already, yet, ever, never, before*.

AmE Did you **already** see the movie? (British English: *Have you already seen that film?*)

PAST CONTINUOUS

- action in progress at a particular moment in the past or at the time something else happens
 - action or situation described as background to a more important event
 - temporary action in the past or action that was changing or developing
 - annoying or amusing past habit (with *always, constantly, forever*)
 - plans that did not happen or expectations that were not fulfilled
 - to describe past arrangements that may or may not have taken place
- I **was downloading** some files when the computer crashed.
I **was talking** to John yesterday and he told me about his new job.
In the summer of 1987, I **was working** for a law firm.
When we were at school, Andrew **was always forgetting** his lunch.
I **was expecting** to hear from you by Sunday.
I **was meeting** Sally in town so I didn't go to the lecture.

Time expressions: while, as, all day, at the time, back then, in those days, during

Notes

- Remember that stative verbs are not usually used in the continuous form. (See Grammar Appendix, page 216.)
I **didn't understand** what she was telling me. (*not: I wasn't understanding X*)
- We use the phrase *I was wondering if* to be polite when asking someone to do something or when we ask for information.
I **was wondering if** you could suggest a topic for my essay?
- The phrase *was thinking of* can be used to refer to something currently being considered for the future, but which is not yet definite.
I **was thinking of** signing up for a computer course.

PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

- past action or situation completed before a time or another action in the past
- to make the sequence of events clear
- with *first time / best / ever / never* when referring to a situation in the past (similar to Present Perfect)
- unfulfilled wishes / plans, often with *hope, plan, wish, expect, want, think about, mean to*

By the time the reporters arrived on the scene, the police **had solved** the case.

When Jane **had checked** her composition, she printed it out again. (*First she checked it, then she printed it.*)

My trip to France was the **first time I had ever been** abroad.

We'd **meant to** go and see my aunt but we didn't have time.

Time expressions: when, before, after, already, just, for, since, till, until, by the time, never, as soon as, no sooner ... than

Past Simple or Past Perfect?

- it is not necessary to use Past Perfect when a sequence of events is related in the order the events occur or if the chronological order is clear. In this case, we use Past Simple. We also prefer Past Simple for two actions when the second is a result of the first.

The curtain **rose** and the show **began**. (*not: The curtain had risen and the show began. X*)

- We do not use Past Perfect simply to say that something happened a long time ago.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

- continuing / repeated past action or situation which continued up to a point in the past
- past action that was still relevant at a point in the past, or caused a visible result

We **had been walking** for hours before we saw any wildlife.

The house smelt fantastic because Mum **had been baking**.

Time expressions: since, for, all day / afternoon

Past Perfect Simple or Continuous?

- We use Past Perfect Simple for completed actions, but Past Perfect Continuous to emphasise the duration or result of the activity.

Greg **had prepared** his speech. (*The speech was ready.*)

Greg **had been preparing** his speech for days. (*We do not know if the speech was ready – the emphasis is on how much work Greg had done.*)

- We use Past Perfect Simple when we mention the number of times the action has been done.

George **had tried** to reach her on her mobile **three times**.

OTHER FORMS USED TO TALK ABOUT THE PAST

used to + bare infinitive

repeated actions / states / habits in the past that contrast with the present

This palace **used to belong** to the royal family.

would + bare infinitive

repeated actions in the past (**not** states)

When I was a kid, my gran **would bake** delicious biscuits.

future in the past

When talking about the past, we use past forms of structures when we want to refer to the future.

I realised I **would need** more money.

will → *would*

Karen **was going to fax** me the details.

is going to → *was going to*

Jim **was playing** football later that evening.

is playing → *was playing*

They **were about to leave** when they got the message.

are about to → *were about to*

PRACTICE

A. Complete the sentences with the verbs given. There may be more than one answer.

1. Angie **didn't hear** a word I said; she was thinking about the party. **not hear**
2. I was free last Saturday night because my other plans **fall through**
3. William a magazine when he came across an interesting article about his home town. **read**
4. It was the first time he a motorbike and he was surprised at how exhilarating the experience was. **ride**
5. I couldn't get together with my friends that evening as I my fiancé. **see**
6. Thomas thought he the job and was disappointed to be turned down. **get**
7. I expected Catherine to be tired as she her tennis serve all morning. **practise**
8. When I was working at the hotel, I in the pool there every morning. **swim**
9. Fortunately, the earthquake the building at all. **not / weaken**
10. How many tickets by the end of the first week? **sell**

B. Complete the sentences using the correct word or expression below. There are more words than you need.

by the time • **earlier** • **afterwards** • **until** • **while** • **during** • **ever since** • **just** • **the moment** • **whenever**

1. The painting was completed in 1784, but it had been commissioned a decade **earlier**
2. We had lunch and we strolled round the old town.
3. I hadn't realised how much I would miss my hometown I moved away.
4. All the tickets had been sold we arrived at the theatre.
5. one sales assistant was serving a customer, the other was handling a complaint.
6. Greg had been climbing he was a child.
7. she walked into the room, they knew she was the right person for the job.
8. I was going to phone Jackie when she turned up.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|--|---|
| 1. "Did Andrew use to visit you often?"
"Yes, and he me a present whenever he came." | 2. There's a shopping mall there now, but the whole area was open farmland. | 3. "Weren't you going to send me some photos?"
"I did! them?" | 4. The performance was good because they for months. | 5. Jack worked late every night that week because he on holiday on Friday. | 6. "I've sent off my application for law school!"
"I thought you that reporter's job." |
| a. was bringing
b. brought | a. beforehand
b. in those days | a. Hadn't you got
b. Didn't you get | a. had been rehearsing
b. have rehearsed | a. was going
b. went | a. were accepted
b. were going to accept |

D. Complete the sentences using a suitable word or phrase. Use no more than five words.

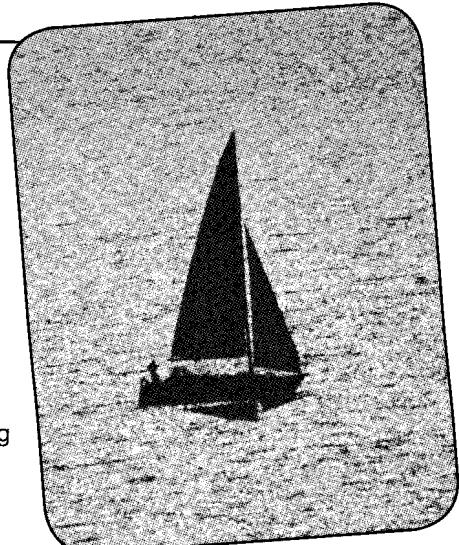
1. We all agreed that the Taj Mahal was the most amazing place **we had ever seen**.....
2. Weren't you ready by six o'clock? What all day?
3. Abbie assumed the bus hadn't come yet because dozens of people at the stop.
4. We couldn't put down a deposit on the car because we enough money.
5. I a motorbike but then I found a cheap second-hand car.
6. Tom but he gave it up last year on his doctor's advice.
7. Jane was just her application when she noticed sections she hadn't completed.
8. It became apparent that he when we heard the other side of the story.

E. Circle the correct answer.

NOSTALGIA FOR MY CHILDHOOD HOME

When we (1) were moving / had moved / moved to our new house near the sea, I was eight years old. Even before that I (2) was spending / had spent / was to spend every summer messing about on boats. My dad (3) was taught / had taught / had been teaching me to sail before I learnt to ride a bike so I knew how I wanted to spend my time at the new house – I (4) was going to / am going to / had gone to get my own boat and sail it every day. The house was only a few metres from the water's edge, and in rough weather the waves (5) were coming / would come / come crashing into our front garden. I (6) was sitting / had sat / used to sit with my nose pressed to the glass, fascinated by the power of the ocean. I (7) grew / have grown / have been growing up watching the skies to see if it (8) was going to rain / is raining / rained; would I be going sailing that afternoon or not?

Of course I sometimes wished we could live in the town like my friends. I (9) was to get / have been getting / used to get very irritated with my parents, who (10) had taken / had been taken / have taken early retirement because they (11) had seemed / seemed / would seem incapable of getting anywhere on time. Dad drove me the eight miles to school every day, but I was often late because he (12) have been walking / had been walking / was going to walk on the cliffs earlier in the morning and (13) was losing / had lost / lose track of time. When I (14) was taken / was taking / had been taking my university entrance exams, I (15) used to stay / had stayed / had been staying over at a friend's in town, just in case. All in all, I was lucky to grow up by the sea and I still love to sail.



TEXT FEATURES

A. SPELLING: one consonant or two? (See Spelling Appendix, page 219.)

Correct the spelling in the sentences below. There may be more than one mistake in each sentence.

reference

1. I am writing with reference to the vacancy. *x*
2. Their performance was marvelous. *x*
3. The office is finally being refited. *x*
4. The answer is not neccessarily logical. *x*
5. Some workers are legaly employed, but the majoritee work unnoficialy. *x*
6. The personel officer comented on my apllication. *x*
7. During her trainning, she was earning less than the others on staff. *x*
8. The survivor was so gratefull that he kept hugging the rescue dog. *x*

B. PUNCTUATION: the apostrophe (See Punctuation Appendix, page 221.)

Add or remove apostrophes as necessary.

1. Mr Harris' failed to turn up for the meeting. *x*
2. City budgets for the New Years Eve celebrations are running into thousands of pounds. *x*
3. The perks of the job dont include taking days' off whenever you're feeling tired. *x*
4. Paul Browns' book became a best-seller in it's second year. *x*
5. It's none of Mikes business' whether youre older than he is or not! *x*

C. COHESION AND COHERENCE

Cohesion means that sentences are well structured and there are clear links between them. **Coherence** means that ideas are presented in an understandable, logical way.

There are a number of exercises in C1- and C2-level exams which may test your understanding of cohesion and coherence in English, for example cloze exercises and gapped texts. In addition, a good understanding of cohesion and coherence will help your reading and improve your writing.

Pronouns / Possessive Adjectives / Possessive Pronouns

- Pronouns are used instead of a noun that has already been mentioned so as to avoid repetition.

The group released seven albums in as many years. In 2004, **they** were awarded a Grammy.

- It* can refer to an earlier or later phrase.

It's unpleasant to be made redundant, but **it** may be an opportunity for a career change.

It can be liberating to be made redundant.

- Possessive pronouns can refer to both an object and the person it belongs to.

Ian said the other car was badly damaged in the accident, but **his** was fine. (= his car)

- Nowadays, *they* and *their* may be used to refer to one person of either sex.

Someone has left **their** luggage under the seat.

1. Read the first paragraph of an article and say what the words in colour refer to.

ANIMAL WELFARE

London Zoo's

Not long ago, London Zoo moved a group of its elephants to a wildlife park in the countryside. This gave animal rights campaigners cause to celebrate. However, not everyone's reaction was as positive as theirs.

Jos, a young male rhino, had shared an enclosure with the elephants for many years until their departure, and was now missing them. His owners had seen him pacing up and down inside his now empty cage, unable to rest.

ZooCheck, an animal rights group which watches each animal in order to monitor its welfare, said they were concerned about Jos' behaviour, as it clearly signified stress. While Jos' elephant companions enjoyed new lives in the country, his was apparently far from enjoyable.

2. Now read the rest of the article and fill in the missing pronouns and possessive adjectives.

Some time later, arrangements were made for Jos to be transferred to a zoo in Germany where new company awaited (1) This time, Jos' friend was not only a rhino like (2) , but was also of the opposite sex. The move seemed to be just what (3) needed. Sadly, though, (4) was not to be. An outbreak of animal disease in Britain meant (5) became illegal to transport these animals across borders. So Jos never got to meet (6) female companion. Later, Jos' carers came up with an alternative plan to house (7) together with a female black rhino from another zoo, but (8) fell through because (9) failed to hit it off. However, it is expected that the search for a female mate for Jos will soon be successful.



EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. They last employed new staff back in January. **TAKEN**
No new staff January.
2. The children were out looking for the lost kitten. **SEARCH**
The children were the lost kitten.
3. He predicted a rise in the crime rate. **GOING**
He said that increase.
4. Tom was once a very rich man. **DEAL**
Tom used money.
5. It was Anna's first promotion. **BEEN**
Anna before.
6. I had just picked up the phone to call Simon when he arrived. **ABOUT**
I a phone call to Simon when he arrived.
7. Jack's carelessness would often result in accidents. **FOREVER**
Jack was so accidents.
8. Would you mind checking this report for me? **WONDERING**
I check this report for me.

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

In April 2002, Erich Ritter, a shark expert, was carrying out research in the Bahamas (1) part of his leg was bitten off by an adult shark that (2) pursuing a large fish. (3) was nothing unusual about the incident, (4) for the fact that Ritter (5) claimed to know how to prevent sharks from attacking him. He believed that sharks (6) sense fear, and that this triggers the attack response. Dr Ritter, a yoga expert, had learnt how to lower his heart rate, believing that this (7) fool the sharks and they would not see (8) as prey. When he was attacked, he was actually standing bare-legged in water, surrounded by pieces of fish which had (9) thrown into the water to attract sharks. Other shark experts (10) unsurprised by the incident. They felt that something like (11) was bound to happen. He had been risking his life (12) years because of his theories, although they had (13) been proved. At the time of the attack, Dr Ritter was (14) filmed by a TV crew, so the whole horrific incident was recorded. A documentary called *Anatomy of a Shark Bite* was made a year (15) This showed footage of the attack as well as Dr Ritter diving with sharks again for the first time since he had been bitten.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. The studio to release the film in August but they postponed it because of the political situation.
 - a. was about to plan
 - b. used to plan
 - c. had planned
 - d. would plan
2. Before there were railways, ordinary people for pleasure.
 - a. were rarely travelling
 - b. were used to travel rarely
 - c. were going to travel rarely
 - d. would rarely travel
3. "How will you afford driving lessons?"
"Well, I you and Dad could lend me the money."
 - a. would hope
 - b. have hoped
 - c. was hoping
 - d. had been hoping
4. The police arrived just as the thieves the bank.
 - a. going to leave
 - b. would leave
 - c. had been leaving
 - d. were about to leave

4 Entertainment

Use your mini-companion when working on this unit.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. All the words below are connected with the world of entertainment. Put the words under the correct heading.

agent
auditorium
backstage
box office
broadcaster

cast
celebrity
co-star
~~costume drama~~
crew

director
documentary
horror movie
on location
movie buff

presenter
producer
screenwriter
set
stage

studio
stuntman / woman
thriller
trailer
venue

Types of films / TV programmes	People	Places
costume drama	agent	auditorium

B. Read the film review and choose the best explanation below for each of the words in colour.

Spider-Man (2002), a big-budget action blockbuster, was warmly received by critics. Based on Stan Lee's classic comic book character, the first movie is the tale of a high school outsider who develops special powers after being bitten by a spider, only to learn that superpowers are no solution to his problems. He also learns that with great power comes great responsibility. The sequel, *Spider-Man 2* (2004), was hailed as a masterpiece for successfully combining romance with thrilling adventure and comic touches. Both of these movies filled multiplexes worldwide and grossed millions at the box office.

But the third instalment, *Spider-Man 3*, is a huge disappointment, as the strain of coming up with new variations without tampering too much with the format begins to show. Some early action sequences inject a little excitement, but overall, the plot is unimaginative and the script dull. Highlights include a larger than usual array of villains – the Sandman, the Green Goblin and Venom – and state-of-the-art special effects. Die-hard *Spider-Man* fans will no doubt be satisfied with this alone, but if you look for more in a movie, you'll be disappointed.

1. blockbuster
 - a. book or film that is highly successful
 - b. book or film that is incredibly long
2. based on
 - a. copied from
 - b. developed from something else
3. tale
 - a. story
 - b. fantasy
4. sequel
 - a. film that continues the story of a previous one
 - b. remake of an old film
5. masterpiece
 - a. excellent book, film, painting
 - b. original version of a book, film, painting
6. multiplex
 - a. a large number of moviegoers
 - b. a cinema complex with several film theatres
7. grossed
 - a. pleased
 - b. earned
8. sequence
 - a. part of a film about one event
 - b. stunt
9. plot
 - a. music accompanying a film
 - b. storyline
10. script
 - a. screenplay
 - b. visual style
11. villains
 - a. evil characters
 - b. exotic settings
12. state-of-the-art special effects
 - a. artificial images created using the latest technology
 - b. appearances in a film by well-known actors

C. Complete the text using the words given. Make any necessary changes.

audition • censorship • debut • forthcoming • premiere • review

CHISLEY CULTURAL CIRCLE

(1) EVENTS

March 12th Lecture *TV VIOLENCE: Is (2) necessary?*
Admission free

March 19th (3) for our summer production of *My Fair Lady*. Come along and try out if you fancy a part!

April 20th Theatre Trip We have reserved 20 tickets for the Bristol (4) of *Guys and Dolls*. Singer Judd Red will make her theatrical (5) Running for 13 weeks in the West End, it has received rave (6) Sign up now – places on a first-come, first-served basis. Cost £20.

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. PHRASAL VERBS come go

1. Complete the phrasal verbs. You will need to use one preposition twice.

down • on • across • out • into • back • in for

- a. The words one writes will never come out the way you envisage – that's the nature of live performance, I suppose. 
- e. What the audience seldom appreciates is how much rehearsal time has gone a performance before I stand up with the baton. 
- c. In this scene, you've been waiting years for this meeting. That apprehension has to come on the big screen. 
- f. My next guest is the actress who first made her debut in the horror flick *Bad Dreams* and has since gone to win two Oscars. 
- b. The prize money was a motive but the real reason I went it was the exposure. I've had my 15 minutes of fame, haven't I? 
- g. Donne's performance has to go as one of the most powerful Hamlets of all time. It's a must-see! 
- d. And that was the Beatles, with a hit going to 1965. If you remember those early days of pop and would like to dedicate a golden oldie, just call now. 
- h. Sharp picks up the ball on the left, a quick cross to Bolam in midfield. Some really fancy footwork going here. 

2. WHO SAID IT? Match the people to the remarks they made in Exercise 1.

- | | | | | |
|-------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| h.... | 1. commentator | 3. chat-show host | 5. director | 7. critic |
| | 2. contestant | 4. conductor | 6. disc jockey | 8. playwright |

B. PHRASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

- 1. Circle the correct preposition in the following phrases.**

1. **in / at** many respects
 2. **on / in** conjunction with
 3. **for / on** a large(r) scale

4. **in / at** comparison with
 5. **in / for** good
 6. **in / on** no time

7. **at / on** the part of
 8. **at / for** the forefront of

- 2. Use the phrases in Exercise 1 to complete the text.**

VIDEO KILLED THE RADIO STAR

The first pop videos were made in the 1970s. (1) In comparison with today's video clips, early versions seem primitive – a few shots of the performer, possibly (2) some simple animation. In 1981, a TV channel devoted entirely to the new genre was launched, changing the music industry (3) The channel was MTV. (4) , new videos, like Michael Jackson's *Thriller*, were big news – video had really 'killed the radio star'.

In the 1990s, MTV was (5) new developments in music and is now hugely influential. (6) , music television has benefited the music industry by increasing sales and promoting artists (7) than ever before. However, it is increasingly difficult for new talent to break into the market without television exposure, which requires a huge investment (8) a record company.

C. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with nouns formed from the words below. Add negative prefixes in brackets where possible.

<u>accept</u>	complex	destroy	ignorant	mature	pretend
<u>adapt</u>	concentrate	devote	imagine	objective	sensitive
annoy	creative	distract	imitate	offend	similar
attend	credible	dramatise	insistent	original	simple
<u>available</u>	curious	exist	inspire	patient	
clear (2 nouns)	dedicate	generous	interfere	popular	

-ance / -ence

-tion

-14-

...acceptance

adaptation

(un)availability

2. Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. I'd never been to the ballet before. I just went out of
 - a. curiosity
 - b. complexity
 - c. distraction
 - d. interference
2. Child actors often show great for their age.
 - a. credibility
 - b. offence
 - c. maturity
 - d. imitation
3. Journalists are supposed to maintain their , but theatre critics often praise their friends.
 - a. clearance
 - b. ignorance
 - c. dissimilarity
 - d. objectivity
4. at the free concert was said to be over 100,000.
 - a. Insistence
 - b. Attendance
 - c. Acceptance
 - d. Popularity
5. The free ticket offer is subject to
 - a. availability
 - b. destruction
 - c. existence
 - d. pretence
6. The charity thanked all the people who gave money for their
 - a. generosity
 - b. unoriginality
 - c. unpopularity
 - d. similarity

3. Complete the sentences using nouns you formed in Exercise 1. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. Critics praised his poetry for its
2. I couldn't become a professional dancer. It takes great
3. Rob couldn't hide his at being made to wait in line for tickets.
4. The play is a / an of a novel by Jane Austen.
5. This year's cinema was lower than expected and profits went down.
6. The doctor's on doing his own stunts surprised everyone.

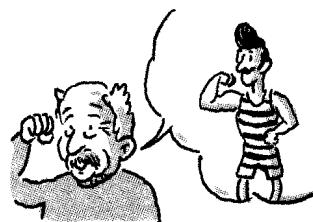
2. RELATED WORDS: ways of speaking

Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending. Then match four sentences with the pictures below.

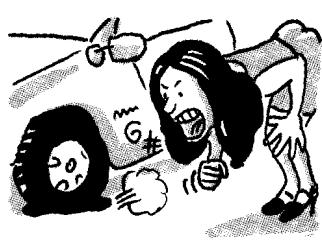
1. If a mother nags, she
 - a. uses words that are offensive.
 - b. interrupts someone else's conversation.
 - c. speaks suddenly and angrily.
 - d. talks a lot without saying anything clear or important.
 - e. is talking quickly about trivial things.
 - f. criticises frequently in an annoying way.
 - g. is talking about the past.
 - h. is speaking quietly and unclearly.
 - i. is complaining in a low voice and bad-tempered way.
 - j. says something suddenly and without thinking.
2. If a friend blurts out something, she
3. If an actor mumbles, she
4. If a man reminisces, he
5. If your friend is grumbling, he
6. If a speaker is waffling, he
7. If a co-worker butts in, she
8. If your brother snaps at you, he
9. If your friend is chattering, she
10. If a driver swearing, she



A.



B.



C.



D.

E. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| adopt | 1. a. Politicians have to be at dealing with reporters' questions. |
| adapt | b. Many stars chose to a child rather than have their own. |
| adept | c. Meg's book has been for a TV programme. |
| wind | 2. a. Watching TV helps me at the end of the day. |
| rewind | b. The makeup artist had to special tape around my legs. |
| unwind | c. Please the video when you finish watching it. |
| highlight | 3. a. Going backstage after the show was the of our theatre trip. |
| spotlight | b. Young actors who attain sudden fame can find life in the tough. |
| limelight | c. Funding for schools is once again under the |
| downright | 4. a. The director told him that he was too ugly for the role. |
| upright | b. I think it's disgusting what some actors will do to get a part! |
| outright | c. The artist had pictures propped against the walls of his studio. |
| feature | 5. a. The documentary on the training professional dancers receive. |
| characterise | b. The film several young up-and-coming actors. |
| focus | c. Hitchcock's films are by suspense and humour. |
| engross | 6. a. I was so in the film that I stayed up till 2.00 watching it. |
| appeal | b. Horror movies have never really to me. |
| addict | c. I am to late-night television! |
| so-called | 7. a. The "live" performance consisted of a group miming to a CD. |
| alleged | b. I was flattered to get the chance to work with the director. |
| renowned | c. The journalist secured an exclusive interview with the murderer just before the trial. |
| ratings | 8. a. Foreign language movies are either dubbed or have |
| credits | b. The new comedy series may be cut because of low |
| subtitles | c. The names of all the technical crew who worked on a movie are listed in the |

F. METAPHOR AND MEANING

The metaphor of **light** is often used to suggest intelligence or knowledge, while **darkness** can suggest confusion or ignorance.

see the light = *understand the truth* a shot in the dark = *a guess with no facts to support it*

1. Mark the following words L (light) or D (darkness).

flash	brilliant	cloud
dim	dazzle	dull
faint	bright	dawn

2. Choose the best meaning for the words and expressions in colour in the sentences below.

- I never know the answers – the teacher must think I'm so dull. a. not given information
- Why are we being kept in the dark about the plans? b. unintelligent
- He dazzled us with his wit. c. impress with one's knowledge / talent
- The reporter asked the police chief if he could shed any light on the reasons for the investigation. d. suggest an explanation

3. Explain the meaning of the words and expressions in colour.

- The truth suddenly dawned on me. I **suddenly realised**
- I haven't got the faintest idea what you're talking about.
- How could Mark have been so dim as to run out of petrol on the motorway!
- Don't let your desire for fame cloud your judgement.
- Stephen Hawking is probably the most brilliant British scientist who ever lived.
- Jan is a very bright child – she learnt to read when she was three years old!

6 MULTIPLE MEANINGS *cast set act*

These words are connected to film or theatre, but they have other meanings, too.

Match the words in colour to their meanings. Give the part of speech for *cast*, *set* and *act* in each sentence.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Can you cast an eye over the script and give me your opinion? | a. follow |
| 2. When Dan broke his arm, he had to wear a cast for two months. | b. decide on |
| 3. Julia Roberts is often cast as the lead in romantic comedies. | c. part of a play |
| 4. Why do you have to cast doubt on all my plans? | d. chosen to play a character |
| 5. Congratulations on your engagement – have you set a date yet? | e. have a quick look at |
| 6. She's unlikely to take your advice – she's too set in her ways. | f. rigid, with fixed ideas and habits |
| 7. I've seen a beautiful marble chess set I know she'd love. | g. hard protective plaster |
| 8. Fran beat Beth 6-3 in the final set. | h. found doing something wrong |
| 9. She decided to act on her teacher's advice. | i. part of a tennis match |
| 10. The most exciting moment comes in the third act. | j. behave |
| 11. Just try to act as if nothing's wrong. | k. group of matching items |
| 12. They couldn't deny it as they were caught in the act. | l. make others feel less certain about something |

IN OTHER WORDS: phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are often used in informal language.

The words and phrases in colour are formal. Replace each one with the correct form of one of the following phrasal verbs.

get into • play up • hype up • run through • laze around • come up with • bring in
branch out • put on • crack up

1. I like nothing better than lazing around and watching TV at the weekends. relaxing
2. The DVD is again – can you have a look at it? malfunctioning
3. Our school a play every year. stages
4. I need to my lines a few times before opening night. review
5. The producers spent hours trying to a catchy title for the film. create
6. Our film company plans to into computer game production. diversify
7. I've poetry, although I found it boring at school. become quite keen on
8. The theme tune he wrote still income in the form of royalties. generates
9. That sitcom causes me to laugh uncontrollably
10. They that movie so much, it's bound to be a letdown. praised it a lot

IN PRACTICE

► GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. It can't be easy to a novel for the screen, but the scriptwriter has done a fantastic job. When Julie first started her job, she found it difficult to to her new hectic lifestyle. The course was designed for managers, but we can it for a nonprofessional audience.
2. The sunshine made it hard for me to see the screen, so we drew the curtains. Trudy seemed to be a very student, but she never did very well in written tests. My sister wants to paint our room pink, but I think it would be too distracting.
3. Simon won the and became the tennis champion. One of the nicest wedding gifts we received was a beautiful of matching serving dishes. The stage looks stunning – the designer must be very talented.

4. Throughout the party, Paula as if she had never seen me before in her life!
 Had you on my advice, you wouldn't have had any problems with the contract.
 When I was at university, I in several productions with the student theatre group, but I never had a leading role.
5. Nobody in the office could shed any on the mystery of the missing files.
 A hand-held torch only produces a faint
 It was months before Katy saw the and decided to look for a new flatmate.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

THE ULTIMATE IN REALITY TV

In their attempts to ensure higher (1) , TV producers have developed a whole new breed of programmes (2) real people. In Europe the most famous of these (3) reality TV shows was probably *Big Brother*, where 12 ordinary people volunteered to live under the watchful eye of TV cameras 24 hours a day. In America, the top show was *Survivor*, (4) on a similar concept, in which 16 (5) are abandoned on a desert island. But the ultimate example of the (6) must surely be *The Osbournes*, first (7) on MTV in 2002, in which the homelife of rock star Ozzy Osbourne and his family was laid bare to public scrutiny. Osbourne himself was already a (8) name as the former lead singer of the highly successful heavy-metal group, *Black Sabbath*. The show was described as a real-life sitcom because it (9) light on Ozzy's softer, more humorous side. It revealed his (10) to his teenage kids, even though he was often heard yelling and (11) at them. The programme (12) millions for the Osbourne family and certainly blurred the boundaries between reality and television.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A scores | B levels | C sequences | D ratings |
| 2. A featuring | B focusing | C acting | D hosting |
| 3. A so-called | B alleged | C renowned | D adept |
| 4. A adapted | B hyped | C based | D founded |
| 5. A commentators | B contestants | C censors | D conductors |
| 6. A genre | B role | C style | D creation |
| 7. A played | B dubbed | C cast | D broadcast |
| 8. A common | B known | C household | D domestic |
| 9. A opened | B wound | C shed | D set |
| 10. A conjunction | B devotion | C concentration | D attendance |
| 11. A blurting | B butting | C banning | D swearing |
| 12. A brought in | B came out | C went down | D branched out |

C. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

USER'S MANUAL

Congratulations on becoming the owner of an Epicview digital camcorder!

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| The (1) advice is designed to help you get maximum (2) out of using your camera and viewing the results. You now have the chance to demonstrate your (3) to your friends and family. | FOLLOW |
| Since most video (4) are of everyday occasions, it's only your talent which can make them look (5) | ENJOY |
| • Pay attention to the (6) of your shots. Include only what you want your audience to see. | CREATE |
| • Make sure that the background is (7) Watch out for brightly coloured objects or clothing that could be (8) | PRODUCE |
| • Check that the camera is properly focused – it will be done (9) because of the self-focus feature, but you will get greater (10) if you use the manual controls. | ORDINARY |
| • Pay attention to the (6) of your shots. Include only what you want your audience to see. | COMPOSE |
| • Make sure that the background is (7) Watch out for brightly coloured objects or clothing that could be (8) | ATTRACT |
| • Check that the camera is properly focused – it will be done (9) because of the self-focus feature, but you will get greater (10) if you use the manual controls. | DISTRACT |
| • Pay attention to the (6) of your shots. Include only what you want your audience to see. | AUTOMATE |
| • Make sure that the background is (7) Watch out for brightly coloured objects or clothing that could be (8) | CLEAR |

REVIEW 2

▲ **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. There has never been such a large rock festival in this country. **SCALE**
This year's rock festival is than any other held in this country.
2. They have to do a lot of preparation before they start shooting each scene. **GOES**
A lot of shooting begins.
3. The film was an adaptation of a novel by Tom Sharpe. **BASED**
They a novel by Tom Sharpe.
4. Could you take a quick look at my essay before I hand it in? **EYE**
Would you mind my essay before I hand it in?
5. I can't imagine what Rod is planning to buy me for Christmas. **FAINTEST**
I don't what Rod is planning to buy me for Christmas.
6. How much I earn is a personal matter! **BUSINESS**
It's how much I earn!
7. Journalists are expected to work until late at night. **PUT**
Journalists are expected hours.
8. Have Liz and John decided when they are getting married? **SET**
Have Liz and John wedding?

■ **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

A FASCINATING LIFE

One of the (1) memorable biographies I have (2) read describes the life of Dora Jordan, an 18th-century actress. She first appeared (3) stage at the age of 15, and in (4) time had become a household name. Newspaper gossip about her personal life contributed to her meteoric rise to fame, especially when, in 1791, she began a romance with Prince William, who became king (5) later. Their relationship was (6) last more than 20 years, (7) which time Dora bore him 10 children. She continued her career in the theatre, and remained (8) the limelight, like a modern celebrity. Yet, despite her years of devotion to William and their children, not to mention the financial support she (9) given him, he eventually abandoned her under pressure from his royal advisers in (10) to marry a suitably royal bride. Forbidden to see her children, Dora was forced to leave the country, and died alone in France in 1816. It was fascinating to read about an unmarried working mother in (11) days, about her glamorous life and her tragic end, but the aspect I really enjoyed (12) the portrayal of Dora herself. She comes (13) as a real person – talented and famous, but also a loyal and honest woman (14) loved her children. It's a brilliant book, and I'd recommend it to (15) who likes reading about the rich and famous.



REVIEW 2

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The jury its verdict tomorrow.
 - a. is to announce
 - b. will have been announced
 - c. has announced
 - d. is being announced
2. To my , I found I had to do more paperwork before the permit could be granted.
 - a. annoy
 - b. annoyed
 - c. annoying
 - d. annoyance
3. Management ways to save money for months before the layoffs.
 - a. were to discuss
 - b. has been discussing
 - c. were discussed
 - d. had been discussing
4. "Look at Courtney in this photo!"
" so thin?"
 - a. Would she always be
 - b. Was she always be
 - c. Did she always use to be
 - d. Had she always be
5. Julie was so engrossed that she didn't hear her sister come in.
 - a. in her book
 - b. to the book
 - c. into the book
 - d. with the book
6. When the delay was announced, we realized that we enough time to catch our next flight.
 - a. won't have
 - b. wouldn't have
 - c. hadn't had
 - d. weren't having
7. The firm has doubled its profits since it its range of products.
 - a. broadened
 - b. had broadened
 - c. was broadening
 - d. was broadened
8. "What do you think of these books?"
"..... , the two novels are similar."
 - a. To their respects
 - b. At many respecting
 - c. In many respects
 - d. The many respects
9. The recruits a month's hard training.
 - a. were resigned to themselves
 - b. resigned to
 - c. resigning themselves
 - d. resigned themselves to
10. What exactly for lower-income families?
 - a. is this tax change to mean
 - b. does this tax change mean
 - c. will this tax change be meaning
 - d. this tax change is meaning

VOCABULARY

11. The producer refused to discuss any of the actor's demands for more pay.
 - a. down and out
 - b. outlook
 - c. outright
 - d. downright
12. Iron should not be taken in with certain vitamins.
 - a. conjunction
 - b. connection
 - c. consistency
 - d. concentration
13. She has shown complete to her career.
 - a. administration
 - b. occupation
 - c. adaptation
 - d. dedication
14. Of course, I thought your song was the of the show.
 - a. spotlight
 - b. forefront
 - c. limelight
 - d. highlight
15. His negative attitude across in the interview.
 - a. went
 - b. came
 - c. played
 - d. branched
16. Ms Fisher has a very position on the committee.
 - a. preferential
 - b. residential
 - c. influential
 - d. beneficial
17. I wonder if my lecturer can any light on this essay for me?
 - a. dawn
 - b. shed
 - c. snap
 - d. dub
18. Ed lost when he forgot his employees' names.
 - a. credibility
 - b. originality
 - c. simplicity
 - d. inevitability
19. He's so ambitious that he'll do anything to his career, even at the expense of others.
 - a. enlarge
 - b. widen
 - c. further
 - d. expand
20. The novel is basically a of a brilliant artist living in poverty.
 - a. trailer
 - b. tale
 - c. thriller
 - d. plot

REVIEW 2

CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

The Jazz Singer (1927) has gone down in history as the first talkie – a film in which the actors' voices were heard. In films made (1) to that, dialogues and narration appeared as titles for the (2) to read. However, moviegoers had never watched these (3) silent movies in silence.

From the (4) beginning, various attempts were (5) to add sound, (6) with an 1895 mechanism which piped music into the ears of those who were looking into a kinetoscope, the first motion-picture viewing device. This was unpopular, however, and the most common way of providing a sound accompaniment was to have actors and musicians behind the (7). The most luxurious (8) provided an orchestral accompaniment while even the smallest cinema (9) employ an individual pianist.

The technology required to put sound directly on film had been (10) since 1900, but executives in most film studios did not want to invest any of (11) profits in reequipping theatres and retraining casts and (12). The Warner Bros studio, however, co-founded a company (13) went on to produce the first talking film, *Don Juan*, in 1926, followed a year (14) by *The Jazz Singer*. In no (15), the entire industry was making the transition to sound. This had implications for both the process of film-making and the films (16). Directors could no longer shout instructions (17) filming, and this meant that (18) became necessary. Cameras now had to be immobile, and actors had to be close to hidden microphones, severely limiting cinematic creativity (19) further technological (20) were introduced.

1. a. sooner
b. back
c. prior
d. before
2. a. writers
b. audience
c. producers
d. subtitles
3. a. so-called
b. historical
c. alleged
d. other
4. a. time
b. very
c. early
d. lowly
5. a. being
b. done
c. made
d. set
6. a. always
b. starting
c. experimented
d. similarly
7. a. screen
b. script
c. limelight
d. backstage
8. a. box offices
b. venues
c. ones
d. casts
9. a. used
b. did
c. had
d. would
10. a. existing
b. objective
c. available
d. constructive
11. a. financial
b. those
c. resulting
d. their
12. a. crews
b. characters
c. directors
d. cameras
13. a. and
b. which
c. line
d. afterwards
14. a. ago
b. later
c. more
d. before
15. a. respect
b. time
c. doubt
d. way
16. a. business
b. stars
c. alone
d. themselves
17. a. at
b. during
c. meanwhile
d. without
18. a. rehearsals
b. deadlines
c. locations
d. clearance
19. a. because
b. towards
c. until
d. by
20. a. innovations
b. broadcast
c. auditions
d. also

Modals, Semi-modals, Modal Perfects

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Not getting enough vitamins in your diet cause skin problems.
a. can b. must
2. I like the clothes in that shop but the assistants be friendlier.
a. could b. may
3. That bag be an imitation – it costs a fortune!
a. can't b. shouldn't
4. The wood was wet but somehow I start a fire.
a. could have b. was able to
5. You call a taxi for me; I've decided to take the bus.
a. needn't b. may not
6. Sue's in the kitchen – she preparing dinner.
a. must be b. can be
7. you give me a call when you get home?
a. Won't b. Needn't
8. The company decide to expand.
a. shall b. may
9. You give up your job before you find another one.
a. don't have to b. mustn't
10. I suppose it been Meryl Streep in that movie – I can't remember.
a. can have b. might have
11. Our exam results arriving any day now.
a. should be b. would be
12. Applications returned by April 12th.
a. must be b. need be

B. Complete the sentences with the words below.

didn't have to had to weren't supposed to ought to
won't be able to might as well used to had better

1. Terry was late for work because he call in at the bank.
2. Get the brakes on your bike fixed or you stop.
3. The students always go to the same fast food place after class.
4. We're never going to finish the crossword puzzle so we give up.
5. You keep away from that dog. He looks fierce.
6. The children play by the river but they often did.
7. Sam attend the meeting so he spent the morning dealing with other tasks instead.
8. The aquarium be cleaned out at least once a week.

Score: / 20

RULES

Modals express a speaker's attitude or mood. For example, you can use modals when you feel something is necessary, advisable, possible, impossible, probable or permissible. Modals also express the strength of these attitudes (compare *might go* with *I must go*). Each modal has more than one meaning or use.

Form	modal + bare infinitive	must do
Passive form	modal + be + past participle	must be done
Continuous form	modal + be + verb- <i>ing</i>	must be doing

can	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> general ability or possibility informal request, offer, permission 	<p>Maria can speak English but she can't speak German.</p> <p>Can I have another cup of tea, please? Can I help you with that bag? You can't use the computer now.</p> <p>Susan can be very insensitive at times. The novel can be described as an epic.</p>
can't	<p>to say that something is impossible or to make negative deductions (negative equivalent of <i>must</i>)</p>	<p>He can't be hungry. He's just had supper.</p>
could	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> general ability in the past possibility in the present / future for requests (more polite than <i>can</i>) to make suggestions We use <i>could</i> in questions to emphasise that we feel strongly about something bad that happened. with comparative adjectives to express possibility / impossibility 	<p>Could you ride a bike when you were five? I couldn't.</p> <p>Don't wait for him – he could be late.</p> <p>Could you turn down the sound a bit?</p> <p>We could ask John to make some enquiries.</p> <p>How could you leave him alone at the bus station?</p> <p>They could try a bit harder. Your plan couldn't be better.</p>
couldn't	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> negative supposition or deduction 	<p>Alan couldn't still be reading the report – I gave it to him hours ago!</p>
be able to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ability in the present, past and future (instead of <i>can</i>) ability to do an action at a particular time in the past after modals such as <i>may</i> / <i>might</i> and <i>would</i> / <i>should</i> and after verbs like <i>want</i>, <i>hope</i> or <i>expect</i> 	<p>Will you be able to meet me tomorrow?</p> <p>Jim wasn't working yesterday, so he was able to sleep late. (<i>could</i> is not possible here)</p> <p>I might be able to help you. We hope to be able to come.</p>
may / might	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> future or general possibility for polite requests or permission (<i>might</i> is very formal in this context) <i>might</i> can be used to criticise We use <i>might</i> to make a suggestion or give advice in a polite way. In general, <i>might</i> is less certain than <i>may</i>. <i>may</i> is used to express formal wishes or hopes (often at the beginning of a sentence) We use <i>may</i> / <i>might as well</i> (informal) when there is nothing more interesting, useful, better to do or when comparing one unpleasant situation to another. 	<p>The government may / might increase the budget for this project.</p> <p>May I see your ticket, please? Might I trouble you with some questions?</p> <p>You might ask before you take my car keys.</p> <p>You might try the petrol station down the road.</p> <p>He might do better than we expect in the test.</p> <p>May you both be very happy. May the New Year bring us peace.</p> <p>There's no one here so we may / might as well go home.</p> <p>The weather is terrible here in Spain. We might as well be in England. (<i>It is terrible in England too.</i>)</p>

must	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for orders, strong recommendation obligation imposed by the speaker, rather than rules / regulations imposed by others for certainty or positive logical assumptions / deductions (In negative sentences, we use <i>can't</i>.) obligation / recommendation in the past and future are expressed using <i>have to</i> 	<p>You must pay this fine by Friday. I must get my hair cut. It's such a mess.</p> <p>He must be in his early twenties. You must be exhausted after the flight.</p> <p>We must cut down on our expenditure. We had to / will have to cut down on our expenditure.</p>
must not	<p><i>mustn't</i> = prohibition</p> <p>AmE In American English, <i>must not</i> is sometimes used for negative assumptions / deductions. (<i>Can't</i> is used in British English.)</p>	<p>You mustn't smoke in the auditorium. I haven't seen Sue this morning. She must not be at work today.</p>
have to / don't have to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> external obligation, necessity <i>don't have to</i> = lack of necessity <i>must not</i> and <i>don't have to</i> express different ideas: <i>must not / mustn't</i> = it is wrong / a bad idea <i>don't have to</i> = it is not necessary <i>have got to</i> can also be used in informal English 	<p>You have to put on your seat belt now. Jane doesn't have to hand in the assignment.</p> <p>You mustn't cross the road without looking. We don't have to make a decision now.</p> <p>I've got to send this email right away.</p>
need / needn't	<p><i>need / needn't</i> as a modal verb has the same meaning as the regular verb <i>need to</i></p>	<p>No one need know / needs to know about this. You needn't wait / don't need to wait for me. (= <i>don't have to</i>)</p>
should / ought to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> obligation, recommendation or advice probability or what we expect to happen <i>should</i> is a polite way of introducing a suggestion <i>should</i> is used in clauses expressing personal reactions, often after adjectives <i>should</i> can indicate annoyance <i>should</i> can be used with <i>if, in case, for fear that</i> This makes the action seem less likely. 	<p>You should / ought to look into the matter before it's too late. Everyone should / ought to be asked to help clean up the beach.</p> <p>He ought to pass the exam easily. The plane should be landing any minute now. I should think your idea will be a great success.</p> <p>Should we start without Julie? It's strange you should say that. I opened the door, and who should be standing there but Sam. (<i>when telling a story</i>) "Where's Mary?" "How should I know?" I'll make extra food in case your cousins should arrive.</p>
will	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> future certainty, predictions spontaneous decisions offers, requests, willingness to do something <i>won't</i> can be used in offers / invitations (formal) and as question tags to add politeness 	<p>I'm sure they will find the missing document in time for the meeting. There's someone at the door. I'll go and see who it is. Don't worry about a thing. I'll clear the table. Won't you have a seat, madam? Have a seat, won't you?</p>
would	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> as the past form of <i>will</i> for past habitual actions typical polite requests (<i>would you mind + verb-ing / would you mind if, etc.</i>); can be used as a polite question tag to stress that an action is tentative 	<p>Everyone thought the team would win the cup. She wouldn't listen to anything we said. When we lived by the sea, we would go for long walks on the beach every morning.</p> <p>Would you mind waiting here, please? Would you mind if I waited here? Shut the door, would you? It's doubtful he would know the answer.</p>
shall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>shall I / we</i> is used to make offers and suggestions in rules, regulations, legal contracts, etc. 	<p>Shall I carry that heavy box for you? No player shall push or kick another player.</p>

EXPRESSIONS WITH MODAL MEANING

used to	past habitual action or past state that no longer exists	We used to watch cartoons on Saturdays. (= <i>would</i>) Did they use to have a sports car? (<i>would</i> isn't possible here)
had better	to give strong advice (stronger than <i>ought to</i> or <i>should</i>) often implying a warning of bad consequences (informal use)	You had better finish this project soon. You had better not be late. (<i>or you'll get fired</i>)
be supposed to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> similar to <i>should</i> – implies external obligation or what is expected to happen contrast between what actually happens and what is / was expected 	I am supposed to start work at 9.00 am. You are not supposed to drink and drive. Jill was supposed to have been here already. (<i>but she isn't</i>)
MODAL PERFECTS The modal perfect is used to refer to past actions, or to make speculations or deductions about the past.		
Form	modal + <i>have</i> + past participle	must have done
Continuous form	modal + <i>have been</i> + verb- <i>ing</i>	must have been doing
Passive form	modal + <i>have been</i> + past participle	must have been done
could have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> unfulfilled possibility or ability uncertainty / guessing when we don't know 	They could have called us. (<i>but they didn't</i>) I don't know who called. It could have been Sue.
couldn't have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to express surprise or disbelief with comparative adjectives 	She couldn't have left without them! She couldn't have been happier when she was a child.
can't have	to express a negative deduction about the past	He looks happy. He can't have heard the bad news. (<i>I'm sure he didn't hear the news.</i>) He looks happy. He must not have heard the bad news.
AmE <i>must not have</i> is used instead of <i>can't have</i>		
needn't have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> an action that happened that was unnecessary <p>Note: We use <i>didn't need to</i> for an unnecessary action when we don't know if the action happened.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>needn't have</i> and <i>shouldn't have</i> can be used to thank someone politely 	They needn't have brought a present. I didn't need to pay the bill. (<i>We don't know if the speaker paid or not.</i>) You needn't have gone to so much trouble.
should / ought to have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> unfulfilled expectation or advice not followed criticism or annoyance after some adjectives to express personal reactions 	They should have got here by now. You oughtn't to have spoken to her like that. It's strange you should have mentioned it.
may / might have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> uncertainty about possible past action past possibility that didn't happen annoyance about failure to do an action <i>I might have known + would</i> shows that the speaker isn't surprised by an action because it was typical of the doer. 	He may (might) have told me . I don't remember. You might have fallen and broken a leg! She might have told me you were coming. I might have known she'd make an awful meal.
must have	logical assumption / certainty about a past action AmE <i>must not have</i> is used for negative assumptions (see <i>can't have</i>)	The grass is wet. It must have rained . Everyone's here except Jones. He must not have heard about the meeting.
will have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to look back on a past action from a point in the future certainty 	By 3.00 all the work will have been done . She'll have heard what happened by now.
would have	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> possible event which didn't actually happen assumption about the past 	An operation would have saved his life. One of the children offered to help. That would have been Julie.

Note

The past participle can be omitted in spoken English when the meaning is clear.

"Did Greg paint this picture?" "I don't know – he **might have**."

What lovely flowers – you really **shouldn't have**!

PRACTICE

A. Complete the dialogues with the correct modal.

1. shouldn't / might

"Why did you climb up on the roof? You have slipped."

"I'm sorry. I realise now that I have done it."

2. could / can

"Look at that rain! My flight be cancelled."

"You be so silly at times! The weather's not bad enough to stop a plane taking off!"

3. needn't / could

"We have brought these sandwiches with us after all."

"I know. We have got something to eat at that café over there."

4. must / should

"That snake be at least two metres long. How did it get into our back garden?"

"How I know? I'm not an expert on snakes."

5. would / can't

"Rob have failed his French exam! He's one of the best in the class."

"I know. I was sure he pass."

6. could / might

"How you refuse to look after Paul's dog while he's in hospital?"

"Actually, I've changed my mind about that. I be able to do it after all."

B. Match each sentence (1-8) with the statement that best explains its meaning (a-h).

- | | | |
|--|-------|--|
| 1. The children couldn't have been watching TV – it was broken. | | a. It's a suggestion. |
| 2. The author's latest novel ought to be a success. | | b. It's impossible. |
| 3. You don't have to lock the windows – we'll only be out a few minutes. | | c. It is expected. |
| 4. Trevor would interrupt me when I was talking on the phone. | | d. It was wrong not to. |
| 5. You might try the chemist's in the high street. | | e. It has probably happened. |
| 6. Rose will have finished her essay by now. | | f. It was possible but it didn't happen. |
| 7. The doctor said I should have taken all the tablets in the packet. | | g. It's not necessary. |
| 8. Winning the scholarship would have solved all her problems. | | h. It's a past habit. |

C. Complete the sentences using the correct phrase below.

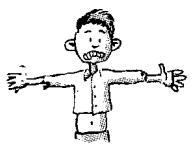
needn't have • couldn't have • can't be • would have been • may as well
will be able • should be • aren't supposed to

1. I've got nothing planned for this evening so I work overtime.
2. Surely the director thinking of replacing the lead actor – the show opens this weekend.
3. The editor decided not to print the jokes in case someone offended.
4. We enjoyed the performance more – we were engrossed from start to finish.
5. You be lazing around during working hours – there are plenty of things for you to do.
6. The presentation more effective if visual aids had been used.
7. I don't expect Jessica to attend the premiere with her leg in plaster.
8. Your assignment was very good but you written so much.

D. Rewrite the following sentences more formally, using the word in bold.

1. Do you want me to help you? **can** ..**Can I help you?**.....
2. I want to close the window. **would**
3. Pass the salt, will you? **may**
4. I can do the washing-up if you like. **shall**
5. Please have some more soup. **won't**
6. Move your seat over there. **could**

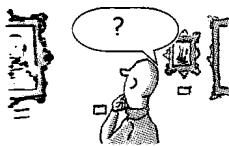
SPECULATING What could / might / may / must / can't have happened / be happening? Give possible explanations for the situations shown in the pictures.



He must have grown. / The shirt could have shrunk in the wash.

.....

.....



.....

.....



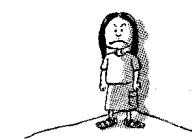
.....

.....



.....

.....



.....

.....

Read the text below and answer the questions in full sentences. Use modals from this unit.

JAILED BECAUSE OF A FAULTY MACHINE

It was hard not to feel sympathy for the Hock family of London, two of whom were jailed last week for frantically extracting more than €100,000 in cash from faulty cash machines and investing it in a brand-new grand piano, air tickets to Hawaii and a Porsche. The Hocks were not alone in their delight at discovering that all across the city, cash machines were giving out thick wads of notes, regardless of which PIN number customers were punching in. Word of the technological glitch spread fast and before long, there were queues of

people waiting their turn for free cash. It's difficult to resist a machine throwing money at you of course, but their behaviour was, morally and in the eyes of the law, wrong. So the Hocks should be held to account for their actions but their 15-month sentences seem a little harsh. In a world where we are led to believe that with a little luck, a lottery win can change our lives, it's hardly surprising that on discovering a magic cashpoint, many people forgot that taking money that isn't yours is theft.

1. How do you imagine the Hocks felt when they realised the cash machine wasn't working properly?

.....

2. What explanation might there be for why the machines were faulty?

.....

3. How do you think people found out about the 'free' cash?

.....

4. Could you have resisted the temptation? What would you have done?

.....

5. Should the Hocks have taken the money?

.....

6. Do you think the Hocks should have been sent to prison?

.....

7. What are you supposed to do if you find cash in the street?



A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Thinking of a new campaign is the responsibility of the advertising agency. **SUPPOSED**
The advertising agency up with a new campaign.
2. I know that it was wrong of me to make fun of the teacher. **OUGHT**
I know that at my teacher.
3. Perhaps I can help you find a place to stay. **ABLE**
I help you find a place to stay.
4. Mike's interview with the reporter is probably over by now. **FINISHED**
The reporter interviewing Mike by now.
5. The bank probably won't give you such a big loan. **DOUBTFUL**
It you that much money.
6. The crisis must be handled very carefully. **BETTER**
You with the crisis very carefully.
7. The singer is considering organising a show to raise money for the poor. **MIGHT**
The singer on a show to raise money for the poor.
8. They might ask you to show some form of identification so take your passport. **CASE**
Take your passport asked to show some form of identification.

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

ONE PUFF AND YOU'RE HOOKED

According to a new study, young teenagers can (1) addicted to cigarettes more easily than previously believed. Researchers have found that as few as two cigarettes a day (2) be enough to lead to addiction and that this might occur even before smoking becomes an everyday habit. The students who (3) involved in the study were interviewed regularly over a four-year period. During the interviews, they (4) to answer questions about their smoking habits and addiction symptoms. (5) responses were revealing. Some participants claimed that although they smoked just a few cigarettes a month, they still suffered unpleasant withdrawal symptoms (6) they tried to stop, including the feeling that they (7) have a cigarette no matter what. Such claims (8) not surprise us since the nicotine from a single cigarette is sometimes all it takes to trigger addiction, possibly because young people's brains are still immature, causing them to become addicted more quickly (9) adults. Adolescents who have just one cigarette a week soon find they (10) to smoke more often than they used (11) as their tolerance to nicotine increases. Unfortunately, many of those who smoke that first cigarette (12) condemning themselves to a lifetime struggle against their addiction, and may never be (13) to give it up. The harsh reality of teenage smoking is that approximately one-third (14) all young smokers will ultimately die prematurely as a result of their tobacco addiction. For these victims, their fate may well (15) been sealed with their first few puffs.

U Body and Mind

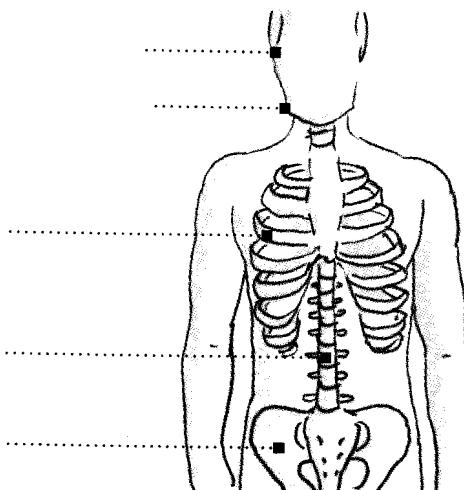
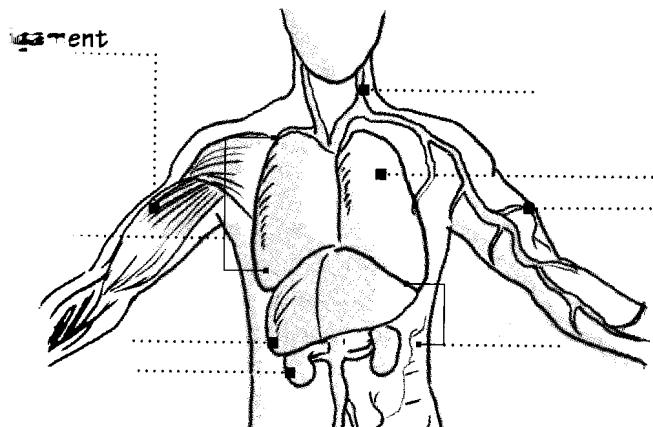
Use your mini-companion when working on this unit.

U VOCABULARY

1. ANATOMY LESSON Label the pictures with the words below.

1. ligament • abdomen • artery • vein
chest • kidney • lung • liver

2. jaw • pelvis • rib • skull • spine



2. INJURIES AND TREATMENT Label the picture with the correct words below.

- bruise • fracture • sling • stitches • stretcher



1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

3. Read the leaflet then do the exercise that follows.

HEALTH TIPS FOR TRAVELLERS

What should I do before I go abroad?

Consult your GP at least one month before departure. If you are travelling to Africa or Asia, you will probably require **vaccinations** against common **contagious** diseases like yellow fever. Ask your doctor for extra **prescriptions** for any **medications** you are taking to make sure you have an adequate supply, as certain drugs may not be available in other countries.

How can I prevent sickness?

Use your **common sense** about what is safe to eat and drink. Raw foods and tap water are common causes of food poisoning. Be extra careful with basic **hygiene**; wash your hands before eating and avoid contact with animals. Drink only bottled water. In hot countries, stay in the shade to prevent sunburn and keep up **intake** of liquids to avoid **dehydration**.

Find words that mean ...

1. ask advice from
2. injection of a substance into the body to protect it against disease
3. can be spread by contact with others
4. written instruction from a doctor to issue medication
5. cleanliness to ensure good health
6. state of having lost a large amount of water from the body

D. 1. Match the following types of alternative medicine with their descriptions.

homeopathy acupuncture reflexology chiropractic yoga

1. is the practice of inserting very thin needles into specific points on the body to improve well-being. Commonly used for pain relief, as well as to help patients tackle addictions like smoking, it is one of the key components of traditional Chinese medicine, but its efficacy has not been fully explained scientifically.
2. involves the adjustment of the spine and joints by a practitioner to release pressure on nerves in order to alleviate pain and improve general health. It is primarily used to treat back problems, headaches and injuries.
3. is based on the theory that diseases can be cured by remedies which produce, on a healthy person, similar effects to the symptoms the patient is suffering from. Its name derives from the Greek words for *similar* and *disease*, and it aims to stimulate the body's own healing response. For example, someone suffering from insomnia may be given a dose of coffee, which normally helps people stay awake. Most remedies are derived from natural sources and are used to treat a wide variety of ailments including seasonal allergies, eczema and indigestion.
4. works on zones of the feet to help heal the whole person, not just the prevailing symptoms. The practitioner uses their hands to apply pressure to points on the feet which are said to be linked to other areas and organs of the body. It has been shown to improve circulation and to be effective for migraine, arthritis, digestive disorders and stress-related conditions.
5. is a diverse ancient Indian practice for which there are many schools. It is generally a combination of breathing exercises, physical postures and meditation, used to balance mind, body and spirit. It has been used to increase flexibility, reduce stress and improve concentration. Yoga can be practised by anyone, including people who are convalescing and the elderly. It can also be used alongside conventional medicine as a complementary therapy for conditions such as diabetes and asthma.

2. According to the descriptions above, which types of alternative medicine ...

1. can help with sleeping problems
2. can be used to reduce pain
3. involves the patient taking medicine
4. can help patients give up unhealthy habits
5. help treat headaches
6. are good for aching joints
7. involves the patient making certain movements

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

1. Cross out the verb in each line that is not followed by the preposition on the right.

1. blame	concentrate	elaborate	insist	discuss	on
2. specialise	suffer	involve	confide	succeed	in
3. comply	associate	refer	identify	provide	with
4. account	blame	yearn	opt	confess	for
5. benefit	remind	suspect	notify	approve	of
6. fail	derive	differ	distract	discourage	from
7. argue	boast	respond	dream	worry	about
8. appeal	devote	subject	sympathise	react	to

2. Complete the sentences using the correct verb from the corresponding line in Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

1. Jill **blamed** the accident **on** her brother.
2. My friend Liz is the person I always **in** when I have problems.
3. I will always that island **with** my ex-boyfriend.
4. There were several courses to choose from, and I **for** Introductory Psychology.
5. My doctor **me of** George Clooney.
6. Many medical terms, for example, *diagnosis* and *psychiatry*, are **from** Greek words.
7. Julie is always **about** her successful business deals.
8. How do you think Peggy's parents will **to** the news that she's leaving home?

1 RELATED WORDS anger fear happiness sadness

1. Which emotion does each word in the list describe? Mark the following words A (anger), F (fear), H (happiness) or S (sadness). There may be more than one correct answer.

alarmed	cheerful	dejected	miserable
cross	glad	inconsolable	thrilled
furious	displeased	depressed	ecstatic
overjoyed	upset	delighted	despondent
petrified	incensed	irritated	apprehensive
scared	terrified				

2. OVER TO YOU Answer the following questions using words from the list in Exercise 1. Give reasons.

How would you feel if ...

1. you won a trip around the world?
2. you won the lottery?
3. you lost some money?
4. you went bungee jumping?
5. your best friend stole your boyfriend / girlfriend?

2 WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

ancestors
descendants
predecessors

1. a. Our died of diseases that we can now cure with antibiotics.
b. The new hospital director has set out to tackle the problems his left behind.
c. Many inhabitants of the town are of Italian immigrants who settled there in the early 1900s.

achieve
conceive
conceive

2. a. If you have high self-esteem, you will be as a confident person.
b. Can you of a world without famine or disease?
c. It is very satisfying to goals you have set yourself.

affect
effect
reflect

3. a. Age the length of time you need to convalesce from an illness.
b. One of the of stress is to weaken the body's immune system.
c. A child with chicken pox must stay home from school so as not to others.

conduct
subject
object

4. a. Scientists continue to experiments on live animals, despite activists' protests.
b. Surely you wouldn't to donating blood to help save lives?
c. Doctors Bob to countless tests before they found the root of his problem.

remind
recall
retain

5. a. I clearly the first time I went to the dentist.
b. Grandad is getting forgetful so we constantly have to him to take his tablets.
c. Isn't it strange how our brains sometimes useless information, but we forget the important stuff?

imaginary
fantastic
imaginative

6. a. Many children invent a(n) friend to talk to.
b. Sally told me about a chiropractor she's been going to for her back.
c. Some people come up with solutions to everyday problems in their dreams.

sceptical
thoughtful
conscious

7. a. I agreed to see the counsellor but I was about the results.
b. It was really of you to give her a portable DVD player.
c. With a local anaesthetic, you remain fully during an operation.

conscience
attitude
intuition

8. a. If you're pessimistic, you'll never improve – you need a positive
b. I refuse to lie to him – I don't want that on my
c. Sometimes it doesn't help to think rationally – you just have to trust your

D. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with the negative forms of the adjectives below.

<u>accurate</u>	decisive	flexible	moral	polite	sensitive
adequate	discreet	intentional	mortal	possible	similar
aware	effective	justified	natural	practical	sufficient
capable	faithful	likely	obedient	precise	usual
conscious	fallible	loyal	patient	scientific	
consistent	familiar	mature	perfect	secure	

in-

im-

10

dis-

inaccurate

2. Complete the text below with negative adjectives you formed in Exercise 1

ONLY CHILDREN

In today's busy world, many parents find it (1) impossible..... to consider having more than one child. But what many people are (2) unaware..... of are the psychological consequences of growing up without siblings. On the plus side, an only child is (3) un..... to be (4) in..... . In fact, with all the love and attention only children receive, they are inclined to be very self-confident. However, they are often (5) impatient..... because they have never had to wait their turn, and may be (6) in..... of sharing. Some infant school teachers believe that only children are (7) discontent..... . They can be (8) in..... to the needs of others, as they are not accustomed to anybody else taking priority over them. All only children are spoilt to a certain extent, even though this is usually (9) un..... on the part of the parents. Unfortunately there is no (10) in..... way for parents to guarantee that their only child grows up without these negative characteristics.

E. COLLOCATIONS

We often use adverbs to increase the force of an adjective: **bitterly opposed, utterly useless**.

Many adverb + adjective combinations are fixed collocations. Which adverb goes with each group of adjectives?

bitterly • terribly • fully • downright • deeply • highly • perfectly • utterly

F. METAPHOR AND MEANING

Words and expressions connected with physical health are often used to talk about emotional states or social and economic situations.

His comments were **hurtful**. (= *he upset me with his comments*)

a **healthy** economy (= *the economy of the country is doing well*)

1. Mark the following words + (positive) or - (negative).

wound recover ailing scar painful
sting cure stab kick

2. Complete the sentences using the following words and expressions.

painful • **recovery** • **scarred** • **kick** • **cure** • **ailing** • **rub salt in the wound**
wounded my pride • **pains** • **stabbed** • **stung** • **healthy**

1. The break-up was a **painful** experience which left her mistrustful of all men.
2. Being rejected from all the colleges that I applied to really
3. Government ministers are predicting an economic
4. His difficult experiences at school him for life.
5. The World Bank must act now to rescue the country's economy.
6. I supported him for years, but then he turned round and me in the back.
7. It me to say it, but she is much more talented than I am.
8. I know the accident was my fault – there's no need to by reminding me.
9. I was by my mother's criticism.
10. After the months I'd invested in training, my not being chosen for the team was a real in the teeth.
11. A new exam system will not offer a miracle for the education system.
12. I paid the last instalment on my car last month, so my bank account is beginning to look

G. MULTIPLE MEANINGS life mind sense

Use **life**, **mind** or **sense** to complete the sentences. Then match the words or phrases you've completed to their meanings.

1. Has it ever crossed your **mind** that you might be wrong? a. natural ability to find your way
2. In a the poet Byron was the first pop star. b. remember something
3. Many women come to motherhood late in c. be logical and practical
4. Thanks for the advice. I'll bear it in d. be happy about
5. It makes to have your child vaccinated. e. be careful
6. Do you that she is ill at ease? f. very exciting time
7. The Japanese have the highest expectancy. g. realise, perceive
8. I wouldn't spending a weekend at a health spa. h. at an older age than expected
9. I had the time of my on holiday. i. activity / excitement
10. Kay has an excellent of direction. j. occur to somebody
11. There's not much on the island in winter. k. average number of years people live
12. you don't get sunburnt out there today. l. thinking about something in one way

H. IN OTHER WORDS Match the words or phrases in colour with their meanings.

1. They are underage. a. the action is deliberate
2. She does it by hand. b. not old enough
3. He's under an illusion. c. the actions are ineffective
4. She is in earnest. d. serious
5. They do it in vain. e. available
6. She does it on purpose. f. has a false idea
7. He always has a first aid kit on hand. g. without thinking
8. He does things on impulse. h. doesn't use a machine



EXAM PRACTICE

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

HEARING IN COLOUR

A number of scientists around the world are now investigating a phenomenon called *synaesthesia* that may (1) as many as one in 2,000 people. The name (2) from the Greek words for *together* and *perception* and means that some people's senses work in combination. For example, some people (3) colour when they hear particular sounds. Similarly, a smell or taste may be (4) as a reaction to information received from the eyes. However, the most common form of synaesthesia occurs among people who (5) certain letters or words with colours. Scientists at Cambridge University (6) experiments to determine whether this is actually a product of mental activity or if some individuals are just (7) imaginative. They discovered that synaesthetes, people who experience synaesthesia, (8) associate the same letters or words with the same colours. Brain scans revealed (9) activity in the brain when subjects were listening to words, suggesting that it is a physical condition. The most plausible explanation is that synaesthetes have slightly different connections between the areas of the brain which control their (10) Synaesthesia is not a medical problem, however, and synaesthetes often (11) from an unusually good memory, probably because they have extra information to help them (12) things like names and numbers.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A effect | B infect | C suffer | D affect |
| 2. A reminds | B derives | C prescribes | D distracts |
| 3. A differ | B view | C see | D mind |
| 4. A retained | B perceived | C thought | D responded |
| 5. A associate | B elaborate | C conceive | D comply |
| 6. A achieved | B objected | C subjected | D conducted |
| 7. A deeply | B utterly | C highly | D fully |
| 8. A perfectly | B earnestly | C practically | D consistently |
| 9. A unusual | B infallible | C insecure | D incapable |
| 10. A consciences | B attitudes | C senses | D conditions |
| 11. A approve | B sting | C cure | D benefit |
| 12. A recall | B remind | C react | D reminisce |

B. WORD FORMATION Use the words given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

SLEEP LESS AND LIVE LONGER



According to a (1) published study, people who only get six or seven hours of sleep have longer life (2) than those who sleep eight or more hours. "The idea that we need eight hours of sleep is completely (3) , " said Professor Daniel Kripke, who led the study.

RECENT
EXPECT

The methods used, however, have been (4) Investigators relied on people's own accounts of how long they slept, which could be rather (5) , as no one really knows when they fall asleep. Contrary to Professor Kripke's findings, most experts believe that getting (6) sleep is a serious problem. Lack of sleep can be dangerous – for example, the risk of accidents is (7) affected by a person's level of alertness.

SCIENCE

What all scientists agree on is that more research is needed to discover exactly what the (8) is between sleep and longevity. This research is essential because with all the (9) of modern life, such as cable TV and the Internet, it seems that a good night's rest is becoming (10) rare.

CRITIC

PRECISE
SUFFICE

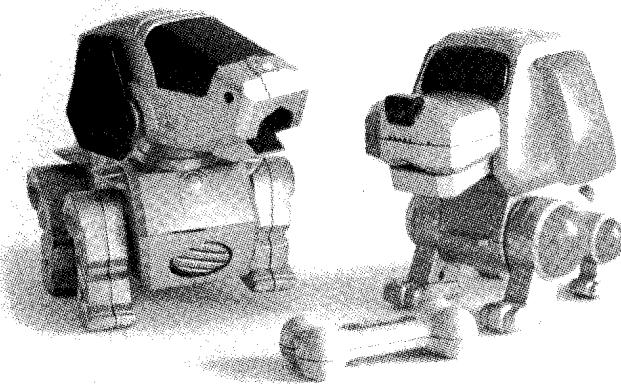
GREAT

CONNECT
DISTRACT
INCREASE

A OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

ROBOTIC PETS

Picture this scene: a group of pet owners in a local park, sitting and chatting (1) their pets chase balls and get into trouble. You (2) be forgiven for thinking that there is nothing unusual in this. But (3) thing is strange about this scene – all the dogs are robots. In the (4) few years, more than 100,000 AIBOs – computer-controlled robot pets – have (5) sold, and they are now a world-wide phenomenon. Whoever invented the AIBO must (6) spent hours studying dog behaviour because the robot's behaviour is uncannily realistic. They are programmed to react (7) voices, sounds and their surroundings, and although they are not (8) to see, they can perceive some colour and are attracted to pink. However, an AIBO won't always chase after a pink object – sometimes it will wander off (9) the opposite direction. AIBOs are programmed to behave unpredictably in order to give the impression that they act (10) impulse like real animals. AIBOs also mature emotionally, which means their behaviour changes as they get older. AIBO owners name their robots and they boast (11) what they can do and (12) they have changed (13) they were "little". However, robot pets differ (14) real ones in one important sense – there is a switch so these pets can (15) turned off when you want some peace and quiet.



B GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. Shelley was by her friend's cruel remarks.
Have you ever been by a wasp?
My eyes because I'd been sitting too close to the fire.
2. Tom hasn't stopped eating – he has such a appetite today.
With both of us working full-time, we've got a bank balance at last.
Preventive medicine aims at keeping people rather than trying to cure disease.
3. The national health system is failing! I the previous government for cutting back on spending.
The committee must decide who is to for the mix-up.
Marcus tried to the accident on his sister to avoid being punished.
4. With young children in the house, it's best to have a thermometer on
How many bones are there in the human ?
She has to have all her shoes specially made by
5. The health minister claimed to be aware of all aspects of the crisis.
My gran still hasn't recovered from the fall she had last month.
Helen expected to win first prize in the competition.
6. Jim is always getting lost because he has no of direction.
She heard conflicting opinions and in the end, she used her common
It makes to listen to your doctor's advice.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The hotel manager more helpful during our stay.
 - a. mustn't have been
 - b. will have been
 - c. had to be
 - d. couldn't have been
2. I wonder if I some questions for our survey.
 - a. might ask you
 - b. would ask you
 - c. am able to ask
 - d. shall I ask you
3. Chris insensitive comments.
 - a. has ever made
 - b. always will make
 - c. forever makes
 - d. is forever making
4. Any new drug must undergo trials before it is approved for use.
 - a. extension
 - b. extend
 - c. extensive
 - d. extensively
5. "Should we call Mike and get him to bring his CDs?"
"It's too late now. He home already."
 - a. was supposed to leave
 - b. will have left
 - c. could be leaving
 - d. had better leave
6. "The dining room is ready now, isn't it?"
"No, I some flowers."
 - a. must still have arranged
 - b. had to arrange
 - c. still have to arrange
 - d. would have to arrange
7. William thought it to take extra medication with him.
 - a. would make sense
 - b. was in sense
 - c. does sense
 - d. has done sense
8. "Hi, Jay. I'm just calling to see how you are."
"It's funny you should call. I about you."
 - a. have just thought
 - b. was just thinking
 - c. was to think
 - d. am thinking
9. "How come Brenda didn't audition for the show?"
"I guess she the notice."
 - a. didn't have to see
 - b. needn't have seen
 - c. must not have seen
 - d. should not have seen
10. Children under 12 in the front seat of a car.
 - a. could not to travel
 - b. had better not to travel
 - c. ought to not travel
 - d. are not supposed to travel

VOCABULARY

11. A traumatic experience in childhood can a person for life.
 - a. sting
 - b. infect
 - c. blur
 - d. scar
12. I couldn't help feeling about appearing on TV.
 - a. apprehensive
 - b. compulsive
 - c. innovative
 - d. supportive
13. Don't worry – it's natural to lose your temper sometimes.
 - a. bitterly
 - b. downright
 - c. perfectly
 - d. highly
14. Sleeping tablets can help people from insomnia.
 - a. addicted
 - b. suffering
 - c. concentrating
 - d. affected
15. One of the of working at a pizza restaurant is the free food.
 - a. perks
 - b. twists
 - c. prescriptions
 - d. ailments
16. After years of experience, she is now at handling crises in the office.
 - a. focused
 - b. immune
 - c. adept
 - d. conscious
17. I knew about Jim's problem because he had in me earlier.
 - a. confided
 - b. inspired
 - c. discussed
 - d. notified
18. What's the earliest memory that you can ?
 - a. remind
 - b. reminisce
 - c. recall
 - d. retain
19. The open-air theater was the perfect for a Greek tragedy.
 - a. scenery
 - b. perspective
 - c. domain
 - d. venue
20. The teachers' pack of extra worksheets and a DVD for classroom use.
 - a. conducts
 - b. consists
 - c. characterizes
 - d. contributes

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

Health experts have long recognized a connection between exercise and mental (1).

A recent study has determined how much activity it (2) to improve your state of mind and reduce the risk of (3). From an analysis of a survey of 20,000 people, researchers concluded that (4) 20 minutes of exercise or physical activity per week makes the difference, as long as (5) is strenuous enough to make you breathless. This doesn't have to mean joining a gym – it could be (6) from dancing or swimming to doing housework. So, in effect, cleaning your house (7) well be a good idea not only from a (8) point of view, it could also boost your mental health. This (9) be because the brain is a physical (10) just like the lungs and heart, and so it makes (11) that it benefits (12) exercise in a similar way.

The exact connection between exercise and mental health is not (13) known, but one group of scientists is researching new drug (14) which could have the same uplifting effect as exercise. They have (15) their research on (16) of the brain called the *hippocampus*. They discovered that during exercise specific genes became more active. These genes are (17) in the production of a chemical which is needed for nerve cells to develop. The scientists then made a version of the chemical and tested it on mice. The effect was similar (18) that of existing anti-depressant drugs. It is hoped that their work will lead to the development of more (19) drugs than those (20) available.

- | | | |
|-----|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. | a. well-being | c. expectancy |
| | b. administration | d. experience |
| 2. | a. wants | c. takes |
| | b. ought | d. needs |
| 3. | a. symptom | c. ailment |
| | b. depression | d. destruction |
| 4. | a. with | c. just |
| | b. the | d. few |
| 5. | a. it | c. nothing |
| | b. they | d. activity |
| 6. | a. anything | c. something |
| | b. different | d. dissimilar |
| 7. | a. does | c. may |
| | b. used | d. can |
| 8. | a. does | c. cure |
| | b. hygiene | d. recovery |
| 9. | a. could | c. can't |
| | b. shall | d. supposed |
| 10. | a. joint | c. posture |
| | b. organ | d. asset |
| 11. | a. logic | c. sense |
| | b. purpose | d. likely |
| 12. | a. of | c. from |
| | b. to | d. in |
| 13. | a. yet | c. still |
| | b. already | d. ever |
| 14. | a. meditations | c. vaccinations |
| | b. treatments | d. alleviations |
| 15. | a. identified | c. complied |
| | b. focused | d. consulted |
| 16. | a. a kind | c. domain |
| | b. an area | d. scale |
| 17. | a. appealed | c. involved |
| | b. referred | d. suspected |
| 18. | a. to | c. by |
| | b. with | d. about |
| 19. | a. insensitive | c. efficient |
| | b. skeptical | d. conscious |
| 20. | a. being | c. are |
| | b. currently | d. highly |

Gerunds and Infinitives

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. It's no use sitting / to sit / sit around all day if you want to get fit.
2. Most people would rather living / live / to live with others than alone.
3. Our class has volunteered cleaning / to be cleaned / to clean up the beach.
4. The firefighters tried putting / put / to put out the blaze, but failed.
5. When I got home, I found my friend Jill waiting / to wait / be waiting in front of my house.
6. The new recruits were made run / running / to run 10 km in the pouring rain.
7. The children haven't had anything eating / to have eaten / to eat this morning.
8. Justin convinced me take / to take / taking part in the game show.
9. All members of staff in this department are motivated working / to be working / to work hard.
10. Do you remember to play / playing / to be playing on the beach when you were a kid?
11. Only one of the players on the team has the talent become / to become / be becoming a professional.
12. Local people are opposed to the airport be built / be building / being built so close to their village.
13. Taking up a hobby like photography can mean to have / have / having to buy a lot of expensive equipment.
14. You'd better not hand / handing / to hand in your essay without reading it over one more time.

B. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning to the first one.

1. Jake would sooner go by taxi than walk.
 - a. It would be quicker for Jake to go by taxi.
 - b. Jake would prefer to take a taxi.
2. The producer stopped to read the film script.
 - a. The producer stopped what he was doing to read the script.
 - b. The producer finished reading the film script.
3. Would you mind my opening the window?
 - a. Is it OK if I open the window?
 - b. Could you open the window for me?
4. I bet Simon has forgotten sending that letter.
 - a. Simon probably didn't send the letter.
 - b. Simon sent the letter but probably can't remember.
5. I regret telling you that I want to quit my job.
 - a. I feel sorry that I am telling you that I want to quit my job.
 - b. I'm sorry that I told you I want to quit my job.
6. Professor Smith went on talking about evolutionary theory.
 - a. Professor Smith changed the subject and began talking about evolutionary theory.
 - b. Professor Smith continued to talk about evolutionary theory.



Score: / 20

RULES

THE GERUND (For verbs and expressions followed by the gerund, see Grammar Appendix, page 216.)

	Active voice	Passive voice
Present	(not) doing	(not) being done
Perfect	(not) having done	(not) having been done

The gerund is used as a noun in the following cases:

- as subject or object of a verb
 - after certain verbs and expressions
 - after prepositions
 - after the verbs *go / come* (usually recreational activities)
 - after *sit / stand / lie* + expression of place
 - with *no* to show prohibition or that something is impossible
- Walking** is good exercise.
- I **postponed taking** the course for another year.
It's no use **complaining** about your salary.
I'm looking forward to **reading** her new novel.
- I paid him for **servicing** the car.
- Will you **come shopping** with us?
No, thanks. I **went shopping** yesterday.
- I **stood there wondering** what to do.
He used to **sit outside reading** a book.
- No smoking.**
There's **no arguing** with her – her mind is made up!

Notes

- When using a gerund and referring to two people, we use:
 - verb + possessive pronoun + gerund
 - verb + object pronoun + gerund
 - verb + possessive noun + gerund
 - verb + noun + gerund
- When referring to past actions, the perfect gerund form is also possible.
I hope you don't mind my **having told** you.

THE INFINITIVE (For words and expressions followed by the infinitive, see Grammar Appendix, pages 216-217.)

	Active voice	Passive voice
Present	(not) to do	(not) to be done
Present Continuous	(not) to be doing	—
Perfect	(not) to have done	(not) to have been done
Perfect Continuous	(not) to have been doing	—

The infinitive is used:

- as the subject of a sentence
 - after certain verbs and expressions
 - after verb + object
 - after certain adjectives describing character, feelings, attitudes and senses
 - after certain nouns
 - after *It + be + adjective / noun*
 - with certain structures
 - too + adverb / adjective*
 - so + adverb / adjective + as*
 - adjective / adverb + enough*
 - enough + noun*
 - after *be to* for instructions, plans (see Unit 1)
 - in a phrase that begins a sentence (*To be honest, To tell you the truth, ...*)
- To resign** now would be a mistake.
- The whole trip **turned out to be** a disappointment.
It is up to you to decide.
- She told me (not) to post the letters.
- I'm delighted to meet you.
- She has the ability to learn.
- It would be silly / a mistake to resign now.
- She's too young to drive.
Would you be so kind as to post this letter?
She spoke clearly enough to be heard.
He earns enough money to live on.
- No one is to leave the building.
- To be honest**, I don't like him at all.

- after verbs such as *know, decide, discover, find out, see, show, understand, want to know* + question word
 - after *something, anything, nothing*, etc.
 - after *only* to show a surprising or disappointing result
 - to express purpose (= *in order to*)
- I **didn't know what to do.**
I **wondered where to go** for lunch.
- Homeless people may have **nobody to turn to.**
- She searched her bag **only to find** her purse was gone.
- He contacted me **to set up** a meeting.

GERUND OR INFINITIVE?

- Some verbs can be followed by a gerund or infinitive with little or no difference in meaning. (See Grammar Appendix, pages 216-217.)
They have **started working / to work** on the new airport.
- Some verbs can be followed by a gerund or infinitive with a difference in meaning.

remember + infinitive	Judy always remembers to post the letters. (= <i>intention; remember to perform a duty, task or responsibility; remember is the earlier action</i>)
remember + gerund	Judy remembers visiting Paris. (= <i>remember a past action</i>)
forget + infinitive	Jill forgot to post the letters. (= <i>forget to fulfil a duty or responsibility</i>)
forget + gerund	Jill will never forget visiting Paris. (= <i>forget an earlier action, usually a negative or question</i>)
regret + infinitive	I regret to tell you that you failed your examination. (= <i>announce bad news</i>)
regret + gerund	I regret telling her about the accident. (= <i>feel sorrow about a past action</i>)
stop + infinitive	John stopped to drink some water. (= <i>finish one action in order to do another</i>)
stop + gerund	John stopped drinking wine last year. (= <i>stop a habit or an activity</i>)
try + infinitive	I must try to improve my spoken English. (= <i>make an effort to do something difficult</i>)
try + gerund	I tried using tapes to improve my spoken English but that didn't help so I tried taking a course. (= <i>experiment with a new or different approach</i>)
mean + infinitive	I didn't mean to interrupt you. (= <i>intend</i>)
mean + gerund	Going by rail means paying a lot more to get there. (= <i>involves or will result in</i>)
need + infinitive	I need to borrow a pen. (= <i>it is necessary</i>)
need + gerund	The car needs servicing . (= <i>passive meaning – it needs to be done</i>)
go on + infinitive	He talked about the course and went on to warn students about cheating in exams. (= <i>change to another action</i>)
go on + gerund	He went on lecturing after the bell rang. (= <i>continue the same action</i>)

FULL OR BARE INFINITIVE? *let, help, make, dare, would rather, had better, would sooner*

let + pronoun / noun + bare infinitive	I let the employees leave early.
help + pronoun + bare or full infinitive (same meaning)	Will you help me do the filing? Will you help me to do the filing?
make + pronoun / noun + bare infinitive pronoun / noun + be made (passive) + full infinitive	He made us work late. We were made to work late.
dare + bare or full infinitive (expressing courage) dare + bare infinitive (expressing a warning, usually negative) dare + someone + full infinitive (challenging someone)	I don't dare tell / to tell her about the accident. Don't you dare touch that again! I dare you to say that to his face!
had better / would rather / would sooner + bare infinitive had better / would rather / would sooner + continuous or perfect infinitive	I'd sooner stay single than marry a liar! I'd rather be working than sitting at home bored. You'd better not be chatting when the boss walks in. We went to Spain although I'd sooner have gone to Paris.

VERBS OF PERCEPTION / SENSORY VERBS: *see, notice, watch, look at, observe, hear, listen to, feel, smell*

verb + noun / pronoun + gerund for an incomplete or repeated action	I saw Helen running up the stairs. (<i>while she was running</i>) I can smell something burning . (<i>infinitive not possible here</i>)
verb + noun / pronoun + bare infinitive for complete single action	I saw Helen sing in a concert last night.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

buy • enter • bake • break • have • read • offend • discover • lend • speak

1. This device will enable you **to bake** your own bread quickly and easily.
2. You are forbidden the laboratory without protective clothing.
3. Tim pretended a headache as he didn't want to go to school.
4. The customer wanted to know who to about the faulty goods she had purchased.
5. I was delighted that I had won £1,000.
6. Jan lay by the pool a magazine.
7. Why don't you let me you the money that you need?
8. I'm sorry, I didn't mean anyone with my thoughtless remark.
9. The witness said she saw the man the car window.
10. The estate agent advised us a bigger property.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Richard didn't expect **to be chosen** (choose) for the school team.
2. According to the invitation, the ceremony was (hold) at the hotel.
3. As the deadline approached, I regretted not (spend) my time more productively.
4. The accountant is rumoured (steal) a large sum of money from the company.
5. We appreciated (invite) to our neighbour's wedding.
6. Sue is really lucky (give) a new car for her birthday!
7. I told my aunt about my problem, though I'd rather (confide) in a friend.
8. As a child I always enjoyed (take) to the fair.

3 Choose the correct verb to complete each sentence. Make any necessary changes.

1. offer / mind

Did you helping out in the school shop?

Did you to help out in the school shop?

2. demand / make

The police officer to see my driving licence.

The police officer me show him my driving licence.

3. threaten / persuade

My father me to stay home and study.

My father to stop my pocket money if I didn't stay home and study.

4. dare / fancy

Joseph doesn't tell her the bad news.

Joseph doesn't telling her the bad news.

5. consider / hesitate

I not replying to her letter.

I didn't to reply to her letter.

6. recommend / encourage

The headmistress taking the examination a year early.

The headmistress some students to take the examination a year early.

4 Complete the sentences with one suitable word.

1. The kids look like they're having **fun** trying on their mum's old shoes and hats.
2. There's getting out of the test – everyone has to do it.
3. The archaeologists carefully opened up the tomb, to find that its contents had been stolen.
4. The play is thought to been written by Shakespeare.
5. George hates kept waiting – we'd better hurry up.
6. The walls in this room painting.
7. The results of the election to be announced tonight.
8. Only Alex would be so silly to go out in his slippers!

E. Complete the text using the gerund or infinitive form of the following verbs.

accept • welcome • say • fill in • give • inform • attend • achieve • offer • contact

We are pleased (1) you that your application for a place on our Media Studies course has been accepted. This is conditional on your (2) the following at A level:

English Literature – grade B

two other subjects at grade C or above

We regret (3) that we will be unable (4) you a place if you do not meet these requirements.

If you wish (5) this offer, please do so within 15 days by (6) the acceptance slip at the bottom of this letter. The college will automatically be informed of your exam results in August, so it will not be necessary for you (7) the college at that time. You will be sent confirmation of your place and registration details in due course.

Should you change your mind about (8) Sutton College, please let us know to allow the opportunity (9) to another applicant.

We look forward to (10) you as a student at Sutton.

Yours sincerely,

K. Taylor
Registrations Supervisor

TEXT FEATURES

A. SPELLING: two vowels together (See Spelling Appendix, page 219, for words with *ie* / *ei*.)

Correct the spelling in the following sentences. There may be more than one mistake in each sentence.

leaflet *factual*

1. The *leaflet* contains *factual* information.
2. I really apprepected your fiedback.
3. A distinguished carier is quite an acheivement.
4. Make sure you get a receipt at the restuarant.
5. Is it feasible to interveiw 20 employees?
6. I swear I would never decieve you.
7. Liz is always courtious to her guests.
8. My eye condition makes it difficult to percieve height and depth.

B. PUNCTUATION: capital letters (See Punctuation Appendix, page 220.)

Correct the capitalisation in the following sentences.

1. Easter monday is a National holiday in britain.
2. I think professor Davis teaches russian.
3. even adults read the harry potter books.
4. The *times* published a favourable review of the *lord of the rings* trilogy.
5. Dr Jones works at the Royal Hospital, where he treats patients with Heart Disease.

C. COHESION AND COHERENCE: determiners (*the, this, these, that, those*) and quantifiers (*some, all, both, etc.*)

- **Determiners** help us to identify exactly what is being talked about. *This* can refer back to a whole situation or idea, not just one object.
Currently, violent films can be shown at any time of day. **This** is unacceptable.
- **The definite article** can show that the writer is referring back to something that has already been mentioned.
The studio **marketed Rambo aggressively** but **the** film did not live up to **the** hype.
- **Quantifiers** can refer back to a previous number or group.
Over **300 people** were surveyed. **Just over half** were dissatisfied with the service. (**Half** refers back to **the 300 people who were surveyed**.)

1. Read the first paragraph of a newspaper article. What do the words in colour refer to?

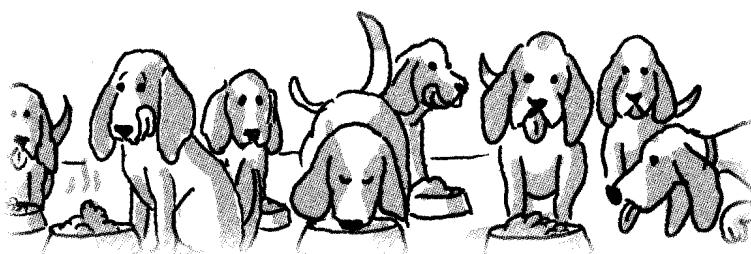
OLD DOGS CAN LEARN NEW TRICKS

Scientists have found that they can halt the mental decline of elderly dogs by putting them on a vegetable-rich diet. As with humans, canine behaviour changes with old age. This can involve symptoms from reduced mobility due to arthritis to losing interest in favourite toys. In some cases, diet cannot only reverse these effects of ageing, but make dogs more intelligent than they were before. The findings are the result of a research project aimed at extending the working lives of military dogs. In the project, dogs were given a special diet and then put through a series of tests to assess their ability to learn new tasks and solve problems.

2. Now read the next paragraph of the article. Complete the gaps using the words and phrases given.

the others • the dogs • this research • in this case • two • half • one • this

One experiment involved 48 beagles, who were divided into two groups. (1) **Half** were fed on dried food and the rest were given regular dog food. Some of the dogs in both groups were given more walks and stimulation than (2) Then they were all put through the same tests. Professor Bill Milgram, a neuroscientist, said that one of the tasks was called an *oddity test*. He went on to explain that (3) were shown three objects. (4) were identical and one was clearly different. Food was hidden under the odd (5) and the researchers gauged how long it took the dogs to learn (6) Professor Milgram has been studying the mental ability of older dogs since 1990 as part of a wider study on the brain. He said that food containing antioxidants combined with vitamins could help to sustain mental sharpness which, (7) , indicated that you **can** teach old dogs new tricks! He believes (8) has applications for humans because like us, dogs can eat all sorts of food and have similar nutritional needs.



TASTE TEST TODAY!



EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Alice didn't want to go to the shops with her friends that Saturday. **FEEL**
Alice shopping with her friends that Saturday.
2. If you need any advice, you can always ask me. **HESITATE**
If you need any advice, me.
3. You can't go to lunch until you have finished the report. **NEEDS**
The report you go to lunch.
4. Having an argument about the referee's decision would be a waste of time. **POINT**
There's the referee's decision.
5. Tony doesn't have the ability to memorise long poems. **CAPABLE**
Tony is long poems.
6. Janet couldn't identify the thief as she didn't get a clear view of him. **ENOUGH**
Janet didn't see the thief to identify him.
7. I hope you broke my computer by accident! **BETTER**
You my computer on purpose!
8. After telling us about the hotel, Max described the resort to us. **WENT**
Max told us about the hotel and a description of the resort.

B. Circle the correct answer.

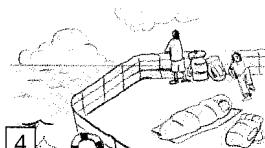
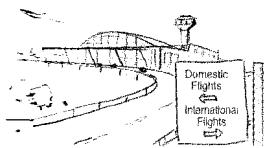
1. I will always regret the chance to travel.
 - a. not to have
 - b. to not have
 - c. not having had
 - d. having not
2. Would the plan involve a great deal of money?
 - a. to be investing
 - b. our investing
 - c. us to invest
 - d. we investing
3. Weren't you supposed your notes with you to yesterday's seminar?
 - a. to have brought
 - b. to be brought
 - c. to have been brought
 - d. have brought
4. Surely the professor wouldn't be everyone in the class!
 - a. too cruel to fail
 - b. enough cruel to fail
 - c. so cruel failing
 - d. so cruel as to fail
5. We had no idea with us on the trip.
 - a. to take how much money
 - b. taking how much money
 - c. how much money to take
 - d. how much money taking
6. Christine and Joyce were careful while they were gossiping.
 - a. to be not overheard
 - b. to not overhear
 - c. not to be overhearing
 - d. not to be overheard
7. I thanked him for so generous with his time.
 - a. him being
 - b. having been
 - c. to have been
 - d. him to be
8. Doesn't Harriet spend a long time ?
 - a. putting on her make-up
 - b. to put on her make-up
 - c. having put on her make-up
 - d. to be putting on her make-up

Travel and Tourism

Your mini-companion
when working on this unit.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

1. Match the pictures 1-4 with the statements below. Pay attention to the words in colour.



- TODD: When I was a student I went backpacking round Europe. We saved money by hitchhiking and sleeping on deck on ferries on overnight trips. It was tough carrying all my belongings in one small rucksack, but it was an unforgettable experience.
- CORIS: We went for a weekend break at a small family-run guesthouse, just a few miles from York. The amenities were first class and the owners were so hospitable!
- SETH: To catch the connecting flight, we had to transfer to a different terminal. We needn't have rushed though – there was a delay so we had plenty of time to go to the duty-free shop in the departure lounge.
- SIMON: We stopped by the travel agency to pick up brochures so we can book our summer holiday. Trouble is, we can't decide – should we go for an all-inclusive package at a huge resort or book self-catering accommodation somewhere off the beaten track?

Who mentions ...

- an airport building
- a late departure
- carrying luggage
- an isolated destination
- 5. facilities
- 6. the kind of welcome they received
- 7. a popular holiday destination
- 8. travelling by car

2. Read the advertisement then choose the correct meaning for the words below.

TERRA FIRMA WILL TAKE YOU TO THE ENDS OF THE EARTH

21- and 28-day walking holidays to Peru, Nepal and Africa from €3800

Looking for a holiday with a difference?

Join one of our expeditions to some of the remotest destinations on earth. Days are spent trekking through dramatic mountain scenery, escorted by local guides. Although you'll be walking through rocky terrain, all trails have been specially selected to pose no difficulty for a reasonably fit person. Nights are spent under canvas or in mountain lodges offering comfortable accommodation. Our itineraries are carefully designed to offer an amazing combination of adventure and luxury, perfect for the modern traveller who sees himself as a pioneer and wants to explore far-flung corners of the world.



- trekking
 - a. walking or climbing over rough terrain
 - b. relaxing
- escorted
 - a. trained
 - b. accompanied
- trail
 - a. rough path
 - b. long journey
- under canvas
 - a. in luxurious surroundings
 - b. in a tent
- 5. lodge
 - a. building where travellers can stay
 - b. natural feature of the landscape
- 6. itinerary
 - a. plan of a tour or journey
 - b. advertising material
- 7. pioneer
 - a. tourist
 - b. one of the first people to do something
- 8. far-flung
 - a. inhospitable
 - b. distant

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY



A. COMPOUND NOUNS

Use the words below to complete the compound nouns that match the definitions.

trip ~~lag~~ operator season board

1. feeling of tiredness and confusion about time after a long plane journey jet ~~lag~~
2. popular time of the year for holidays peak
3. person or business which plans and sells tours tour
4. journey to a place and back round
5. hotel accommodation with all meals full

B. COMPOUND NOUNS AND PHRASAL VERBS

There are several compound nouns which are derived from phrasal verbs. Some of these are hyphenated.

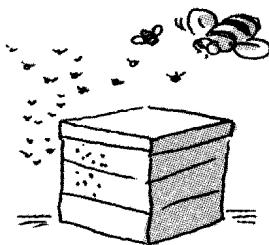
Complete the sentences using the compound nouns below.

check-in ~~getaway~~ outset let-up ~~touchdown~~ mix-up ~~letdown~~
pile-up ~~stopover~~ ~~washout~~

1. The camping trip was a complete – it poured down the whole weekend.
2. There was a with our tickets – we were charged for one-way tickets and not a round trip.
3. We didn't fly directly to Australia – we had a one-night in Singapore.
4. The motorway was blocked because there had been a
5. There was no in the noise outside our hotel and we couldn't get to sleep.
6. I wish I had known at the that the climb would be so difficult.
7. The celebrity couple spent their honeymoon at their island to avoid the press.
8. Your luggage may be inspected at for security reasons.
9. After , please remain seated until the aircraft comes to a standstill outside the terminal building.
10. In comparison with the exotic pictures in the brochure, the resort was a real

C. RELATED WORDS: groups

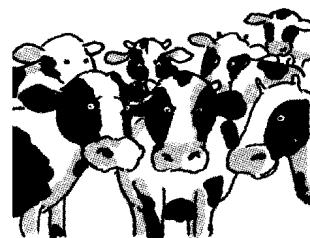
1. Label the pictures with the correct word.



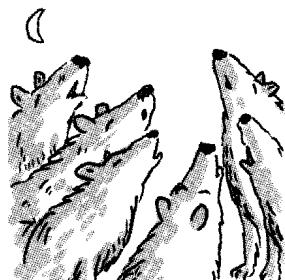
1. of bees



2. of birds



3. of cows



4. of wolves

2. Explain the meaning of the words and expressions in colour.

1. The streets around the stadium were swarming with police officers.
2. Hordes of tourists visit Knossos every summer.
3. Shoppers flocked to the first day of the sales in search of bargains.
4. People came in droves to see the Christmas lights.
5. We decided to go to a quiet little beach rather than follow the herd to the more popular beach.

2 EXPRESSIONS ... and ...

1. Complete the expressions with the following words.

large • wide • back • round • sound • pieces
cons • buts • about • again

- round and **round** going about in circles, lost
- far and many places
- there and going and returning
- out and various places, not staying indoors
- pros and good points and bad points
- fs and doubts, objections
- bits and various small items
- safe and unharmed
- by and mostly
- now and occasionally

2 Complete the letter using the most suitable expression from Exercise 1.

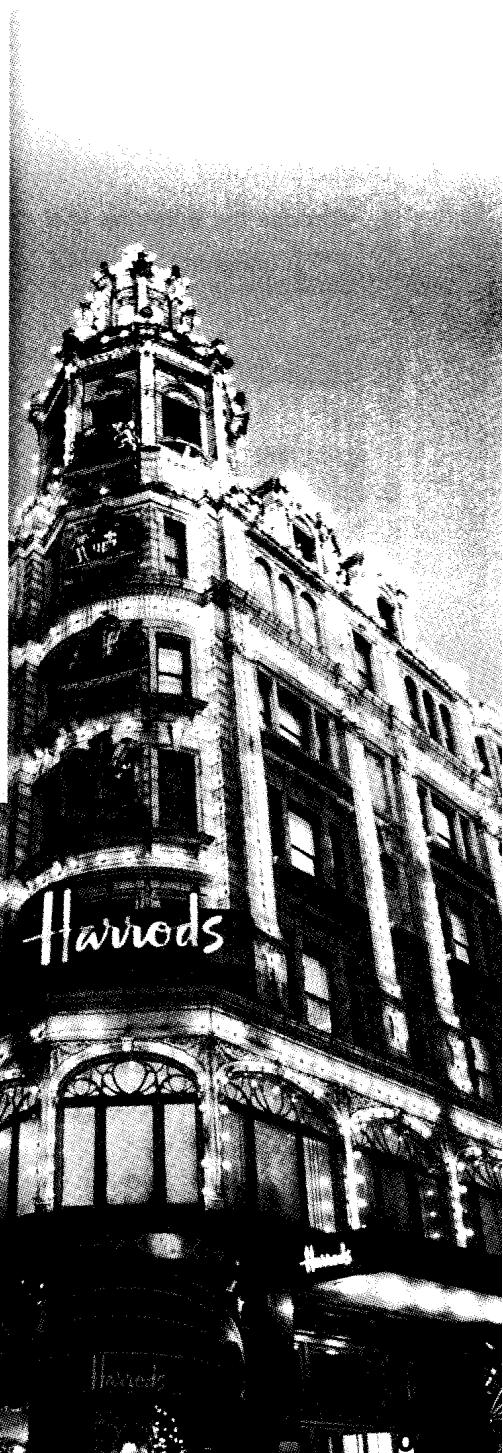
Dear Paul,

Greetings from London! After an eventful journey - I'll tell you all about it later - we finally got here (1) Thank goodness! We've been (2) all week, seeing all the sights. This morning we went to Harrods, the famous department store. I'd heard that people come from (3) to shop there, but I had no idea it would be so huge! Keith and I got lost and spent an hour wandering (4) trying to find the food halls. It was fairly pricey of course, so I just bought a few (5) as souvenirs.

Anyway, despite the awful flight, (6) it's been great to spend a few days in the bright lights of the big city - we all need a change of scene (7) , don't we?

See you next week.

Love,
Janet



E. WORD FORMATION

Some prefixes have specific meanings.

over = more than enough	<i>oversleep, overestimate, overactive, overeat</i>
under = not enough	<i>undervalue, underrate, underdressed</i>
out = more or better than	<i>outlive, outvote, outweigh</i>
multi = many	<i>multimillionaire, multicoloured, multicultural</i>

Answer the following questions using a word formed with one of the prefixes above and the word in colour.

1. If you make something sound too simple, you **oversimplify**.....
2. If you speak many languages, you are
3. If you cook something for too long, you it. (opposite:
4. A building with many storeys is a building.
5. If a hotel has accepted bookings from more guests than it can accommodate, it is
6. If there are twice the number of women than men, women men by two to one.
7. An object which can be used for many purposes is
8. If guests stay longer than their hosts want them to, they their welcome.
9. If you are smarter than your rivals, you can them.
10. If a shop charges you too much, it you. (opposite:
11. If a company is short of staff, it is (opposite:
12. If your estimate of the strength of something is too low, you it. (opposite:

F. COLLOCATIONS

1. Choose the adjective that can come before all three nouns.

unspoilt ♦ private ♦ remote ♦ rough ♦ exotic ♦ traditional

- | | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <input type="text"/>  | beach
bathroom
property | 4. <input type="text"/>  | destination
island
flowers |
| 2. <input type="text"/>  | coastline
countryside
nature | 5. <input type="text"/>  | recipe
dress
way of life |
| 3. <input type="text"/>  | village
location
area | 6. <input type="text"/>  | terrain
guess
sea |

2. Complete the sentences with collocations from Exercise 1.

1. The hotel offers over 100 rooms, all with
2. The fishing trip was cancelled due to the
3. The search team finally tracked down the hikers in a guesthouse in a in the mountains.
4. This vehicle is well equipped to handle the
5. The sign read: “..... Trespassers will be fined.”
6. There is a magnificent exhibition of miniature trees and at Kew Gardens this week.
7. Their new house is located in a small village surrounded by
8. In today's programme, the Italian chef is going to show the viewers how to make risotto, following a

2 METAPHOR AND MEANING

We often talk about conversations as if they were journeys or as if they were moving.

For example, to **cover a lot of ground** means to travel a long distance. We can also say:

We covered a lot of ground in our discussion. (= *We talked about a lot of subjects.*)

A conversation can: go round in circles; drift / move from one topic to another; take a sudden / unexpected turn; move in an unexpected direction.

A speaker can: say something in a roundabout way; go off track; be on the wrong / right track; wander off the topic; (bring) a conversation round to a topic; turn / steer / guide / lead / a conversation towards a certain topic / in a certain direction.

A listener can: follow a conversation; follow somebody's train of thought; wonder where a conversation is going / leading; wonder / ask what somebody is driving at / getting at.

Use the words in brackets to write two new sentences with a similar meaning.

1. Liz gradually changed the subject so we were talking about her travels. steered / brought

.....
.....

2. Ron often talks about irrelevant matters. wander / track

.....
.....

3. I couldn't understand the point she was making. train / getting

.....
.....

4. I didn't expect that topic to come up in conversation. took / moved

.....
.....

3 MULTIPLE MEANINGS board leave land

Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings. Write the part of speech for **board**, **leave** or **land** next to each sentence.

- | | | |
|---|-------|---|
| 1. Some of the boards in the kitchen floor need replacing. | | a. (affecting) everyone or everything |
| 2. The board of directors meets once a month. | | b. take a risk that could be avoided by planning |
| 3. Tourism has had across the board benefits. | | c. holiday |
| 4. There was a two-hour delay before we could even board the plane. | | d. country |
| 5. How many days leave from work do you get a year? | | e. bequeath in a will |
| 6. How much money did your grandfather leave you? | | f. long, flat piece of wood |
| 7. Let's book our tickets – I don't want to leave anything to chance. | | g. find work |
| 8. They bought some land to build a summer home. | | h. get on |
| 9. It is hard for immigrants to adapt to life in a foreign land. | | i. group of people in charge of a business / school |
| 10. Phil was lucky to land a good job. | | j. property |

4 OTHER WORDS Match each formal sentence with its informal paraphrase.

- | | | |
|--|-------|--|
| 1. I didn't set foot in London until I was 20. | | a. I did something before leaving. |
| 2. I broke my journey in Paris. | | b. I found a place that everyone would like. |
| 3. I was bound for Glasgow. | | c. I was not allowed to go there. |
| 4. I didn't have access to that part of the airport. | | d. I set off on my travels. |
| 5. I got to the port ahead of schedule. | | e. I stopped there on the way. |
| 6. I found a resort that caters for all tastes. | | f. I arrived earlier than I expected. |
| 7. I crossed the North Pole in the footsteps of Scott. | | g. I went everywhere in the nearby area. |
| 8. I checked the jeep prior to departure from Cairo. | | h. I took a route someone had taken before me. |
| 9. I embarked on the journey. | | i. I was heading there. |
| 10. I visited all the museums in the vicinity. | | j. I visited the city for the first time then. |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

A WOMAN WHO WENT WHERE FEW MEN WOULD

Freya Stark (1893-1993) was an extraordinary woman who ventured into (1) areas where few Europeans had ever (2) foot. Born in Paris, brought up in Italy, and educated in London, she was already (3) before deciding to learn Arabic at the age of 30. She travelled (4) through Greece, Italy and Cyprus. However, her passion was for exploring ancient lands of the Middle East. She was determined to make contact with the tribes that populated the area before their traditional (5) of life vanished forever. She led (6) into the most dangerous areas and despite the risks (she was even thrown into a military prison on one occasion), she always returned safe and (7) During her travels, she completed a (8) across the Valley of the Assassins, famous not only for its rough (9) but also for its murderous inhabitants, and followed in the (10) of Alexander the Great. In her long career she produced maps, (11) lost cities, and worked as a spy and propagandist, although it is as a travel writer that she is best remembered. She died at the age of 100, (12) most women of her generation in more ways than one.



- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A wide | B outward | C far | D remote |
| 2. A set | B put | C got | D placed |
| 3. A multipurpose | B outsmarted | C overvalued | D multilingual |
| 4. A broadly | B extensively | C deliberately | D privately |
| 5. A nature | B type | C way | D route |
| 6. A destinations | B explorations | C operations | D expeditions |
| 7. A round | B sound | C again | D back |
| 8. A turn | B track | C trek | D transfer |
| 9. A terrain | B itinerary | C scenery | D stopover |
| 10. A time | B trail | C footsteps | D departure |
| 11. A isolated | B discovered | C pioneered | D embarked |
| 12. A outnumbering | B outliving | C outstaying | D outweighing |

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

INSIGHT TOURS

We are the only tour (1) that cater for the discerning traveller – the traveller who wants something more than just a holiday.

Our new brochure features a range of (2) designed tours which will take you off the (3) track to learn a bit more, to experience a bit more and to prove that travel really does (4) the mind. Whether you are (5) by historic cities, prefer the peace and tranquility of (6) countryside, or are looking for a far- (7) corner of the world where few (8) set foot, *Insight* has a tour that's perfect for you. We offer a range of all-(9) packages at the most (10) prices on the market.

OPERATE

SPECIAL

BEAT

BROAD

FASCINATE

SPOIL

FLING

TRAVEL

INCLUDE

COMPETE

OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

MAKING SPORTS DAY MORE FUN

If you have ever participated in a school sports day, you may have memories (1) of triumph, if you crossed the line in front of the others, or of the embarrassment of (2) made to run a race you had no chance of winning. Typically, sports days consist (3) a series of races and the children (4) most of the day standing around with (5) to do except wait for their race. More recently, however, attempts (6) been made to make sports days more about (7) part than winning. This means introducing events (8) require problem-solving and teamwork. Students who are not sports-minded are actively involved in setting (9) the events and recording the results. This way everyone (10) rewarded for their participation. (11) make it fun, primary school children might get stickers – a proven way of motivating young children. The need to encourage schoolchildren to participate (12) sport is urgent – there is now (13) time for physical education in the school curriculum and if sport is not compulsory, students tend to drop (14) of these lessons in their early teens. Educators hope that promoting the fun side of sport (15) all will benefit everyone in the long run.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 Vanessa was taken on by a big law firm as soon as she graduated. **LANDED**
On graduation, Vanessa with a big law firm.
- 2 I think we should consider the plan's advantages and disadvantages before deciding. **PROS**
I think we should weigh up of the plan before deciding.
- 3 Guy made absolutely sure nothing would go wrong when he planned the expedition. **CHANCE**
Guy when he planned the expedition.
- 4 There are twice as many women as men working here. **OUTNUMBER**
Female members of staff to one.
- 5 When they started their trek, they had no idea how bad the weather would become. **OUTSET**
Nobody realised how bad the weather would become.
- 6 Was the equipment checked before they left? **PRIOR**
Did anyone departure?
- 7 According to the board, the company has to save money if it is to survive. **CUTBACKS**
The board has announced that the company needs in order to survive.
- 8 I know it was a waste of money – don't make me feel worse about it! **SALT**
I know it was a waste of money – there's no need to by reminding me!

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. My doctor says there's nothing else I can do about my asthma. So, I'm going to a specialist.
 - a. try consulting
 - b. try to be consulting
 - c. try having consulted
 - d. try and consulting
2. "Shouldn't you be in your math class now?"
"Uh, oh! I didn't"
 - a. hear the bell to ring
 - b. hear the bell ring
 - c. hear the bell having rung
 - d. hear ringing the bell
3. "Have you told your dad what's bothering you?"
"I'd than my parents."
 - a. rather to confide in you
 - b. better confide in you
 - c. rather my confiding in you
 - d. sooner confide in you
4. "I've cooked dinner for the two of us."
"Oh, you ! I got some pizza on the way home."
 - a. couldn't have
 - b. shouldn't have to
 - c. needn't have
 - d. might not have
5. I'll never forgive so many lies.
 - a. his telling me
 - b. for telling
 - c. to be told
 - d. him to tell me
6. Kim's paper wasn't researched a higher grade.
 - a. too well to get
 - b. well enough to get
 - c. so well for getting
 - d. enough well for getting
7. , Canada and America are very similar.
 - a. To this respect
 - b. In respect with many things
 - c. In many respects
 - d. On some respects
8. the conference would allow us to familiarize ourselves with the latest techniques.
 - a. To be attending
 - b. To have attended
 - c. Having attended
 - d. Attending
9. By the time the bridge is complete, over \$20 million on the project.
 - a. will have been spent
 - b. is to be spent
 - c. will be spending
 - d. is going to spend
10. "You could have called us to say you'd be late!"
"I'm sorry you like that."
 - a. about having been worried
 - b. to be worried
 - c. your being worried
 - d. for having worried

VOCABULARY

11. The holiday resort offers all the a young family could want.
 - a. itineraries
 - b. vicinity
 - c. amenities
 - d. expectancy
12. A few people on the committee supported the proposal but they were by those against it.
 - a. outvoted
 - b. overestimated
 - c. overstaffed
 - d. outweighed
13. Sonia made a guess as to how much the wedding would cost.
 - a. remote
 - b. dull
 - c. cross
 - d. rough
14. The researchers realized they were and had to change the focus of their experiment.
 - a. in the footsteps
 - b. ahead of schedule
 - c. on the wrong track
 - d. off the beaten track
15. It's amazing how many English words are from Greek and Latin.
 - a. diminished
 - b. descended
 - c. distracted
 - d. derived
16. of tourists come here every summer.
 - a. Trains
 - b. Hordes
 - c. Boards
 - d. Crews
17. I am sometimes but I don't mean to gossip.
 - a. indiscreet
 - b. insistent
 - c. intentional
 - d. inconsolable
18. There is a well-marked up the side of the mountain.
 - a. terrain
 - b. trail
 - c. trip
 - d. trek
19. A group from my college is about to on an expedition to climb Mount Everest.
 - a. steer
 - b. set foot
 - c. embark
 - d. outset
20. People came from to take part in the peace demonstration in Washington.
 - a. round and round
 - b. out and about
 - c. there and back
 - d. far and wide

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

Tourism is now one of the largest industries in the world, and is the main source of income in many countries. Unfortunately, (1) development has come at a price. The construction of facilities to cater to the needs of (2) of visitors has led to the (3) of natural habitats, thus endangering wildlife and (4) some of the world's most beautiful regions. Air travel to (5) places results in huge amounts of carbon emissions which contribute to global warming. Although tourism may bring in earnings for local people, by and (6), the profits are being made by foreign-owned tour (7).

The majority of holidaymakers are (8) of or unconcerned about such issues, but fortunately there are (9) who would rather travel with a clear (10). For (11) travelers, there is now an alternative to (12) tourism, known as ecotourism or sustainable travel. They choose their (13) carefully, and try to make sure that their visit will have only a minimal (14) on the environment. They avoid (15) in large resorts and support locally owned businesses and services so that the local people benefit (16) their visit. Ecotourists also prefer carbon-neutral activities, for example walking or cycling, instead of (17) jet-skis or anything that uses gasoline. (18), ecotourism encourages locals to protect the natural world because (19) is what attracts visitors in the first place.

Eco-sensitive travel can have across-the- (20) benefits for the environment.

1. a. a
b. more
c. this
d. their
2. a. hordes
b. herds
c. plenty
d. bookings
3. a. washout
b. destruction
c. interference
d. dejection
4. a. spoiling
b. wounding
c. especially
d. delaying
5. a. roundabout
b. long-term
c. far-flung
d. high-flying
6. a. main
b. large
c. wide
d. right
7. a. operators
b. guests
c. chances
d. trips
8. a. alarmed
b. dissimilar
c. unaware
d. uncaring
9. a. them
b. also
c. however
d. those
10. a. conscience
b. attitude
c. permission
d. posture
11. a. other
b. these
c. rough
d. the
12. a. hospitable
b. conventional
c. peak
d. such
13. a. deadlines
b. destinations
c. traveling
d. terrain
14. a. infection
b. affect
c. effect
d. object
15. a. getaway
b. it
c. staying
d. them
16. a. in
b. of
c. from
d. to
17. a. renting
b. those
c. by
d. use
18. a. Therefore
b. In conjunction
c. In addition
d. For example
19. a. its
b. that
c. having
d. these
20. a. pack
b. board
c. area
d. land

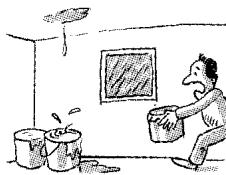
7 Passive, Causative Forms

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. When I saw Professor Bright, he was shown around the university campus.
 - a. being
 - b. been
2. She is supposed giving a speech on prize day.
 - a. that she is
 - b. to be
3. That old building should down.
 - a. be pulled
 - b. to be pulled
4. In the rush hour, the underground station was crowded passengers.
 - a. with
 - b. by
5. I will always remember taken to the theatre for the first time.
 - a. be
 - b. being
6. The meal was expertly
 - a. cooked
 - b. cooked by someone
7. Entrance to the building had been
 - a. to Charles refused
 - b. refused to Charles
8. Their dog was never to run free in the garden.
 - a. allowed
 - b. let
9. The ancient stones are believed to moved to their present site in 4,000 BC.
 - a. be
 - b. have been
10. Which novel did you say the film was ?
 - a. based
 - b. based on
11. At that time, the company was financial problems.
 - a. facing
 - b. faced
12. thought to be 5,000 homeless people in that city.
 - a. There are
 - b. It is
13. We really must get
 - a. posted the wedding invitations
 - b. the wedding invitations posted
14. I sometimes have a neighbour the children from school.
 - a. collect
 - b. collected
15. I must have this weekend!
 - a. dyed my hair
 - b. my hair dyed

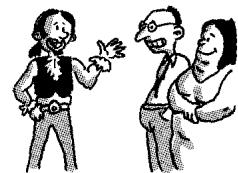
B. Circle the correct answer.



1. We must get the roof mended / get the roof to mend soon.



2. She had her teeth cleaned / had cleaned her teeth.



3. In no time I'll have you dance / have you dancing the samba!



4. Sue had somebody steal her purse / had her purse stolen while she was out shopping.



5. He is going to have tested his eyes / is having his eyes tested this morning.

Score: / 20

RULES

The **active voice** is used to say what people and things do.

They **paid** the bill. (focus on they)

When we want to emphasise what happens to people and things, we often use the **passive voice**.

The bill **was paid**. (focus on the bill)

PASSIVE FORMS (See Appendix for passive tenses and passive modals, page 217.)

Infinitive

to be + past participle

I didn't expect **them to contact me** so soon. (active)

I didn't expect **to be contacted** so soon. (passive)

Perfect infinitive

to have been + past participle

I am pleased **they have invited me** to the wedding. (active)

I am pleased **to have been invited** to the wedding. (passive)

Gerund

being + past participle

I hate **people shouting at me**. (active)

I hate **being shouted at**. (passive)

Perfect gerund

having been + past participle

I recall Sue **having told me** the news. (active)

I recall **having been told** the news. (passive)

Notes

Passive forms of Future Continuous, Future Perfect Continuous, Present Perfect Continuous and Past Perfect Continuous are not used in English. For these tenses, we use the active voice or find an alternative way of expressing the same meaning.

By the time it's finished, **they will have been building** the stadium for almost a decade.

By the time it's finished, the stadium **will have been under construction** for almost a decade.

Not all verbs take an object, therefore they cannot be used in the passive. Examples of such verbs include: *arrive, come, die, disappear, go, happen, have, live, occur, sleep*.

When using a phrasal verb or verb + preposition in the passive, don't forget the particle (adverb / preposition).

His grandmother **brought him up**.

We **think highly of** her.

→ He **was brought up** by his grandmother.

→ She is highly **thought of**.

When a verb has two objects, there are two possible passive forms. When the first object is a person, this usually becomes the subject of the passive. Examples of such verbs include: *give, send, show, lend, pay, tell, promise, refuse, offer, award*.

They **awarded** our company the contract.

They **gave** Julie a salary rise.

→ The contract **was awarded** to our company.

→ Julie **was given** a salary rise. (more common)

→ Our company **was awarded** the contract.

→ A salary rise **was given** to Julie. (less common)

The verbs *agree, believe, consider, expect, know, say, rumour, think and suppose* can be expressed in the passive in two ways:

• passive form + full infinitive They **say** he is a millionaire. → He **is said to be** a millionaire.

• *It* as the subject + passive + *that* + clause **It is said that** he is a millionaire.

Continuous or perfect infinitives are used with these structures to indicate tense.

I **believe she is living** in France. → She **is believed to be living** in France.

With verbs like *say, think* and *feel*, the passive can be used with *there* as a subject.

There are thought to be hundreds of new species in the rainforest. (Scientists *think there are ...*)

There was felt to be no reason to continue the investigation. (They *felt there was no reason ...*)

STYLE AND USAGE

We generally omit *by* + the agent when:

- the agent is unknown
- the agent is obvious
- we refer to people in general
- the agent is not important
- we don't want to name the person responsible

My car **has been stolen**. (we don't say *by somebody*)

Paul **was arrested**. (obviously *by the police*)

Spanish **is spoken** widely in South America.

She **was advised** to book her flights early.

His father **was injured** in an accident.

We mention *by* + agent:

- when it is important to stress the agent
- to introduce new information not previously mentioned
- to refer to a method or course of action with *by* + *-ing*

The building was designed **by Frank Lloyd Wright**.

We were stopped in the street **by a policeman**.

Our house can be improved **by building an extension**.

Passives are sometimes followed by *with*:

- when talking about materials or instruments
- after participles such as *packed, filled, crowded, crammed, covered, surrounded, decorated*

The passive is commonly used in:

- formal / impersonal written English
- formal academic writing
- headlines and newspaper reports

In signs and headlines, the verb *to be* is often omitted.

In spoken English, *get* can sometimes replace *be* in the passive.

Chilli is made with beans.

The cut is made with a scalpel.

The stadium was packed with supporters.

The room was decorated with flowers.

We must choose a title for the article. (*spoken English*)
A title must be chosen for the article. (*more formal*)

The blood is pumped around the body by the heart.

The team was defeated in the final minutes.

Beckham (was) saved from kidnap attempt!

Stella got promoted to assistant manager. (= *was promoted*)

THE CAUSATIVE AND RELATED FORMS

The causative is used when we employ someone or arrange for someone (an agent) to do something for us.

have / get + object + past participle

when we employ / arrange for someone to do something

I will have the report typed tomorrow.

We are having an extension built on the house.

I got the car repaired.

I must get my eyes tested soon.

I had Susan type the report.

have + agent + bare infinitive

when we mention the agent / person

The chef **had someone complain** about the soup last night.

have + object + bare infinitive

when something happens to a person

I got Susan to type the report.

get + agent + to + bare infinitive

when we persuade someone to do something for us

I'll have you playing the piano in no time.

(*I'll teach you to play in a short time.*)

Within minutes, he **had us laughing** at his jokes.

You'll have dozens of people phoning at all hours if you put an ad in the paper.

I won't have you walking into the house in muddy boots.

Note

The word order must be preserved in order to give a causative meaning.

Compare: I had my hair cut. (*causative: someone else cut my hair*) I had cut my hair. (*active verb: I cut my hair myself*)

SPECIAL STRUCTURES with *have / get*

have + object + verb -ing

have something happening – referring to an experience you did not cause to happen

It's nice to **have the family eating** together at Sunday lunch.

We got home and found we **had water dripping** from the ceiling because a pipe had burst.

have + object + past participle

have something happen to you – sometimes used instead of the passive when referring to an experience or a misfortune the subject had; here, the subject did not cause the action

She **had her house broken into** last night. (*Her house was broken into.*)

The house **had its roof blown off** in a gale. (*The roof was blown off the house.*)

get + object + past participle

when the subject of the sentence does something himself / herself intentionally or accidentally

It will be another hour before I can **get the washing done**. (*intentional*)

She **got her trousers caught** in the fence. (*accidental*)

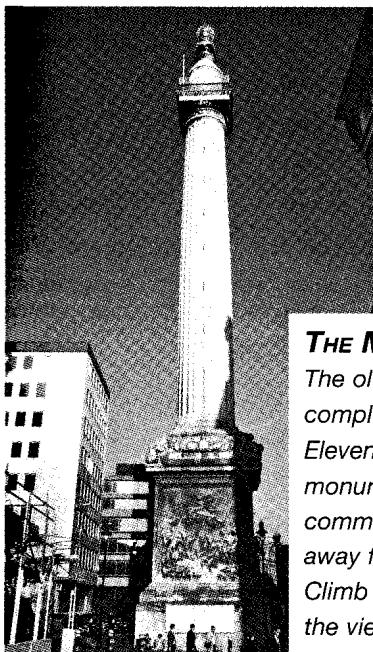
PRACTICE

A Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. We couldn't drive up to the hotel because the access road was being repaired (repair).
2. Surely everyone deserves (give) the same opportunities in life.
3. I'll never forget (make) to stand in front of the whole class and recite a poem.
4. Remarkable progress (achieve) in the field of genetic engineering in the last decade.
5. Receiving private emails (not approve) of in the workplace.
6. The newspaper has to be careful not to print comments that their readers might (offend) by.
7. The company chairman (succeed) by his son next year.
8. The cost of flood damage (estimate) at over \$60 million.
9. Shouldn't the water in the goldfish bowl (change) more often?
10. Jack was afraid of (send) to prison.
11. The air conditioning units (not install) by the time the hotel's first guests arrive next week.
12. The soundtrack for *The Lion King* (compose) by Elton John and Tim Rice.

B Complete the leaflet using a passive form of one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once.

make • raise • ~~destroy~~ • design • pull down
erect • slow down • purchase • hold • prevent



THE MONUMENT

The old city (1) was almost completely destroyed by fire in 1666. Eleven years later, a 62-metre-high monument (2) to commemorate the event exactly 62 metres away from the place where the fire began. Climb the 311 steps to the top to admire the view of the present-day city.

HISTORIC LONDON



TOWER BRIDGE

Probably the most recognisable bridge in the world, Tower Bridge (3) so that its central section can (4) to allow ships to pass through it. Still in working order today, it is opened 900 times a year, at which times traffic (5) from crossing the bridge.

A joint ticket for admission to the Tower Bridge Experience and The Monument can (6) for just £7 per adult.



LONDON BRIDGE

The first London Bridge was built in 80 AD, though this (7) by an invading Viking army in 1014. The first bridge (8) of stone. It had so many arches that the flow of the river (9) considerably, causing it to freeze over every winter enabling fairs (10) on the frozen ice.

C. Rewrite the following active sentences using passive verb forms where possible. Some sentences CANNOT be made passive.

1. They are going to pull down the tower blocks.

The tower blocks are going to be pulled down.

2. The car disappeared around a corner.

3. Critics have seriously underrated the new Jim Carrey movie.

4. They think a new vaccine could prevent AIDS.

5. We'll need to alter the costume so that it fits him.

6. We will provide all tour participants with a detailed itinerary free of charge.

7. The hikers arrived at the foot of the mountain just before sunset.

8. We were furious that they made us wait in the airport lounge all night.

9. Doctors generally prescribe antibiotics for chest infections.

10. The studio was planning a sequel but they never made it because of budget issues.

D. Complete the sentences using the correct phrase below.

had us doing • had it coming • had it stolen • had anyone tell • get a firm to do
get it all done • have them going • have somebody send

1. We'll never manage to move this furniture ourselves. We'd better it for us.

2. The flood water was so deep we in through the window.

3. Look at this pile of ironing! How am I going to ?

4. I make my children have breakfast every day. I won't to school on an empty stomach.

5. I've never me I'm talented before. It was such a nice compliment.

6. The judo teacher throws and kicks from the very first session.

7. Did you hear about Carl's car stereo? He last night.

8. If you leave us your address, I'll you our brochure.

E. Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Then mark each one I (informal) or F (formal).

I. 1. They won't let you into the club without a jacket. **enter**

F. No one is **allowed** / **permitted** **to enter** **the club** **without** **a jacket**.

.... 2. It's best not to leave gardenias in direct sunlight. **should**

.... Gardenias

.... 3. There are said to be rare birds in that forest. **are**

.... They

.... 4. Lots of people think the design is old-fashioned. **felt**

.... It

.... 5. I was angered by the council's decision. **made**

.... The

.... 6. Don't give him any details of the project. **not**

.... He is

.... 7. Why wasn't Annie chosen for the team? **get**

.... Why

.... 8. Use a small brush to clean the machinery. **with**

.... The machinery

EXAM PRACTICE

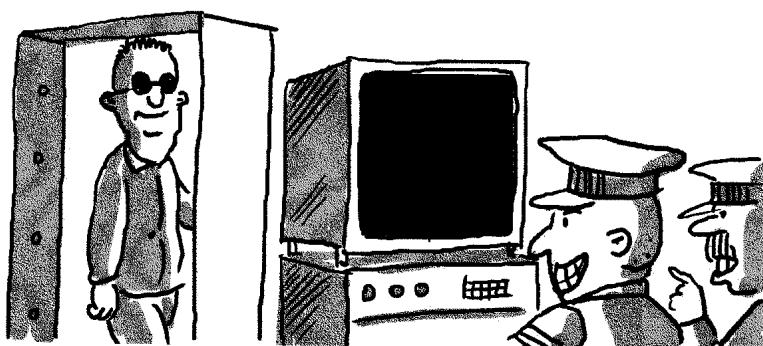
- A KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. I asked Joe to use the dictionary to find out what the word meant. **HAD**
I up in the dictionary.
2. We hope they will do the renovations earlier than expected. **COMPLETED**
We hope the renovations schedule.
3. Nobody felt the board members needed to know about the problem. **REASON**
There was felt the board members about the problem.
4. A wedding planner might make all the plans for their wedding. **ORGANISED**
They are thinking a wedding planner.
5. The police had been watching the suspect closely. **OBSERVATION**
The suspect by the police.
6. Perhaps Joe intended booking a hotel room online. **PLANNING**
Joe might a hotel room online.
7. There's no way I can get through this work before five o'clock. **DONE**
I will before five o'clock.
8. The new sports centre is to have something for everyone. **GOING**
Everyone to do at the new sports centre.

- B OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

NEW CAMERA CAN SEE THROUGH WALLS – AND MAY SAVE LIVES

A camera that can see through clothes, skin and even walls without X-rays (1) been developed in what is (2) called one of the first great technological breakthroughs of the 21st century. The “terahertz” camera, still in prototype form, is under rapid development by scientists in Oxfordshire. It is likely (3) have many applications, ranging (4) medical scanning to identifying concealed weapons on airline passengers. Unlike with X-rays, patients are (5) exposed to potentially harmful radiation. (6) , the camera detects a form of energy waves which are naturally emitted (7) all objects. The existence of (8) waves has been recognised for a long time, but the technology needed to capture them on camera has so (9) been too complex and expensive. Now a team of scientists has succeeded in building a prototype (10) just three months. The first image which was captured by the device revealed the outline of a human hand, clearly visible despite being hidden under a thick book. If such a device (11) be mass produced, there could be one in every doctor’s surgery, offering a completely safe new window into the human body. Disease or tissue damage could be detected at a much (12) stage, increasing the chances of successful treatment. The technology will be controversial, (13) , as the camera could reveal body shape beneath clothing (14) the subject’s permission, or even knowledge. Civil liberties groups will, therefore, probably object to its (15) used on the grounds that it invades the individual’s privacy.



I U The Natural World

use your mini-companion
when working on this unit

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Label the drawings with the words below.

bush • bark • branch • bud • seed • stalk • trunk • twig • weed • blossom



1. *seed*



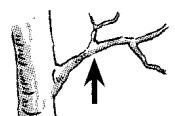
2.



3.



4.



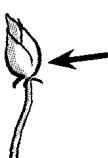
5.



6.



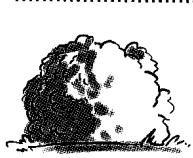
7.



8.



9.



10.

B. Match the name of each animal group with its description. Pay attention to the words in colour.

reptiles • mammals • birds • insects • amphibians

- include more than a million species, making them the most common type of animal. These invertebrates have a hard skin or shell covering the exterior of the body, but no internal skeleton. All of them have six legs and the majority have wings. Most have a complex life cycle – the egg hatches to a larva, which grows and passes through a series of changes. This is when metamorphosis into the adult form occurs.
- are cold-blooded vertebrates with a scaly, tough skin. They cannot maintain a constant body temperature and are therefore greatly affected by climatic changes. These animals can be found in most habitats, except in polar regions. In very cold conditions they may hibernate. Some, like alligators, spend time in water, others on land. Most dig holes or make nests to lay their eggs in.
- are warm-blooded vertebrates that have hair or fur on their bodies and produce milk to feed their young. Most give birth to live young that are small and spend time with adults, learning the skills they need for survival. One subgroup, called *marsupials*, indigenous to Australasia, nurture their young in an external pouch.
- live part of their lives in water and part on land. The young do not resemble their parents – they change body shape, diet and habits. The frog, for example, starts out as a tadpole with gills, organs which allow it to breathe underwater. As it matures, it grows legs and lungs, loses its mouth and moves onto land. Most have a moist skin protected by mucus and tend to live in damp places to prevent them from drying out. Some have poison-producing glands in their skin to deter predators from eating them.
- are warm-blooded vertebrates. They are the only creatures to have feathers. Being warm-blooded, they can function independently of the surrounding temperature. They reproduce by laying hard-shelled eggs in nests and incubate them until they hatch. The chicks of some species are able to fend for themselves immediately, but the offspring of others are dependant on their parents for food. Although all have wings, some are flightless.

C. According to the descriptions above, which type of living creature(s)

- needs warmth from its surroundings to raise its body temperature
- are able to maintain their body temperature regardless of the surroundings
- doesn't have bones
- may be inactive in the winter
- may be venomous
- changes habitat when fully grown
- has a special covering on their skin to prevent dehydration
- develops different features as they mature
- build a special structure for their eggs
- keeps their eggs warm

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. PREPOSITIONS Complete the sentences using the correct preposition. Prepositions may be used more than once.

to * of * in * with * for * on

1. Dinosaur skeletons show a strong similarity modern reptiles.
2. They set off into the jungle in pursuit rare butterfly species.
3. My dog has a habit walking through puddles.
4. Do you have access a computer?
5. I have a strong aversion spiders, but I wouldn't call it a phobia.
6. There has been a decline zoo attendance this year, following a spate of accidents.
7. Has Jack told you the story of his encounter a lion?
8. Children thrive plenty of attention.
9. The risk being attacked by a shark is very low.
10. There is great demand exotic pets like iguanas.
11. Contamination of the lake has had a devastating impact the ecosystem.
12. Did you see the expression disgust on his face during the experiment?
13. The authorities imposed a ban the export of all beef during the food scare.
14. Wildlife experts have not determined the extent the damage.
15. Many zoo animals were born captivity and would be unable to survive the wild.

B. RELATED WORDS giving / refusing permission or support

1. Mark the following verbs G (giving support) or R (refusing support).

abolish	R	approve	bar	consent	permit
advocate	ban	condemn	endorse	protest

2. Complete the sentences below with the correct form of the most suitable verb from Exercise 1.

1. Jo's parents approved of her decision to travel round the world after college.
2. New legislation has been passed to smoking in all public places.
3. Olympic athletes may receive large sums for products.
4. They asked the teacher if he'd to having a small celebration at the end of the term.
5. The main speaker at the environmental conference reducing the use of pesticides.
6. Known hooligans have been from all football grounds.
7. The nurses' union has decided to against the minimal wage increases.
8. The opposition party the minister's decision to raise taxes.
9. Holly's parents do not her to drink fizzy drinks.
10. Human rights groups would like the government to the death penalty.

C. RELATED WORDS animals

Choose the correct words below for the young animals and the sounds they make. One sound can be used twice.

kitten	lamb	chick	chirp	moo	howl
puppy	kid	cub	croak	bleat	neigh
tadpole	calf	foal	mew	bark	



ANIMAL	SOUND
1. cat	<u>kitten</u> <u>mew</u>
2. dog
3. cow
4. wolf
5. sheep
6. bird
7. frog
8. goat
9. horse

D. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| capsize | 1. a. How can we the wild cat without hurting it? |
| capture | b. The huge waves caused the boat to and sink. |
| captivate | c. We were by Jack's video of his safari holiday. |
| conserve | 2. a. Most people now recognise the need to natural resources. |
| observe | b. It is important that we historic buildings as they are part of our cultural heritage. |
| preserve | c. Naturalists have the behaviour of chimpanzees in the wild. |
| immigration | 3. a. Many people believe there should be strict laws controlling into this country. |
| migration | b. from the UK to countries like Australia and Canada was popular in the 1970s. |
| emigration | c. Scientists have studied the patterns of butterflies. |
| docile | 4. a. The book describes how to take care of various animals such as cats and dogs. |
| tame | b. You'll have no problem babysitting Amy – she's a very child. |
| domestic | c. The pet shop owner assured us that the chipmunks were completely and wouldn't bite. |
| physical | 5. a. It's not for an elephant to spend all day alone – they are social animals. |
| genuine | b. In addition to specialist knowledge, a zookeeper may require strength to perform his or her duties. |
| natural | c. Of course Ken didn't mean to run the cat over – it was a accident. |
| evolution | 6. a. Many species face complete if nothing is done to conserve their habitats. |
| extinction | b. Darwin posed the theory that new animal species appear as part of the process of |
| extermination | c. The mayor announced a plan for the of all the rats in the city. |
| predator | 7. a. Every year, thousands of elephants are killed for their ivory by |
| prey | b. The eagle hovers overhead searching for, then swoops down and catches the unfortunate creature. |
| poacher | c. Camouflage helps animals hide from |
| involve | 8. a. Is there any truth in the theory that birds from dinosaurs? |
| revolve | b. The research tracking the movements of thousands of foxes. |
| evolve | c. The earth and the other planets around the sun. |

E. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart by putting the words below under the correct headings.

colour	event	meaning	play	respect	tact
doubt	fear	mercy	point	rest	thought
dread	forget	motion	power	shame	use
duty	fruit	pain	price	shape	worth
end	home	pity	relent	success	youth

-ful

-less

-ful / -less

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Which words that take the suffixes **-ful / -less** are not direct opposites?

.....

3. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

GENETICALLY MODIFIED TO SAVE TIME AND MONEY

Scientists have (1) created a new kind of chicken which will grow faster and produce lower-calorie meat. The red-skinned chickens are (2) because feathers are considered a waste. Chickens are bred only for their meat, and the feathers are (3) afterwards. The scientists, therefore, think that it's (4) for birds to use their energy to make feathers. They say that traditional chicken farming uses a lot of energy and water, which is a (5) drain on resources, but according to scientists, farming the new bird will be less (6) to the environment. (7) for farmers, the attraction of the red-skinned chicken will be the money they save. But animal rights campaigners are not convinced. They say it is (8) and cruel to treat birds in this way. The birds may suffer from (9) sunburn and male chickens without feathers are (10) unable to mate because they cannot flap their wings.

SUCCESS
FEATHER
USE
POINT
WASTE
HARM
DOUBT
SHAME
PAIN
PITY

= METAPHOR AND MEANING

We often use the language of plants and land to talk about the origin or spread of ideas and the search for information.
 sow seeds of doubt (= *make somebody feel uncertain*)
 to unearth information (= *discover something new by investigating*)

1. With a partner, think of at least two meanings (literal and figurative) for each of the words below.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| 1. cultivate | 3. fertile | 5. fruitful | 7. root | 9. stem |
| 2. dig | 4. flourish | 6. grow | 8. sow | 10. unearth |

2. Complete the sentences with the words below.

fertile • stems from • digging around • flourished • deep-rooted
 field • left no stone unturned • cultivates

- She has a fear of flying so you will never persuade her to come with you.
- Her desire for a large family the fact that she hated being an only child.
- Genetic engineering is a fascinating of research.
- I spent weeks in the library before I started writing my dissertation.
- The detectives in their search for evidence.
- The professor an image as a free-thinker but underneath he is quite conventional.
- The arts, especially drama, during Athens' Golden Age.
- The writer of those magical tales must have a imagination.

= MULTIPLE MEANINGS branch coat plant

Match the words in colour to their meanings. Give the part of speech for **branch**, **coat** and **plant** in each sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Just outside the village, the road branches in two – take the road leading north. verb | a. diversify |
| 2. Metro has opened a new branch down the road. | b. factory |
| 3. The company has to branch out if it wants to survive. | c. covered |
| 4. A horse's coat should be brushed every day. | d. put into the ground |
| 5. These old walls are going to need another coat of paint. | e. placed in order to make a person look guilty |
| 6. She made biscuits coated with white chocolate. | f. covering of fur |
| 7. The minister planted a tree to symbolise peace. | g. layer |
| 8. The gun was planted on him by a corrupt cop. | h. divides |
| 9. Residents were against closing the car plant. | i. a shop or office belonging to a large organisation |

H. PHRASAL VERBS out

Circle the best explanation for the phrasal verbs in colour.

1. Greenpeace is determined to stamp out commercial whaling. **eradicate / punish harshly**
2. Now you've agreed to help us, you can't back out of the project. **perform badly in / withdraw from**
3. After two hours of working in the garden, I was worn out. **exhausted / fit and strong**
4. The boxers looked at each other aggressively in an effort to psych each other out. **encourage / cause a rival to feel nervous**
5. Nearly half of the participants dropped out of the survival course after a few sessions. **stopped participating / felt ill**
6. Her idea of studying pandas in the wild was singled out as the most interesting science project at our school. **recommended / praised**.
7. Lilian's magazine subscription runs out at the end of the month. **expires / will be renewed**
8. You aren't really fit enough to go mountain climbing – do you think your strength will hold out? **continue to be enough / finish**
9. Troy is looking very muscular these days – has he been working out? **exercising intensively / doing manual labour**
10. Does Mary have the stamina to continue training horses or will she burn out? **quicken up / become exhausted and**

I. IN OTHER WORDS The sentences below express strong opinions. Match each formal statement with its informal paraphrase.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. It is fundamentally flawed. | a. I got really angry when I saw that. |
| 2. A radical makeover is needed. | b. There's no excuse for the situation. |
| 3. It is an unjustifiable state of affairs. | c. I'm really worried about it. |
| 4. It is utterly disgraceful. | d. It's absolutely wrong. |
| 5. I was incensed by the spectacle. | e. We need to start from scratch. |
| 6. It was beyond comprehension. | f. We have to put a stop to it. |
| 7. This practice must cease. | g. We must try to oppose it. |
| 8. It is of the utmost concern to me. | h. It didn't make any sense. |
| 9. It's time we made a stand against racism. | i. It's really shocking. |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. As a singer, Kay has recently become involved in more diverse styles of music. **BRANCHED**
Recently Kay other styles of music.
2. Fewer students have shown an interest in music lessons this year. **DECLINE**
There the number of students interested in music lessons this year.
3. Her psychologist believes that an unpleasant childhood experience is at the root of her phobia. **STEMS**
Her psychologist believes that an unpleasant childhood experience.
4. They are demonstrating because they are not in favour of the new employment laws. **PROTEST**
The purpose of the demonstration is the new employment laws.
5. In order to discover the truth, every possible source of evidence must be investigated. **UNTURNED**
We must in our search for the truth.
6. Students who cheat will not be allowed to sit the exam in the future. **BARRED**
Students who cheat future exams.
7. Jeffrey was so insensitive to my needs that I was furious. **INCENSED**
I was to my needs.
8. It is incredibly important for the environment that we preserve endangered species. **UTMOST**
The preservation of endangered species to the environment.
9. Did you see how concerned Jessie was? **EXPRESSION**
Did you see Jessie's face?
10. It was fascinating to hear Gary's description of his travels. **CAPTIVATED**
We of his travels.

1. John often forgets to lock the front door before he goes out. **HABIT**

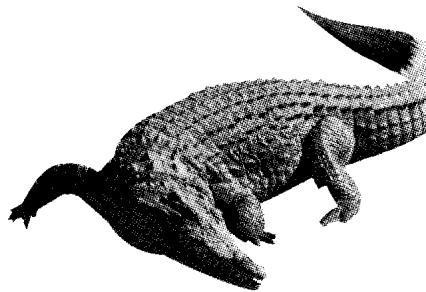
John the front door unlocked when he goes out.

2. Very few cats would willingly put their paws in water. **AVERSION**

Most cats their paws in water.

3. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

The Crocodile Hunter



In a typical episode of Animal Planet's *The Crocodile Hunter*, Steve Irwin, an exuberant young Australian, would plunge into a river in (1) of a crocodile before posing with it for the camera, or shin up a tree (2) after a snake. A unique combination of (3) and entertainer, Steve Irwin became famous worldwide for his daring (4) with animals as he went about his job rescuing wildlife or (5) specimens to take back to the Australian Zoo, the park he ran with his wife, Terri. Entertaining though they were, his shows provoked controversy on more than one occasion, such as the time when he fed a crocodile while holding his one-month old son. Some critics said that his shows were not authentic – that (6) were dramatised using animals bred in (7) which are naturally more (8) than wild animals. Irwin claimed that the show (9) reflected his work and denied (10) animals for entertainment. Steve emphasised that his shows educated people about the need to (11) the natural world. Tragically, Steve was killed in 2006 by a stingray while filming a wildlife documentary. Despite his untimely death, he inspired many people's interest in the natural world, particularly in crocodiles and other (12)

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A demand | B impact | C pursuit | D access |
| 2. A trunk | B stalk | C twig | D weed |
| 3. A advocate | B migrant | C organism | D naturalist |
| 4. A encounters | B intentions | C meetings | D habits |
| 5. A captivating | B capsizing | C cultivating | D capturing |
| 6. A sequences | B topics | C perspectives | D itineraries |
| 7. A domesticity | B captivity | C nature | D habitat |
| 8. A merciful | B indigenous | C docile | D domestic |
| 9. A radically | B utterly | C naturally | D genuinely |
| 10. A endorsing | B exploiting | C exposing | D unearthing |
| 11. A guard | B survive | C preserve | D conserve |
| 12. A reptiles | B offspring | C poachers | D cubs |

C. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. Joe's comments planted a of doubt in my mind.

We grew all the flowers in the garden from

A top American tennis player is the number one for the tournament.

2. You've got a very imagination if you think your cat is speaking to you!

My professor feels I have chosen ground for further research.

The land on the slopes of the volcano is farm land.

3. Our neighbour's dog has such a loud – it drives us crazy.

The insect's brown markings are the same as the of the tree it lives on.

Don't pay any attention to Bob's bad moods – his is worse than his bite.

4. It is the children's responsibility to the table before dinner.

The book claims to bare the secrets of the case.

The Loggerhead turtle can up to 100 eggs in one night.

5. The patient's to see his medical records was completely legitimate.

There is not much for genuine fur coats these days.

Tara is in great for advertising work at the moment.

A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

Behind the glamour and excitement of a circus show may lie a lifetime of suffering for the animals that perform. Wild animals can only (1) trained to do unnatural tricks with the use of violence. Elephants, for example, are subjected (2) electric shocks, while bears may (3) had their front paws burnt to get (4) to stand on their hind legs. In addition, the living conditions in which circus animals (5) ... kept may be unsuitable, as in (6) case of polar bears, which are often exposed to high temperatures they are unable to (7) accustomed to. Large animals, like tigers, may be (8) in cramped, unhygienic quarters and anti-circus activists claim that animals are (9) fed unless their performance is satisfactory. (10) a result of stress and disease, the (11) expectancy of circus animals is much shorter (12) it would be in their natural habitat or in captivity. Animal rights activists believe that governments should impose a total ban (13) the use of live animals in circuses, but in general, it seems that, in Britain at (14) there has been a decline (15) the number of circuses offering the traditional shows featuring wild animals.

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Do you think zoo animals mind being watched all the time? **STARING**
I wonder if it upsets zoo animals to the whole time.
2. They didn't think there could be another explanation for the inscription. **THOUGHT**
There explanation for the inscription.
3. The storm left a layer of sand all over the car. **COATED**
The car result of the storm.
4. Only authorised personnel are allowed to see what these files contain. **ACCESS**
Only authorised personnel of these files.
5. Mariah Carey got everyone in the audience to sing along with her. **SINGING**
By the end of the concert, Mariah Carey along with her.

C. WORD FORMATION Use the words given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

A CRUEL ATTACK

Two decades ago, the (1) Dian Fossey, whose story is featured in the film *Gorillas in the Mist*, drew the world's attention to the plight of the African mountain gorilla, and convinced the Rwandan government of their (2) to the country. She correctly predicted that gorilla-related tourism would create more (3) and generate more income than poaching could. After Ms Fossey's (4) murder in 1985, there were no more poaching deaths, either human or gorilla, for many years. But a (5) attack in 2002 sparked worries that the trade in live gorillas was still going strong. Two adult females were killed leaving several babies (6) , a three-year-old was stolen and a male gorilla was shot and wounded. Experts feared for the life of the youngest gorilla, as no baby has ever survived in (7) Today, there are only an (8) 700 gorillas left in the world, so every individual is important to the (9) of the species. In 2008, a new project began, involving the three African countries where the gorillas live. It aims to protect these apes with improved security and by (10) local communities from destroying the region's forests.

NATURE

SIGNIFY

EMPLOY

TRAGEDY

MERCY

MOTHER

CAPTIVE

ESTIMATE

SURVIVE

ENCOURAGE

2 Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- The police officer asked me what time
 - a. the accident was occurring
 - b. the accident occurred
 - c. the accident was occurred
 - d. was the accident occurred
- The Brazilian rainforest at a shocking rate.
 - a. is destroying
 - b. is to be destroyed
 - c. is being destroyed
 - d. is destroyed
- "Martha's court case is next week."
"What exactly ?"
 - a. is accused of her
 - b. has she been accused of
 - c. will she accuse
 - d. was she accused
- "How will I know if I've got a place on the course?"
"You before the end of August."
 - a. a letter will be sent
 - b. have a letter sending
 - c. have sent a letter
 - d. will be sent a letter
- The art thieves inside knowledge of the museum's security procedures.
 - a. are thought to have had
 - b. are thought to be
 - c. were thought there was
 - d. were thought that they had
- "Have you packed yet for your vacation?"
"Yes, I last night."
 - a. had it all do
 - b. got it to do
 - c. had it done
 - d. got it all done
- My new personal trainer says he by the end of the month.
 - a. will have done me 100 sit-ups a day
 - b. had done 100 sit-ups a day
 - c. will have me doing 100 sit-ups a day
 - d. has 100 sit-ups a day done
- Reference books out of the library.
 - a. are not to be taken
 - b. are not for being taken
 - c. must not have taken
 - d. not to take
- "Where do you think John was last night?"
"Well, he for his tests."
 - a. has to be studying
 - b. could have to study
 - c. should have studied
 - d. might have been studying
- It was an amazing victory as it was only the second time in a marathon.
 - a. of competing
 - b. she had competed
 - c. for her to compete
 - d. she competes

VOCABULARY

- 11. Scientists do not believe that Mad Cow disease is
 - a. indigenous
 - b. venomous
 - c. furious
 - d. contagious
- 12. Any attempt to stop the floodwater would be
 - a. relentless
 - b. fruitless
 - c. shapeless
 - d. tactless
- 13. Animal rights activists are a complete ban on the trade in animal furs.
 - a. approving
 - b. abolishing
 - c. advocating
 - d. associating
- 14. I woke up to the sound of birds in the trees outside my window.
 - a. chirping
 - b. neighing
 - c. croaking
 - d. bleating
- 15. All the plans have been made. You can't out now!
 - a. stamp
 - b. back
 - c. blurt
 - d. punch
- 16. The planning committee appears to have seriously the cost of the repairs.
 - a. undercharged
 - b. undervalued
 - c. underestimated
 - d. underrated
- 17. Rosa really did have a excuse for not coming to the reception.
 - a. genuine
 - b. fertile
 - c. remote
 - d. docile
- 18. We can't measure the of global warming on wildlife.
 - a. intention
 - b. impact
 - c. insistence
 - d. inclusion
- 19. The couple's political views are different.
 - a. fruitfully
 - b. physically
 - c. commercially
 - d. fundamentally
- 20. The president's strong of the terrorist attacks was broadcast on the news.
 - a. aversion
 - b. evolution
 - c. condemnation
 - d. cultivation

E. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

One species of bird which fascinates naturalists because of its antisocial behavior is the common cuckoo. (1) to Europe and Asia, it gets its name from the call of the male, and is a winter (2) to Africa. It is a grayish bird with a slender body that looks (3) a small bird of prey in flight. It feeds (4) insects, particularly caterpillars, and can typically (5) seen in open land near reed beds or trees.

It is well known for its (6) of laying its eggs in other birds' nests, particularly (7) of Dunnocks and Reed Warblers. When the female cuckoo sees an unattended (8) of eggs belonging to another species, she removes an egg and (9) hers in its place. The host mother then (10) the cuckoo egg along with her (11), seemingly unaware of what has happened. The cuckoo egg generally (12) first and the greedy young chick (13) throws out all the other eggs, or evicts the other young birds, so that it can monopolise the food that is provided (14) the parent bird and (15) in the nest all on its own. The host bird raises the cuckoo chick (16) if it were its own (17), despite the fact that it may be three times the size.

The behavior and anatomical (18) of the cuckoo was first described by Edward Jenner, best known for his (19) work in developing the first vaccine. Jenner (20) elected as a Fellow of the Royal Society in 1788 for his study of cuckoos.

- | | | |
|-----|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. | a. Homeless | c. Indigenous |
| | b. Tame | d. Extinct |
| 2. | a. emigration | c. migrating |
| | b. migrant | d. immigration |
| 3. | a. as | c. for |
| | b. are | d. like |
| 4. | a. on | c. of |
| | b. with | d. to |
| 5. | a. or | c. sometimes |
| | b. had | d. be |
| 6. | a. success | c. flexibility |
| | b. habit | d. existence |
| 7. | a. eggs | c. those |
| | b. preferring | d. them |
| 8. | a. nest | c. flock |
| | b. pack | d. swarm |
| 9. | a. lays | c. had |
| | b. did | d. would |
| 10. | a. devotes | c. exterminates |
| | b. hibernates | d. incubates |
| 11. | a. species | c. other |
| | b. own | d. rest |
| 12. | a. ceases | c. branches |
| | b. hatches | d. expires |
| 13. | a. may | c. will |
| | b. then | d. it |
| 14. | a. by | c. with |
| | b. for | d. as |
| 15. | a. leave | c. result |
| | b. withdraw | d. thrive |
| 16. | a. as | c. only |
| | b. together | d. just |
| 17. | a. predator | c. creativity |
| | b. offspring | d. ancestor |
| 18. | a. intuition | c. flaw |
| | b. way | d. adaptation |
| 19. | a. upright | c. pioneering |
| | b. justifiable | d. forthcoming |
| 20. | a. was | c. later |
| | b. had | d. however |

I I Reported Speech, Subjunctive

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

1. Choose the correct answers.

1. The group leader recommended a computer for the presentation.
a. to use b. use c. that we use d. them to use
2. Amy wanted to know the concert.
a. did I enjoy b. if I had enjoyed c. if or not I enjoyed d. whether I did enjoy
3. Mr Knight told we would be having a test next lesson.
a. us b. that c. to us d. to the class
4. The judge the prisoner that he had to keep quiet in court.
a. explained b. explained him c. explained to d. explained that
5. John asked Betty if she had read that book and she answered that
a. yes, she did b. she has c. she read d. she had
6. The thief threatened if I made a noise.
a. to hurt me b. me to hurt me c. that he will hurt d. hurting
7. Ron warned trust the new girl.
a. me that I not b. that I shouldn't c. me to not d. me not to
8. It is essential that the proposal this month.
a. approve b. be approved c. will be approved d. should approve
9. Claire asked to the nearest bank.
a. if was far b. how far was it c. how far it was d. was far
10. Dad told Jenny her room or she was not going anywhere.
a. tidy b. to tidy c. was tidying d. she tidy
11. Before yesterday's meeting started, the chairperson asked that everyone quiet.
a. is b. should be c. had been d. to be
12. My neighbour accused over her cat.
a. that I ran b. running c. me of running d. I had run
13. Jack said he had been to Canada
a. before a year b. the year before c. previous year d. a previous year
14. The head teacher's idea is that the school the money to buy some more computers.
a. use b. using c. to use d. used

2. Match each direct speech statement with its correct meaning.

1. "There's no way I'm dealing with this problem," he said.
a. He denied doing it. b. He refused to do it.
2. "I don't think you should deal with the problem," he said.
a. He advised against doing it. b. He announced that I wouldn't do it.
3. "No, no, let me deal with the problem," he said.
a. He insisted on doing it. b. He suggested that he did it himself.
4. "You have to deal with this problem, not me," he said.
a. He complained about doing it. b. He demanded that I do it.
5. "Why don't you let me worry about the problem from now on?" he said.
a. He offered to do it. b. He promised to do it.
6. "Please, please deal with the problem for me," he said.
a. He reminded me that I should do it. b. He begged me to do it.

Score: / 20

RULES

REPORTED SPEECH

To report what another person said, we can either quote directly or report it using indirect speech. Generally, when we report what someone said, the verb moves one tense back in the past. We can report three main kinds of direct speech: *statements, imperatives and questions*.

DIRECT SPEECH

Present Simple / Continuous

“I **prefer** the smaller computer,” she said.
“We **are doing** an experiment,” he said.

Present Perfect Simple / Continuous

“I still **haven’t mastered** the new program,” Paul said.
“We **have been living** on the island for years,” Sarah said.

Past Simple / Continuous

“We **took** a fascinating tour of Florence,” she said.
“We **were waiting** anxiously for the results,” he added.

will

“The product **will be** a great market success,” he said.

Present Modals

“John **can / may** help us later,” she said.

Some modals change in different ways according to their meaning:

“When **shall** we leave?” he asked. (*asking for information*)
“What **shall** we do?” she asked. (*request for advice*)
“I **can** speak French,” Sue added. (*referring to the present*)
“We **can** finish it later,” he said. (*referring to the future*)
“You **needn’t** apologise.” (*referring to the present*)
“You **needn’t** phone tonight.” (*referring to the future*)
“It **may** rain,” she said. (*possibility*)
“You **may** leave now,” he said. (*permission*)
“You **must** work harder,” the teacher said. (*necessity / obligation*)
“You **must** visit the museum,” she said. (*strong recommendation*)
“Sheila **must** be in her early twenties.” (*deduction / conclusion*)

STATEMENTS

REPORTED SPEECH

Past Simple / Continuous

She said that she **preferred** the smaller computer.
He said that they **were doing** an experiment.

Past Perfect Simple / Continuous

Paul said he still **hadn’t mastered** the new program.
Sarah said **they’d been living** on the island for years.

Past Perfect Simple / Continuous

She said they **had taken** a fascinating tour of Florence.
He added that they **had been waiting** anxiously for the results.

would

He said that the product **would be** a great market success.

Past Modals

She said that John **could / might** help them later.

He asked when they **would** leave.

She asked what they **should** do.

Sue added that she **could** speak French.

He said they **would be able to** finish it later.

He said I **needn’t / didn’t need to / didn’t have to** apologise.

She said we **wouldn’t have to** phone that night.

She said it **might** rain.

He said I **could / might** leave then.

The teacher said I **must / had to** work harder.

She said we **must / should** visit the museum.

He said that Sheila **must** be in her early twenties.

IMPERATIVES AND QUESTIONS

DIRECT SPEECH

Imperative

“Be careful,” the doctor instructed me.

“Don’t move!” the policeman ordered the thief.

Yes / No questions: auxiliary + subject + verb

“Do you **want** the report today?” the secretary asked me.

Wh- questions: Wh- word + auxiliary + subject + verb

“Where **are you going?**” Susan asked her friend.

REPORTED SPEECH

Full infinitive

The doctor instructed me **to be** careful.

The policeman ordered the thief **not to move**.

if / whether + subject + verb (= word order of a statement)

The secretary asked me **if I wanted** the report that day.

Wh- word + subject + verb (= word order of a statement)

Susan asked her friend **where she was going**.

Remember When we report answers, we repeat the auxiliary verb from the reported question. For a negative answer, we add *not*.

“Are you flying out tonight?” he asked. “**Yes**,” she said.

→ He asked if she **was** flying out that night. She answered that she **was**.

Notes

- Many verbs are used to report speech. For statements, the most common are **say** and **tell**. **Say** and **tell** are used differently.
We say something (to somebody): She **said** (that) she would arrive late. (**not**: She **said me** ... X)
We tell somebody something: She **told me** (that) she would arrive late. (**not**: She **told that** ... X)
Say and tell are not used to report questions.
- Whether** and **if** are used when we report yes / no questions. **If** is common in questions where the answer is yes or no. **Whether** is usually used in formal English or where there is a clear choice between alternatives. It is also often used after *wonder* and *want to know*.
Sue asked me **if** I wanted to go to the opera. He wondered **whether** I preferred to travel **by car or by bus**.
- In reported speech, we don't have to make tense changes when we report facts, general truths or things which are still true.
He said that the giant panda **is / was** an endangered species. Peter said he **has / had** a bad cold.
- There is no tense change:
 - when the reporting verb is in present or future tense.
She **says** she **likes** chocolate. He **will argue** that he's **going to win**.
 - when the tense cannot move one step back into the past. (Past Perfect, third conditional, *had better*, *used to*, etc.)
"I **had already heard** the news," he said. → He said (that) he **had already heard** the news.
"I **used to be** a sailor," he said. → He said (that) he **used to be** a sailor.
 - in certain expressions that use the unreal past: *It's time / would rather / as if / as though / wish*
"It's time we **sent** the supplies." → He said it was time they **sent** the supplies.
 - in the modals *might*, *should*, *ought to*, *could* and *would*
"Could I **borrow** your pen?" she asked. → She asked if she **could borrow** my pen.
- In reported speech, we also make changes in:
 - demonstrative adjectives: *this* → *that*; *these* → *those*
 - adverbs of place: *here* → *there*
 - time expressions: *today* → *that day*; *now* → *then*; *yesterday* → *the day before*, etc.
(See Grammar Appendix, page 217.)

REPORTING VERBS (See Grammar Appendix for full list, page 217-218.)

- In certain verbs, we can report the exact words that were said, or we can report the general meaning of the sentence.
When we report general meaning, we use specific verbs that carry a similar meaning to the action / function in the sentence.
"You really **should consult** a lawyer!" she said. (*function: giving advice*)
She told me I **should consult** a lawyer. (*exact words*) or: She **advised me to consult** a lawyer. (*general meaning*)

FORM	DIRECT SPEECH	REPORTED SPEECH
verb + infinitive <i>agree, decide, demand, offer, prefer, promise, propose, refuse, etc.</i>	"Shall I carry your cases?" he asked. "I will definitely keep in touch." "I won't give you the number."	He offered to carry my cases. She promised to keep in touch. He refused to give me the number.
verb + that + clause <i>agree, complain, explain, suggest, etc.</i>	"You always leave such a mess." "You have to check the oil regularly," he said.	She complained that I always leave a mess . He explained that I had to check the oil regularly .
verb + object + infinitive <i>beg, instruct, invite, warn, etc.</i>	"Please help me!" she cried. "Insert the disk now," he said. "Please come to the reception." "Don't trust him with money."	She begged me to help her. He instructed me to insert the disk then . She invited me to come to the reception. She warned me not to trust him with money.
verb + gerund <i>accuse sb. of, admit, advise against, blame sb. for, deny, insist on, suggest, etc.</i>	"Let's have lunch together." "I didn't break the window!" "You gave the details to the press."	He suggested having lunch together. She denied breaking the window. He accused me of giving the details to the press.

SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive refers to the use of the bare infinitive in *that* clauses which follow certain verbs, adjectives and nouns to express obligation, importance or intention. The form does not change in the third person singular and can be used for past, present or future.

after certain verbs (e.g., *advise, ask, demand, insist, order, propose, recommend, require, request, suggest*)

The lecturer **insists that we be** on time.

I **propose that Max not attend** the conference.

She **requested that the child be named** after her mother. (passive)

after certain adjectives (e.g., *advisable, anxious, certain, desirable, eager, essential, important, necessary, preferable, vital*)

It is **vital that he attend** the conference.

It is **important that she be informed** immediately. (passive)

after certain nouns (e.g., *idea, order, proposal, recommendation, request, suggestion*)

The **recommendation was that the money be invested** until she reached the age of 18. (passive)

Note

Subjunctives are more common in American English than in British English. In British English, although considered formal, **should + bare infinitive** is more usual.

The lecturer insists that we **should be** on time.

PRACTICE

A. Rewrite the following statements in reported speech. Use the verbs **say** or **tell**.

1. Rick: "I can't imagine living anywhere but my hometown."

Rick said that he couldn't imagine living anywhere but his hometown.

2. Fiona: "These plants have to be kept somewhere sunny."

.....

3. Personal assistant: "I've booked you an appointment for tomorrow, Mrs Green."

.....

4. Nurse to David: "You mustn't get out of bed until tomorrow morning."

.....

5. Jan: "I'm really looking forward to my holiday."

Jan said

6. Sam to me: "I can help you later tonight."

Sam said that

7. Jack to me: "I'd rather they didn't sign the contract."

Jack told me

8. Pilot: "The plane will be landing in half an hour."

The pilot said

B. Report the following questions and commands, beginning as shown.

1. "Should these chairs be left out here overnight?" she asked.

She asked me whether those chairs should be left out there overnight.

2. She said, "Are you looking for work?" "Yes, I am," he replied.

She asked

3. "When did you first notice these symptoms, Miss Harrison?" the doctor asked.

The doctor asked

4. "What time are you expecting the guests to arrive, Mary?" Ivor asked.

Ivor wanted to know

5. "You really should eat more fresh fruit," his mum said.

His mum advised

6. "Jill ought to apply herself more," said her tutor.
 Jill's tutor suggested
7. "Make sure you don't say anything about the party to John," Oliver said.
 Oliver warned
8. "I think he should donate the money to charity."
 Her proposal was

C Report each statement using the most suitable reporting verb from the list below.

point out • urge • threaten • suggest • reassure • doubt • estimate • refuse

1. "I don't think the corner shop will have the ingredients we need," said Sheila.
 Sheila ~~doubted that the corner shop would have the ingredients we needed~~.....
2. "Don't worry. I'll take care of your cat while you're away," Dan told me.

3. "You really should send them your CV," Helen kept telling me.

4. "What about going on a cruise this year?" Mum said to us.

5. "The plan's fine, but haven't you forgotten the fact that we have overspent our budget?" Debbie said.

6. "Of course I'm not going to proofread a 500-page document for nothing," Anita said.

7. "If you don't improve your attitude, we may have to dismiss you," the manager told Sam.

8. "I should think it'll take us about a week to clear out the property," Jackie said.

D SUBJUNCTIVE Complete the sentences with the verbs below. Use the subjunctive form.

grant • follow • reopen • pay • take • keep • admit

1. It is imperative that each and every soldierfollow..... orders.
2. He insisted that he for my ticket.
3. It is important that these pills after meals.
4. It was the recommendation of the judge that the case
5. The chairman proposed that women into the organisation as full members.
6. He demanded that no one else access to the files.
7. It is vital that a doctor up to date with new developments.

E Complete the sentences with a suitable verb. Do not use the verbs say or tell.

1. Annie ~~wanted~~ to know whether the money had been paid into her account.
2. The suspects have so far to answer any of the police's questions.
3. My friends getting together once a week to study.
4. Lucy me that she had locked up for the night.
5. We whether to accept the invitation or not.
6. The memo what each department was expected to do to prepare for the conference.
7. The policeman the fans that they would be arrested if they didn't restrain themselves.
8. The customs officer us to open our suitcase.

F. Find and underline 10 mistakes in reported speech. Then correct them.

we could

1. I asked Jeff if he had any ideas how could we raise money for the Christmas party and he suggested to hold a talent competition. He said we could open it up to the whole school and getting everyone to pay £1 to take part. Apparently, they did a similar show at his school. It was such a success that everyone kept asking for months when are they going to have another one. He also promised helping us with the organisation. Let me know what do you think.
2. We consulted to our lawyer yesterday about the problem we've been having with our next-door neighbours. He said they had no right to put up the wall without planning permission and he's advised to contact them in writing to insist that it be pulled down. We asked him that there was much chance of that happening and he said if the council investigated, the neighbours would face hefty fines. He warned us not to talking to them about it and to let him handle it instead, so that's what we've decided to do.

G. Complete the sentences below using the words given. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. The guy I spoke to on the computer help desk ...
 - a. suggest / read / manual carefully suggested that I (should) read the manual carefully.....
 - b. advise / against / install / more software
2. The review of the play ...
 - a. imply / performance / disappointing
 - b. describe / lead actor / as magnificent
3. The doctor ...
 - a. explain / allergy / cause / my sneezing
 - b. say / take / medication / reduce the symptoms
4. The family therapist ...
 - a. recommend / sit down / as a family / discuss / matter
 - b. ask / we / talk / about / incident

TEXT FEATURES

A. SPELLING: silent letters / words with tricky spellings (See Spelling Appendix, page 219.)

Correct the spelling mistakes in the sentences below. There may be more than one mistake in each sentence.

- laughing*
1. I couldn't help laughing when I heard him whistling that song. **X**
 2. What is the estimated lenght of the clime to the summit? **X**
 3. Sonia claims that she is a desendant of a 14th-century night. **X**
 4. First-years have sience classes in the labratory on Wendsday afternoons. **X**
 5. Lucy would love to wear desiner clothes but her hight makes it hard to find her size. **X**
 6. Sevral of my nieghours have installed security lites to deter burglars. **X**

B. PUNCTUATION: commas, dashes, full stops, colons and semi-colons (See Punctuation Appendix, pages 220-221.)

The following text has 10 punctuation mistakes. Find and correct the mistakes.

Guided Beatles Walk

As the Beatles sang "There are places I'll remember all my life. "Liverpool of course, is the city, with the most Beatles connections, but London has it's share too – the studios where many of their albums were recorded, the film locations for; *A Hard day's Night* and *Help*, and much more. Meet up with the guide, outside Abbey Road tube station any Saturday at 10 am for a walk down memory lane – to sixties London You can even sing if you want!



COHESION AND COHERENCE: text reference

To avoid repetition, we can use reference words, synonyms or other, more general words to refer backwards and forwards in a text.

- reference words for time, place, people, etc.

Johnson moved to London in 1737. It was **here** that he met his friend and biographer, Boswell.

We did mostly theory in the first month, and moved on to practice **the next**.

- synonyms

Scientists have been studying the region's climate for years. They say the **area** is showing clear signs of global warming.

- a more general word or phrase

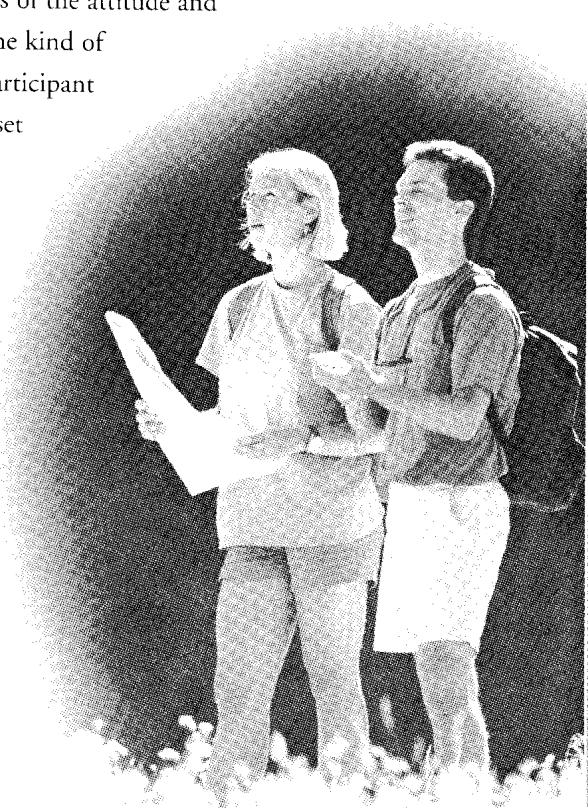
Doctors advise wearing a SPF 30+ sunblock throughout the year. They say **the protection** is essential.

1. Read the first paragraph of a magazine article. What do the words in colour refer to?

Fiona, a 32-year-old financial controller at a restaurant chain, has decided to do something to get out of the rut she feels she is in. So next month she is leaving her job behind to spend six weeks in the Indonesian rainforest. There, at the height of the rainy season, she will work for up to eight hours a day building wooden elephant shelters. What's more, she'll be paying for **the experience**. The expedition is organised by a charity that sends volunteers to remote areas to work on science and conservation projects. To young people, this **kind of adventure** also offers a chance to make a tangible contribution to the environment, perhaps **the only issue** that unites their generation.

2. Now read the second paragraph of the article. Complete the text by choosing the correct word or phrase.

To prepare herself, Fiona is undergoing a two-day jungle training course. (1) **Inside** / **There**, she'll face a series of survival exercises designed to raise the recruits' awareness of the attitude and commitment that is required. One activity demonstrates the kind of (2) **thinking** / **place** the organisers are looking for. Each participant is given a poncho and some lengths of rope and is told to set up camp among the trees. Hopefully, they will soon discover that one (3) **length** / **poncho** provides insufficient cover for one person, whereas if they work as a team, and tie the (4) **garments** / **leaves** together, they can create a structure which will keep them all dry overnight. Other (5) **tasks** / **clothes** draw on the volunteers' stamina and determination. At the campfire supper, the participants begin to relax, but (6) **the night before** / **soon afterwards** they are given a map and compass, and are sent out to cover a course through the woods. With torches only for emergencies, it is easy enough to get lost, as one group proves by staggering back to camp (7) **the following morning** / **a moment later**, tired and dejected.



EXAM PRACTICE

- A. OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

PUBLISHERS CAUGHT OUT

When David Lassman was unable to find a publisher for his novel, he began to (1) whether a famous author like Jane Austen (2) face similar problems getting her work published today. He subsequently (3) up with the idea that he submit to publishers plot summaries and the opening chapters of some of Austen's novels under different titles and with only minor changes to the text. Lassman was anxious to discover (4) these adaptations would be accepted for publication or not. In all but one case, the manuscripts (5) returned to him with a polite letter of rejection in which there was (6) reference to any similarity between the work submitted (7) Austen's novels.

When (8) why Austen's work had not been recognized, a spokesperson for one top publishing house claimed that in fact it (9) Yet no mention of this fact was made in the letter of rejection sent to Lassman. One publishing house, however, did realize they had received the opening lines of Austen's *Pride and Prejudice* in (10) slightly altered form. In their rejection letter, the publishers pointed (11) this similarity and (12) that Lassman check his copy of Austen's novel to (13) sure his own opening pages did not mimic it (14) closely. This was the closest anyone came to accusing him of (15) someone else's work.

- B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

1. The manufacturer will probably propose the product
 - a. be withdrawn
 - b. will be withdrawing
 - c. would withdraw
 - d. being withdrawn
2. The ecologist said it was time we measures to preserve the forest.
 - a. take
 - b. took
 - c. would take
 - d. had taken
3. that you consult a specialist.
 - a. It is advisable
 - b. You are advised
 - c. There is advice
 - d. You are advisable
4. "Can Karen work late tonight?"
"She said she"
 - a. can't
 - b. hadn't
 - c. couldn't
 - d. didn't
5. The teacher explained for any student.
 - a. that how regular revision is important
 - b. that how important regular revision is
 - c. how is regular revision important
 - d. how important regular revision is
6. The customs officer requested that her suitcase.
 - a. to open
 - b. her opening
 - c. she had opened
 - d. she open
7. "I want to buy that car."
"Don't you want to know it first?"
 - a. can you afford
 - b. if you afforded
 - c. whether you afford
 - d. if you can afford
8. "Did Angela ever admit she damaged the computer?"
"No, she blamed"
 - a. that I had broken it
 - b. me for breaking it
 - c. to break it on me
 - d. breaking it on me

TOPIC VOCABULARY

1 Match.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. blurb | a. the scientific study of language |
| 2. correspondence | b. the words of a song |
| 3. legend | c. books containing practical instructions |
| 4. linguistics | d. a form or version of a published text |
| 5. lyrics | e. short description of a book on the back cover |
| 6. manual | f. money paid to receive a publication regularly |
| 7. non-fiction | g. technical or legal details printed in contracts in smaller letters |
| 8. paperback | h. story passed down from the past |
| 9. small print | i. letter writing |
| 10. subscription | j. books or writing about fact |
| 11. edition | k. book with a soft cover |

2 WHAT IS IT? Choose from the words below.

acronym • anecdote • consonants • jargon • poetry • quotation
rumour • slang • slogan • verse • vowels

1. UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund)
2. a, e, i, o, u
3. b, c, d, etc.
4. Wasssup! It rocks! Wicked!
5. She walks in beauty like the night
Of cloudless climes and starry skies
And all that's best of dark and bright ... (Byron)
6. Let me tell you what happened the other day. I saw this guy and he really looked familiar, so I said, "Did we go to school together?" He looked at me and shook his head and said, "Sort of. I was your geography teacher."
.....
7. ... the processor is currently executing code from a slow read-only memory
8. "We have really everything in common with America nowadays except, of course, language."
9. "Give yourself a head start with HeadStart Shampoo!"
10. Apparently Beth was offered the assistant manager's job but she turned it down because she doesn't get on with Jim, the regional boss.



C. Read the advice to students and complete the exercise below.

Preparing your Dissertation

This advice for undergraduates should be taken as a general guide only – consult whichever member of staff is supervising your project for more details.

First of all, you need a topic that is neither too broad nor too specialised – dissertations prepared by past students have been posted online on the department site so you can browse through to get an idea of what is suitable but remember that you must choose an original topic. Prepare an outline which describes concisely what you intend to research and what you hope to prove, then discuss your proposal with your supervisor.

When you are researching your chosen topic, keep careful notes on everything you read. You will need to include detailed references and footnotes in your final dissertation which give the publication details of all your sources.

Before handing it in, be sure to proofread your manuscript carefully as inaccuracies will be heavily penalised.

Find words that mean:

1. long piece of writing prepared in order to satisfy the requirements of a university degree
2. published on an Internet site
3. look through casually
4. statement of the main ideas or points
5. briefly, using few words
6. notes printed at the bottom of the page, giving more details of something mentioned in a text
7. read carefully to check for errors
8. document that is not yet ready for printing or publication

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. COLLOCATIONS

1. Choose two verbs from the list that combine with the nouns below. One verb can be used twice.

voice * strike up * return the * withhold * come in for * tell * pay a
crack * honour * disclose * air * break * dominate

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1.  <u>withhold</u> information | 5.  <u>compliment</u> |
| 2.  <u>crack</u> a joke | 6.  <u>a promise</u> |
| 3.  <u>disclose</u> a conversation | 7.  <u>an opinion</u> |
| 4.  <u>criticism</u> | |

2. Complete the sentences below using collocations from Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

1. The famous author wouldn't regarding the book he is currently working on.
2. Bob Dylan used the lyrics of his songs to about social and political issues.
3. We hope the new prime minister will he made before the elections.
4. The neighbours watered our plants while we were away; we'll when they go away.

3 PHRASAL VERBS down

The particle *down* often means *reduce* or *lower*.

1. Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. In the end, it all boils down to | a. some notes on a napkin. |
| 2. They have decided to tear down | b. the severity of the crisis. |
| 3. The spokesman tried to play down | c. in a 100-page document. |
| 4. I don't think the government is going to back down | d. and I'm using my friend's this week. |
| 5. The regulations are laid down | e. so his assistant can take over. |
| 6. I didn't have any paper so I jotted down | f. on this issue. |
| 7. I think the chairman should stand down | g. behind their backs. |
| 8. I hate the way Carol runs people down | h. how much you are prepared to spend. |
| 9. My car broke down | i. the choice to three candidates. |
| 10. After the interviews, they narrowed down | j. the old tower block. |

2. Match the questions with answers containing nouns derived from phrasal verbs with **down**.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Could you afford new clothes? | a. Yes, there was a crackdown. |
| 2. Did they catch many drink drivers? | b. No, there was a breakdown on the train. |
| 3. Did you play golf on Saturday? | c. No, we got hand-me-downs. |
| 4. Did he take the lower-paid job? | d. No, there was a downpour. |
| 5. Did you get there on time? | e. Yes, it was a real come-down. |

3. Write a noun from Exercise 2 that means the same as each phrase below.

1. used clothes
2. heavy rainstorm
3. strict enforcement of the law
4. drop in status
5. situation when something stops working



WORD FORMATION

When we add **en** as a prefix or a suffix it often means **to make**.

enslave = *make somebody a slave*

blacken = *make something black*

enlighten = *cause understanding*

1. Complete the chart by putting the words below under the correct headings. Make any necessary changes.

able	broad	danger	fast	length	soft	thick	weak
act	close	dark	force	light	strength	tight	wide
black	code	dead	hard	rich	sure	tough	worse
bright	courage	deep	large	slave	sweet	trust	

en-

- **enable**.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

-en

- **blacken**.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Complete the sentences below with the words you formed in Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. Would you **entrust** your child to a complete stranger?
2. Security has been at the airports since the hijacking.
3. Add two teaspoons of flour to the sauce.
4. Travel is said to the mind and our understanding of other cultures.
5. The local council plans to the road through the village.
6. Writing the research paper together their friendship.
7. The drug problem has in recent years.
8. You should a CV with your job application.
9. Smoking in public places has been banned, but the law is not
10. For security reasons, all information is before it is sent electronically.

D. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

summary	1. a. Interested applicants should send in a
biography	b. I've just finished reading a fascinating of Marilyn Monroe.
résumé	c. The lecturer asked us to write a 200-word of the article.
compliment	2. a. I prefer Sunday newspapers because of the travel
supplement	b. It makes my day when someone pays me a
complement	c. The waiter suggested a green salad to the meat dish we had ordered.
acquire	3. a. Children do not all of their knowledge of the world from books.
inquire	b. We about train times at the information desk.
require	c. It great imagination and patience to write a novel.
implicit	4. a. The manual gives instructions for installing the software.
explicit	b. Ruth was upset by the criticism in her teacher's comment on her essay.
illicit	c. Despite the efforts of the authorities, the trade in pirated DVDs continues.
literal	5. a. He writes prose in a very complex, style.
literate	b. These days, you have to prove that you are computer for most jobs.
literary	c. The detective went digging for evidence, but not in the sense of the word!
prescription	6. a. If you take out a to the magazine, you'll save 70%.
inscription	b. The doctor gave her a for some sleeping pills.
subscription	c. The on the base of the memorial honours all the soldiers who fought in the war.
content	7. a. The of that document is highly confidential.
context	b. Our literature teacher helped us understand the historical of the play.
consent	c. Parents who wish their children to take part in the excursion must sign a form giving their

E. RELATED WORDS

1. Mark the following words O (something / someone that is old) or N (new / young).

ancient	innovative	novel	out-of-date	state-of-the-art
antique	juvenile	novice	over the hill	up-to-date
archaic	latest	obsolete	primitive	veteran
contemporary	mature	outmoded	recent	vintage

2. Find five words in Exercise 1 that may have negative connotations.

.....
.....
.....

3. Read the text below and decide which answer best fits in each space.

BIBLIOTHECA ALEXANDRINA

Over 1700 years ago, Ptolemy I Soler, Alexander the Great's successor in Egypt, founded a library at Alexandria that became the centre for learning for the (1) world. A new library stands on the site today – the *Bibliotheca Alexandrina*. Opened in 2002, the institution is equipped with (2) technology. Its digital archive library stores a great number of (3), which are easily accessible, and make it a library for the digital age. The collection includes both (4) and historic writings, and the staff is assembling a special collection of materials about the library and the area. The library is an (5) step for Egypt as it is the first library in the country to offer the general (6) access to such a large collection. The design of the building is meant to (7) a sunrise – a new beginning for an old tradition. With nearly 40% of the population still (8), the library is set to play an important role in Egypt's future.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A primitive | B ancient | C archaic | D antique |
| 2. A state-of-the-art | B novice | C recent | D novel |
| 3. A manuals | B volumes | C paperbacks | D subscriptions |
| 4. A juvenile | B outmoded | C contemporary | D latest |
| 5. A up-to-date | B innovative | C obsolete | D out-of-date |
| 6. A public | B audience | C crowd | D people |
| 7. A symbolise | B advocate | C quote | D swear |
| 8. A illegible | B unreadable | C literary | D illiterate |

METAPHOR AND MEANING

Many words and expressions connected with reading and writing are used to talk about implying and understanding meaning.

Explain the meaning of the phrases in colour.

“I’m not exaggerating. I can **read** Julie like a book. She’s always had a **hidden agenda** and I’m going to find out exactly what she’s up to now.”

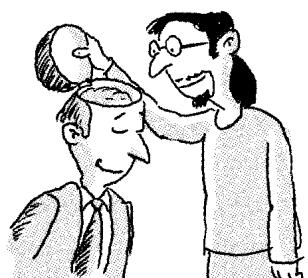
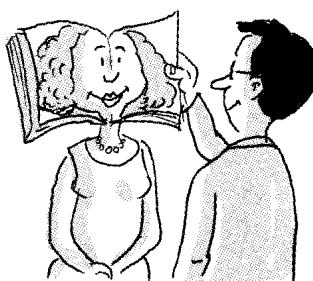
“I think you’re **reading** too much **into** her behaviour – she can’t have meant anything serious.”

“So did Peterson **rule out** the possibility of a loan?”

“No, but he didn’t need to **spell it out**. The answer was obviously no – it was **written all over his face**.”

“Our tutor **underlined** the importance of finding an original subject. And, **reading between the lines**, I think he means we have to interview people.”

“Really! Well, I’m not a **mind reader**! Thanks for the tip, though!”



G. MULTIPLE MEANINGS book issue word

Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings.

1. That restaurant's really popular – I think we should book.
 2. Can I have a word with you about my grades?
 3. Mum will let me go – I'm in her good books at the moment.
 4. Personal privacy is an issue these days.
 5. I feel I must take issue with your claim that women make bad engineers.
 6. If you take out a year's subscription, you get an extra two issues free of charge.
 7. All staff members will be issued with an identity card.
 8. I give you my word that I will not pass on this information to anyone else.
 9. Word of the redundancies spread very quickly.
 10. Several protesters were booked for disturbing the peace.
- | | |
|--------|--|
| | a. speak to |
| | b. be provided with |
| | c. disagree with |
| 1..... | d. reserve (a table, etc.) |
| | e. were taken in by the police |
| | f. popular with somebody |
| | g. widely discussed subject |
| | h. promise |
| | i. news, rumours |
| | j. a particular edition of a newspaper or magazine |



H. IN OTHER WORDS Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings.

1. They implied that I knew.
 2. She was able to infer a lot from the statistics.
 3. His reply was ambiguous.
 4. We reiterated our position.
 5. We have a reasonable command of the language.
 6. She was very outspoken.
 7. It came to our attention.
 8. Please notify us promptly.
 9. She speaks excellent colloquial French.
 10. They conveyed the idea effectively.
- | | |
|--------|---|
| | a. uses informal, everyday language |
| | b. we found out |
| | c. got the point across |
| | d. let us know as soon as possible |
| | e. drew conclusions based on what she read |
| | f. repeated |
| | g. can make ourselves understood |
| | h. not made clear |
| 1..... | i. hinted |
| | j. didn't hold back and spoke openly and honestly |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Rob's teacher is very happy with him at the moment. **BOOKS**
Rob at the moment.
2. The press criticised the minister's sudden change of policy. **CAME**
The minister by the press when he suddenly changed policy.
3. He said there was no way the government would send financial aid to the region. **RULED**
The government spokesperson sending aid to the region.
4. Could you speak to Olga about her punctuality? **WORD**
Would you mind Olga about her punctuality?
5. After the scandal, they asked the minister to resign from his post. **DOWN**
After the scandal, the minister from office.
6. She speaks Spanish very well. **COMMAND**
She Spanish.

3. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

THE WORLD OF COSMOPOLITAN

One magazine, more than any other, symbolizes the global dominance of Western youth culture and fashion. *Cosmopolitan*, the lifestyle and fashion guide for women in the 18-34 age group, is now (1) in 28 languages. From Latvia to India, women turn to *Cosmo* for advice and a taste of adult (2) in a lighthearted, upbeat style. Each local (3) follows the same formula, which is strictly (4) in a secret 50-page instruction (5) The cover, for example, of every (6) must depict a woman who (7) the spirit of *Cosmo*, which is summed up in its (8) : *fun, fearless, female*. But each local editor (9) that *Cosmo* reflects local tastes and is (10) of local culture. Photographs are mostly of local celebrities who are easily recognised, and relationship advice is geared to the values of the local population. In China, for example, any mention of sex would be unacceptable, although the magazine still offers beauty advice amongst articles (11) patriotism and good citizenship. With an international readership of 8.2 million, *Cosmopolitan* can be said to have succeeded in (12) for the needs and interests of women worldwide. But to others, *Cosmopolitan* is just another American product successfully marketed to the rest of the world.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A published | B circulated | C subscribed | D quoted |
| 2. A contract | B consent | C context | D content |
| 3. A manuscript | B edition | C résumé | D volume |
| 4. A boiled down | B run down | C narrowed down | D laid down |
| 5. A manual | B outline | C blurb | D draft |
| 6. A issue | B agenda | C complement | D editor |
| 7. A airs | B speaks | C reminds | D conveys |
| 8. A slogan | B slang | C slander | D supplement |
| 9. A enacts | B endorses | C ensures | D strengthens |
| 10. A explicit | B dutiful | C respectful | D colloquial |
| 11. A advocating | B enabling | C flourishing | D approving |
| 12. A singling | B catering | C observing | D sensing |

2. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

ENGLISH TODAY

People in Britain today still pay a great deal of attention to the notion of class. According to recent research by (1) , British people attach more (2) to accent and (3) of words than anything else, even wealth, when assessing other people's social status. However, a new style of English (4) which has been adopted by people from all levels of society may soon make it (5) to judge somebody according to their (6) The new standard English is known as Estuary English (EE) because it originated in the areas around the River Thames estuary, but is now typical throughout the south-east. This way of speaking is very popular with the young in particular, who are keen to disguise their social origins.

The most (7) feature of EE is a tendency to (8) consonants, particularly *l* and *t* sounds, so that the word *what* is heard as *wha* and *will* sounds something like *wiwi*. Some vowels are not voiced clearly so that the words *full*, *fall* and *fool* sound virtually the same, which can cause ambiguity. EE speech is a (9) subject in England – some people welcome it as a sign that Britain is moving towards a class-free society, but others consider it a lazy, ignorant way of speaking, and schools have been told to (10) their pupils to speak more correctly.

LANGUAGE
SIGNIFICANT
CHOOSE

PRONOUNCE
POSSIBLE
SPEAK

CHARACTER
WEAK

CONTROVERSY

COURAGE



A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

CLEANING UP THE NEIGHBOURHOOD

Local authorities and local residents agree on one thing: it's essential (1) something be done about inner-city crime. New schemes in Bradford are involving local people (2) the effort to clean up some of Britain's most troubled urban neighbourhoods. A group (3) mums, aunts and grannies, all unpaid volunteers, have (4) given training in self-defence and negotiating skills, and sent out to patrol the streets in the afternoons and evenings. (5) job is to approach anyone who looks likely to misbehave and ask them (6) they are doing. (7) is hoped that their presence will discourage drug dealers and make the area safer for children. Organisers of the scheme deliberately looked for middle-aged women because they are said to (8) more effective in communicating with youngsters and so can warn them (9) getting into trouble (10) provoking an aggressive response. To ensure their safety, the women have been issued (11) mobile phones which will (12) them to (13) the police know instantly if an emergency arises. The same organisation also runs courses on personal safety for women. This gives them the chance to express their fears and learn what they can do to make their areas safer. They are persuaded (14) report crimes or suspicious behaviour. Organisers say that it's (15) use blaming the police for ignoring problems if local people don't take action either.

B. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. It takes a lot of self-confidence to be able to strike up a with a perfect stranger.
Terry has a tendency to dominate the and not let others express their opinions.
Luckily we managed to steer the around to a topic we knew something about.
2. When speaking in front of a large audience, you should bear in that everybody should be able to both hear and see you.
It is uncanny how it always seems as if Emily can read my
It's getting to be a cliché now, but I still believe that travel can broaden the
3. The quality of the food we eat is an that concerns all of us.
The other guests on the chat show took with the politician's racist comments.
As a subscriber, you will receive a 50% discount on the cover price of each
4. Allison tries to hide her emotions but I can her like a book.
It would be a mistake to too much into the latest statistics as they may not truly represent the long-term situation.
Before signing any contract you should the small print carefully.
5. Tourists must not be allowed access to the parts of the beach where the turtles have their eggs.
The central committee has down strict guidelines about working conditions in its latest report.
Due to the economic downturn, the factory has off more than 20% of its workforce.
6. It has to my attention that some staff members have been taking overly long lunch breaks.
Fans of the author are expected to in droves to tomorrow's book signing event.
The advertising agency had to up with a catchy new slogan for the campaign.

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- The interviewer asked me and I hope my answer was satisfactory.
- to say how could I cope with stress
 - how well I coped with stress
 - how would I cope with stress
 - if did I cope with stress well
- My doctor said the medication for six months.
- I would have to take
 - I must have taken
 - that I take
 - me to take
- Our parents have suggested on a camping trip but my sister and I don't like the idea.
- to go
 - that we went
 - going
 - we should have gone
- Ray asked us if we were interested in learning Italian and we said
- that we were
 - are we
 - him we would be
 - we ought
- The board proposes that the majority of this year's profits in new product development.
- will be invested
 - be invested
 - to be invested
 - invest
- The idea is the publicity department during peak periods.
- Susan to assist
 - Susan assisting
 - that Susan be assisted
 - that Susan assist
- The teacher instructed in pencil.
- the students writing
 - the students to write
 - the students wrote
 - that the students would write
- I must next week.
- have serviced the car
 - get the car to service
 - get the car serviced
 - have the car servicing
- all your money on the first day of your trip was foolish.
- Having to spend
 - You to spend
 - Being spent
 - Spending
- "Oh, no! My new shirt has shrunk!"
"You it by hand."
- might have washed
 - had better wash
 - should have washed
 - didn't have to wash

VOCABULARY

- The children in the audience were by the show.
- brightened
 - advocated
 - captivated
 - cultivated
- There need to be changes to the health system to bring it up to date.
- eventful
 - radical
 - liberal
 - primitive
- It is a crime to evidence relating to a police investigation.
- withhold
 - swear
 - infer
 - inquire
- There is a great deal of pressure in the newspaper industry; editors might work a 12-hour day with no
- come-down
 - letdown
 - let-up
 - crackdown
- It's not worth keeping the old computer – the technology is now.
- illiterate
 - ambiguous
 - contemporary
 - obsolete
- Our lecturer the importance of taking clear notes.
- responded
 - reiterated
 - retained
 - recruited
- The author submitted an of her proposed novel for her publisher's approval.
- outline
 - outlook
 - underline
 - underestimate
- Vegetarians are often advised to take iron and vitamin to make up for any deficiencies in their diet.
- complements
 - ailments
 - imitations
 - supplements
- These days most is sent by email.
- quotation
 - legend
 - inscription
 - correspondence
- Campers under 18 need their parents' before they can take part in any extreme sports at this camp.
- consonant
 - consent
 - context
 - contract

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

All cultures, ancient or modern, have legends which are passed on from generation to generation. Most legends are based (1) true events but they have been (2) with the addition of less (3) elements, such as miracles or superhuman achievements. In (4) of St George, for example, he saves a princess from (5) sacrificed to a dragon then helps her lead the (6) into the city, terrifying its inhabitants. He insists that they (7) baptized as Christians and when they agree, he kills the dragon.

Historians, (8), know little about the real St George, who probably lived in the fourth century. The episode with the dragon was not part of the legend until the 12th century.

Additions of (9) type are easily explained. Before the invention of the printing press, storytellers (10) recite their stories from memory, which gave (11) the freedom to make the stories more exciting or relevant. In this way, legends change (12) time, and although they may no longer be believable, they remain (13) in history.

Urban legends, on the other hand, are described as (14) taken place recently and are usually (15) as if the narrator is personally connected to someone in the story – (16) a friend of a friend. These typically contain elements of horror or mystery, such as the story of the vanishing hitchhiker or the (17) about alligators living under the streets of New York. Experts who have studied the (18) believe that they (19) as warnings by exaggerating the danger of certain situations or places in an (20) and humorous way.

1. a. on
b. in
c. for
d. towards
2. a. enclosed
b. deadened
c. spelled
d. enriched
3. a. vintage
b. alleged
c. impossible
d. credible
4. a. the
b. case
c. legend
d. that
5. a. her
b. being
c. its
d. death
6. a. creature
b. direction
c. heroine
d. footsteps
7. a. must
b. getting
c. be
d. were
8. a. also
b. however
c. then
d. justifiably
9. a. the
b. this
c. another
d. no
10. a. had
b. always
c. would
d. can
11. a. it
b. stories
c. in
d. them
12. a. over
b. in
c. without
d. beyond
13. a. hardened
b. rooted
c. booked
d. conserved
14. a. though
b. having
c. they
d. for
15. a. said
b. told
c. cracked
d. given
16. a. usually
b. never
c. and
d. also
17. a. compliment
b. extent
c. rumor
d. acronym
18. a. city
b. phenomenon
c. history
d. place
19. a. enact
b. act
c. imply
d. rule
20. a. imaginative
b. official
c. ignorant
d. upright

Conditionals

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

QUIZ

How many combinations of verb tenses are possible in conditional sentences?

- a. fewer than 5 b. between 5-20 c. more than 20

(answer at the bottom of the page)

A. Choose the correct answers.

1. I promise to call you the minute I any news.
a. heard b. will hear c. hear
2. If metal it expands.
a. is heated b. was heated c. will be heated
3. The medicine won't have the same effect if it on an empty stomach.
a. was taken b. is taken c. will be taken
4. If we want to be on form tomorrow, we an early night.
a. ought to get b. would get c. can get
5. Terry would take a day off if he so much work to do.
a. wouldn't have b. hadn't had c. didn't have
6. If they were to offer you the part, it?
a. were you accepting b. would you accept c. did you accept
7. If you have read this book, it to the library.
a. return b. returns c. returning
8. I would never have remembered all the details if I notes during the meeting.
a. didn't take b. hadn't taken c. wouldn't have taken
9. We should take snow chains in case the road dangerous to drive on.
a. is b. will be c. would be
10. If we hadn't been browsing round the bookshop, I into Leslie.
a. wouldn't have bumped b. hadn't bumped c. wouldn't have been bumping
11. Supposing you lost your job, what ?
a. will you do b. would you do c. would you have done
12. If you me, I'll take you to the managing director's office.
a. followed b. will follow c. were to follow

B. Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

- | | | |
|---|-------|--|
| 1. You can go out as long as | | a. would you put in a good word for me? |
| 2. Unless you hurry up, | | b. I wouldn't let you go out. |
| 3. If you're finding the course difficult, | | c. you would have asked for a better salary. |
| 4. If you've answered all the questions on the paper, | | d. you tell me where you're going. |
| 5. If you happen to hear of a suitable vacancy, | | e. we'd be having a great time. |
| 6. If it weren't for the weather, | | f. you can leave the exam room. |
| 7. If you were more assertive, | | g. you can ask your tutor for help. |
| 8. If you hadn't finished all your schoolwork, | | h. we're going to be late. |

RULES

Conditional sentences have two parts: the conditional clause and the main (result) clause.

Conditional Clause Main (result) Clause

ZERO CONDITIONAL – true in the present

If + present tense / modal	Present Simple / modal	facts, truths, habitual results in the present	If I work in the garden, I get backache. She can get sick if she eats tomatoes.
FIRST CONDITIONAL – possible in the present / future			
If + Present Simple	future	real situations with possible outcomes in present and future	If she keeps calm, she'll pass the test. Paul won't win if he doesn't train .
If + Present Simple	modal	ability, possibility, advice (depending on the meaning of the modal)	If we arrive early, we can have lunch. If you need to lose weight, you must eat less bread.
If + present tense	imperative	emphasising different things depending on choice of tense	If you need any help, just phone me. <i>(instructions)</i> If you have read the book, give it back to me. <i>(emphasising completion)</i> If you're coming tonight, will John be coming too? <i>(checking intention / plan)</i> If you are looking for June, you'll find her in her office. <i>(talking about the present)</i>
If + present tense	future		

SECOND CONDITIONAL – unlikely / improbable in the present / future

If + Past Simple / Past Continuous	would / could / might	• hypothetical, unreal situations • hopes / regrets • advice	If I had her number, I'd phone her. If I were invited for dinner I might bring Alan along. If I were taller, I could become a model. If we didn't have to finish this today, we could go out . If I were you, I would marry him.
If + were to + bare infinitive	would / could / might	emphasising that the situation is unlikely (formal English)	If he were to apologise , would you forgive him? (= if he apologised)
If + Past Simple / Past Continuous	Past Simple	true or habitual actions in the past	If he ate chocolate, he got stomach ache.

THIRD CONDITIONAL – impossible in the past

If + Past Perfect Simple / Past Continuous	would have / could have / might have	• unfulfilled condition in the past • satisfaction / regret over past action	If I hadn't been waiting for that flight, I'd never have met Tom. <i>(but I was waiting and we did meet)</i> If we hadn't arrived so late, we might have got tickets.
If + Modal Perfect	Modal Perfect	hypothetical situation in the past	If you could have stayed another day, I would have taken you to the sea. <i>(but you couldn't stay)</i>

MIXED CONDITIONALS

If + Past Simple / Past Continuous (second conditional)	would have (third conditional)	hypothetical present connected with hypothetical past result	If Jane were slightly taller, the model agency would have accepted her.
If + Past Perfect (third conditional)	would / could / might (second conditional)	hypothetical past with hypothetical present result	If the patient hadn't been vaccinated as a child, his life would be in danger now.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES – time word + present + future

Clauses that begin with certain time expressions and carry a future meaning use similar structures to the first conditional. Time words include: *when, until, till, as soon / long as, the moment / that, after, before, once, by the time*.

As soon as we **arrive**, we'll **call** you.

They **will sit** in the garden **until** it gets dark.

STYLE AND REGISTER

When the **if** clause precedes the main clause, it is followed by a comma. When the main clause begins the sentence, a comma is not required.

Unless can often replace **if ... not**. **Unless** is followed by a positive verb.

If ... , then is sometimes used to suggest that one action is dependent on another.

If + will / won't is used in polite / formal requests (refers to willingness or refusal).

If + would is also possible (even more formal)

Should can be used with **I** and **we** instead of **would** in the second conditional (considered formal).

AmE Would is commonly used in both clauses in informal American English.

If + adjective sometimes replaces **if + subject + be** in the first conditional.

If in doubt is used in formal language and written instructions.

If so / If not are shortened forms of conditional clauses and refer to previous statements.

If + any / anything / ever, etc. is used in questions or negative sentences and expresses doubt about the truth of something.

Happen to / should happen to shows chance / possibility.

Were not for / had not been for are used to show that one action depends on another.

But for + noun / pronoun is a shorter way of saying **were it not for / had it not been for** in formal English.

If you **leave** early, you will catch that train.
You'll catch that train if you leave early.

You'll miss the train **unless** you **leave** at once. (= *if you don't leave*)
She wouldn't come **unless** you **gave** her a lift.

If Tom can't visit us, **then** we'll have to visit him.

If you **will come** this way, please, I'll show you to your room.
If you **won't be** quiet, I'll have to ask you to leave.

If you **would like** to wait here, I'll call the manager.

If I lived abroad, I **should miss** my home terribly.

It **would be** better if they **would give** everyone an exact appointment.

If **possible**, let me know by Friday. (= *if it is possible*)
If **necessary**, repeat the treatment two or three times.
(= *if it is necessary*)

If in doubt, consult a doctor. (= *if you are in doubt*)

Are you coming to the party? **If so**, I'll give you a lift. (= *if you are coming*) **If not**, I'll see you next week.

There's little chance, **if any**, that he will recover. (= *if there is any chance at all ... which I doubt*)

We're not doing anything special to celebrate. **If anything**, we may go out for dinner. (= *if we do anything at all*)

If you **happen to see** John, give him my regards.

If it **were not for** you, he wouldn't have his diploma.
If it **hadn't been for** Sue, the company would have failed.

But for Sue, the company would have failed.

INVERSION IN CONDITIONALS

We can make conditionals more formal by omitting **if** and starting the conditional clause with **should**, **were** or **had**.

First conditional **Should you hear** anything, let me know.

Second conditional **Were you to sign** the contract now, you could start working again.

Third conditional **Had you made** him an offer, he might have accepted.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES WITHOUT **if**

- **Suppose / Supposing (that)** means **what if** and is followed by a question in the main clause.

First conditional **Suppose he arrives** early, what will we do?

Second conditional **Supposing he suddenly turned up**, what would you do?

Third conditional **Supposing that he had come** by train, would he have arrived any earlier?

- **Otherwise** means **if not** and comes instead of a conditional clause.

We really must hurry. **Otherwise**, we'll miss our flight. (= *if we don't hurry*)

- **As long as / so long as / on condition (that) / providing (that) / provided (that)** express an idea of strong limitation.

You can take the car **as long as** you're back by midnight. He would come **on condition that** we gave him a lift.

- **In case** refers to conditions that may or may not happen. The **in case** clause can give the reason for the main clause. It can also refer to things we do in order to be ready for a future situation.

The policeman took a gun **in case** things got dangerous. Take a warm sweater **in case** it turns cold.

- **In case of** + noun is more formal and often used in instructions. It means **if there is**.

In case of fire, make for the nearest exit.

PRACTICE

A. Complete the text using the most suitable tense of one of the verbs below. One verb may be used twice.

guess * have * work * recognise * erupt stop seem miss go

Dear Nicola,

How are you? Thanks a lot for the photos – your sister has grown up so much that I (1) her if you hadn't told me which one she was.

I've been really busy at college all day and working at the café most nights. I know I'd have more time to study if I (2) , but then I (3) enough money to go on the field trip next month. We're going to Sicily and we'll be able to go up Mt Etna if it (4) in the meantime. If we're lucky, we (5) time for some shopping and sunbathing in between completing our projects on the local geology. Our department is really good about organising trips like this. If I'd done geography (my first choice), I (6) anywhere this year. And if I didn't have the trip to look forward to, it (7) a very long term, I can tell you.

What else? Well, Phil's so-called surprise party was great fun. He (8) never what we were up to, but we had to tell him because he was planning to go home for the weekend, so he (9) the whole thing!

Anyway, I'd better not waffle on anymore – I'll miss my next lecture if I (10) writing now!

Love,

Gail

B. Match each phrase in colour with the phrase that best describes its function.

- | | | |
|--|--------|---|
| 1. If you've ever worked as a waitress, you'll know what I mean. | | a. chance possibility |
| 2. If I were you, I'd get the car seen to before going on holiday. | | b. emphasising that something is unlikely |
| 3. If I were to emigrate to Australia, would I find work? | | c. giving advice |
| 4. If you would like to join us, you'd be very welcome. | ...1.. | d. emphasising experience |
| 5. If it hadn't been for the driver, we wouldn't have made it on time. | | e. making a polite offer |
| 6. If you happen to find their website, will you let me know? | | f. showing that one action depended on another action or person |

C. MIXED CONDITIONALS Write one conditional sentence for each situation below, beginning as shown. Each situation will require mixed tenses.

1. Elizabeth is making a fortune now because she invested her money at the right time.

If Elizabeth

2. Simon is still ill. Otherwise, he would already have sent the invitations.

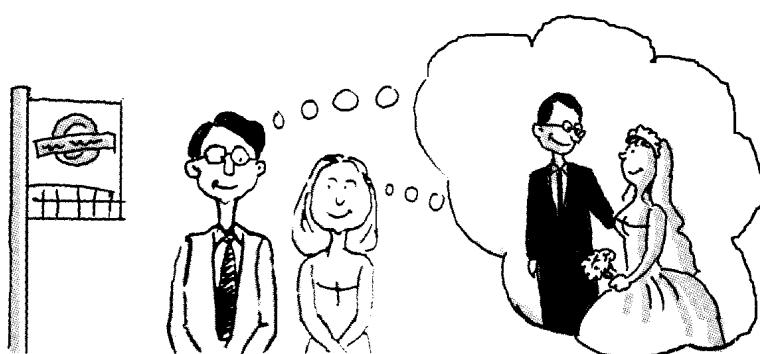
If Simon

3. Janice must be clever. She solved the puzzle so quickly.

If Janice

4. I was standing at that bus stop when I met Pete. Now we're married.

I wouldn't



D. Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase below.

~~if so~~ • if not • were to • if correct • otherwise • provided that
in case • were not for • happen to • but for

1. Are you looking for a hotel off the beaten track? ~~If so~~ Pine Forest Lodge is the place for you.
2. our tour guide, we would have got dreadfully lost in the big city.
3. Will you be using the car tonight? would you mind if I borrow it?
4. We'd better set off early we encounter traffic on the motorway.
5. If it breeding programmes in zoos, some species would already be extinct.
6. He agreed to star in the movie he received a percentage of the profits.
7. What would happen to low-lying cities like London if the sea level rise dramatically?
8. Please let me know if you see my address book lying around somewhere.
9. Send your competition entry to the address below., you could win a brand new car.
10. It's important that students complete their coursework independently., fair assessment becomes impossible.



E. Rewrite the following sentences without the word *if*, beginning as shown.

1. If the wound becomes infected, you'll need to take antibiotics.
Should
2. If I were to be chosen as team captain, I'd do my best to get everyone training together.
Were
3. I might have got the scholarship if I'd applied for it.
Had
4. Unemployment would be reduced if the government were to reduce taxes on small businesses.
Were
5. Please give Jenny my regards if you happen to see her.
Should
6. We shouldn't have tried to fix the machinery ourselves because the repairs cost more in the end.
Had

F. Rewrite the following sentences in two different ways, beginning as shown.

1. We will only be willing to take part in the conference if our expenses are paid.
As
We won't be
2. I could have finished sooner with a little help from you.
I would have been
Had
3. If Tracy insists on eating junk food, she can't expect to have clear skin.
Unless
If Tracy
4. If you ever get the chance to come to Greece, you can stay with us.
Should
5. Would you take freelance work if it was offered to you?
Supposing
6. The driver's quick reaction prevented a tragedy.
If it
7. But

EXAM PRACTICE

- A. OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

BE HAPPY – LIVE LONGER!

Do happy people live longer? New evidence supports the idea that if you think positively, you are (1) likely to live to a good age than a pessimist coming from a similar social background. (2) is still not clear (3) happiness actually causes longevity. One possible explanation is that people probably (4) better care of themselves if they see life as a positive experience, and, of course, (5) people feel healthy, they are more likely to be happy. Scientists tracked a group of people who had (6) interviewed in 1975 about their attitudes to ageing. They found that if people viewed getting older as a positive experience, they lived, (7) average, seven and a half years (8) than those who were more pessimistic. Ways of reducing risk factors are well known: if you smoke or don't exercise, you cut your life expectancy (9) one to three years, and doctors can advise (10) patients to change their lifestyles accordingly. But what, if (11) , can unhappy people do about improving their attitude? Personality may not (12) something that we can change (13) if we want to, and scientists have (14) to answer the question of how we can make (15) happy.

- B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. As long as the number of enrolments doesn't go down, the college will stay open. **DECLINE**
The college would only have to close in the number of enrolments.
2. If the weather is bad, the match will take place indoors. **CASE**
The match will take place indoors weather.
3. You can only go out if you promise to be home by midnight. **WORD**
Unless you you will be home by midnight, you can't go out.
4. I could not have achieved so much if you hadn't supported me. **BEEN**
Had , I could not have achieved so much.
5. They stopped manufacturing the product because nobody was buying it any more. **DEMAND**
If there the product, they would still manufacture it.
6. If you complained about your room, you might be moved to a better one. **COMPLAINT**
Were you your room, you might be moved to a better one.
7. They won't offer her the position if she doesn't agree to take a language course. **CONDITION**
She will be offered the position to take a language course.
8. We forgot to fill up the tank so we didn't have enough petrol. **RUN**
We petrol if we had remembered to fill up the tank.

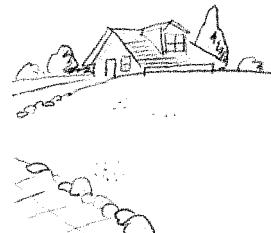
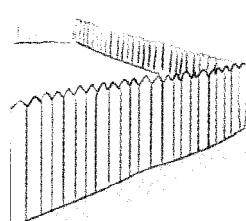
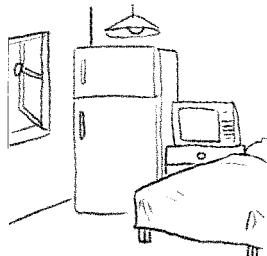
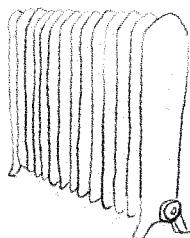
14 Homes and Lifestyle

Use your mini-companion when working on this unit.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Label the pictures with the correct words below.

fence • hedge • lawn • shutters • shed • radiator • corridor • bedsit

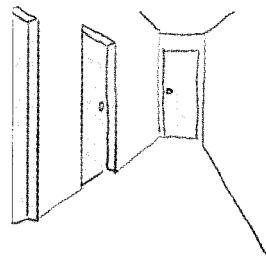
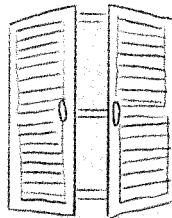
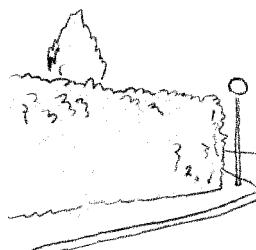
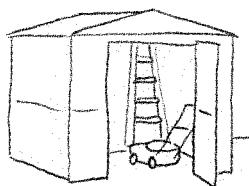


1.

2.

3.

4.



5.

6.

7.

8.

B. Use the words below to complete the compound nouns that match the definitions.

interior • double • community • detached • (real) estate • housing • commuter

1. **double** glazing = windows with two layers of glass
2. agent = person who helps others buy or sell property
3. house = dwelling not connected to another on either side
4. belt = the area around a large city from which people travel into the city to work
5. centre = building offering leisure and meeting facilities for local people
6. estate = large number of houses built at the same time in one area
7. design = the way a room or building looks inside

C. Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

1. If a house is cramped, a. it is up for sale.
2. If a building is demolished, b. it is in the country.
3. If a bank grants you a mortgage, c. it is in bad condition and inhabited by the poor.
4. If a flat is on the market, d. its use has been changed.
5. If an area is described as a slum, e. it is in a city.
6. If a house is in an urban area, f. it lends you money to buy a house.
7. If a building has been converted, g. it is knocked down.
8. If a house is in a rural area, h. it is not spacious.

D. Read the proposal and choose the best meaning for the words in colour.

WOODMINSTER TOWN CENTRE

Current Situation

An increase in housing development is causing a range of problems in the built-up areas of Woodminster. Twenty percent more vehicles now pass through the city centre, causing congestion in the high street. The exteriors of the buildings have been blackened by exhaust fumes and the 18th-century architecture for which Woodminster is famous is in a state of disrepair. As a result, the rental value of office and retail premises has fallen.

Recommendations

In general, Woodminster needs to invest more money in the local infrastructure. The traffic problem could be eased by the construction of a bypass, allowing drivers to reach the station without going through the town centre. In addition, the implementation of a one-way system on the roads surrounding the cathedral would allow buses to pass along the narrow streets more easily. Lastly, subsidies should be offered as an incentive for residents and landlords to renovate their properties and restore the town's character.

1. congestion = traffic problems / structural damage
2. exteriors = outer walls / foundations
3. state of disrepair = bad condition because of neglect / process of being restored
4. retail premises = buildings where people live / buildings used as shops
5. infrastructure = staff who work / system and structures
6. bypass = bridge / road going around the edge of a town
7. implementation = carrying out a plan / fee charged for the use of something
8. subsidy = useful equipment and materials / money paid by authorities as part of the cost
9. landlord = occupant of a property that is rented / owner of a property that is rented
10. renovate = repair and improve / move to a better location

A. WORD FORMATION

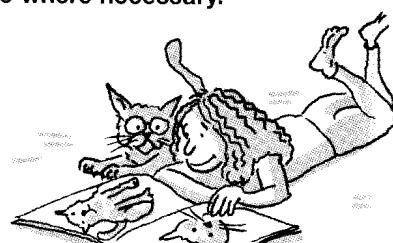
1. Complete the chart with nouns formed from the words below. One word can form two nouns.

adult	child	father	leader	mother	reader	sister
bore	citizen	free	man	neighbour	relation	sponsor
brother	companion	friend	martyr	owner	saint	star
champion	dictator	king	member	parent	scholar	

-dom	-ship	-hood
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Complete the sentences with words you formed in Exercise 1, using an article where necessary. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. She keeps a cat for
2. Jack has fond memories of his in the country.
3. She believes that is her destiny.
4. If she can get , she'll continue her training.
5. In those days, the country was not a republic but



3 WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

suburbs
outskirts
districts

border
boundary
barrier

outdoor
exterior
outward

household
housekeeping
housewarming

inherited
inhabited
inhabited

preferable
preferred
preferential

socialise
civilise
popularise

generally
greatly
totally

1. a. We are building ourselves a house on the of the city.
b. The mayor has promised to renovate some of the borough's poorer
c. Her family moved to a larger house in the
2. a. Greece shares a with Bulgaria.
b. A high fence runs along the between the two estates.
c. The police set up a to keep the demonstrators away from the courthouse.
3. a. The house has an swimming pool.
b. You will pay a penalty if you change the or return journey date of your flight.
c. The walls of the building need painting.
4. a. How much money do you think you spend on each month?
b. How many people does your consist of?
c. We had a party in our new flat last weekend.
5. a. He the house from his father.
b. The lack of parking people from shopping in the area.
c. The desert region is by animals that can survive in a hot, dry climate.
6. a. Julie found renting a home to paying a mortgage.
b. Nobody will be given treatment.
c. He to go camping rather than stay home and study.
7. a. Jenny likes to at weekends.
b. The TV programme managed to gardening as a hobby.
c. In the 19th century, Europeans went to Africa with the aim of the natives.
8. a. The building was destroyed in the fire.
b. Your donation to the children's home was appreciated.
c. Incomes in the north of the country are lower than in the south.

4 METAPHOR AND MEANING

Opportunity and success are often described using expressions connected with entering or moving inside a building. Failure and unsuccessful attempts can be expressed in terms of inability to enter a place.

to open the door to something (= to make something possible)

One door closes, another one opens. (= If one chance is lost, another opportunity may present itself.)

Replace the words in colour with the words or phrases below.

on the threshold of ● openings ● the key to ● opportunity knocks
get your foot in the door ● unlocked ● corridors of power ● came up against a brick wall

1. I'm sorry, we don't have any vacancies for interior designers in our firm at the moment.
2. Academic training is a good way to get a first job in a big company.
3. Researchers believe that they are very close to important discoveries about early cave dwellings.
.....
4. At first the experiments progressed well, but then we found ourselves unable to make progress.
5. A further qualification made possible many opportunities for me.
6. I'll keep attending auditions until a big chance comes up.
7. Her years as a ministerial secretary have given her an insight into the world of people in high official positions.
.....
8. Building parks is the way to achieve improved living conditions in the slums.

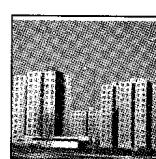
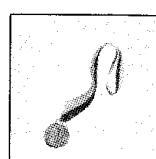
D. MULTIPLE MEANINGS Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings.

1. If we work flat out all weekend, we can finish all the decorating.
 2. He fixed the computer in five seconds flat.
 3. We charge a flat rate of £199 for selling your property.
 4. She spent three weeks flat on her back after the accident.
 5. After the chairman's introduction, the main speaker took the floor.
 6. His question floored me.
 7. The Greek team will wipe the floor with their opponents.
 8. The band was good but the singer sang in the wrong key.
 9. Press any key to stop the screen saver.
 10. A politician's image is a key factor at election time.
- a. lying down
 - b. highly significant
 - c. surprised and confused
 - d. began to speak to an audience
 - e. very quickly
 - f. defeat convincingly
 - 1.... g. very hard and as quickly as possible
 - h. set price
 - i. button
 - j. set of musical notes

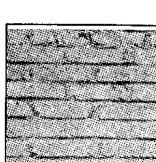
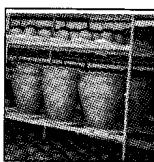
E. RELATED WORDS materials

Label the photographs. There are more words than you need.

tin • timber • steel • wood • lead • marble • concrete • brick • earthenware • bronze



1. a statue 2. a medal 3. a apartment block



4. pots 5. a wall 6. stainless cutlery

F. PREPOSITIONS Complete the text with the most suitable prepositions.

INTERIOR DESIGN

(1) At first glance, you may not think that your bank, (2) instance, has been specially designed. But (3) fact, the look of almost every room that is used by the public is the work of a professional designer. A design must take (4) account the activities which will take place in that space and create an atmosphere (5) tune with them. More than ever before we understand that our surroundings influence our behaviour (6) a great extent. For example, dim lighting and soft red colours may look attractive (7) home but would be (8) of place in an office where employees were expected to be alert (9) all times. Designs must also be (10) harmony with the architecture of the building and take into account the fact that users need to be (11) reach of conveniences like power points. Interior design, (12) other words, is one of the few professions requiring a combination (13) artistic talent and practical skills.

G. IN OTHER WORDS There are a number of expressions which are used to say how likely / unlikely it is that something will happen. Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings (a-d).

1. There is a distinct possibility that mortgage rates will rise. b....
2. There is little prospect of any improvement in living standards.
3. It's a foregone conclusion that the traffic situation will worsen.
4. It's conceivable that an extension would add value to the house.
5. The odds are that you will get a place in the hall of residence.
6. Property prices will inevitably rise.
7. Sharing a flat with strangers is out of the question.
8. I wouldn't bet on getting much privacy if you share a flat.
9. There's a slim chance that she'll inherit her uncle's estate.
10. They don't stand a chance of finding suitable premises in central London.

- | |
|--------------------------|
| a. It's bound to happen. |
| b. It's possible. |
| c. It's unlikely. |
| d. It's impossible. |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

THE KANGAROO GENERATION

The French have a name for them – *le generation kangarou* – because kangaroos carry their (1) around in a pouch for months after birth. They are the 20-somethings who have realised that living at (2) with their parents is (3) to struggling to be independent. A few years ago, anyone approaching 30 still (4) under the parental roof would have been an object of concern, if not ridicule. Today it is fast becoming the norm. To a certain (5) , this shift is due to economic pressures; (6) prices in Western Europe have soared, making mortgage payments out of (7) for most young people on starting salaries. And why pay a fortune to rent a (8) bedsit when relatively luxurious accommodation is available rent-free? These days, parents also seem more willing to continue to perform (9) chores like cooking, washing and ironing. Of course, some mums and dads were unprepared for the burden of (10) to go on so long. The previous generation, who often married young, (11) expected that once their children left for university, their years of freedom would begin. They are now finding that times have changed and there is a (12) possibility that their kids will want to stick around indefinitely.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. A offspring | B childhood | C relationship | D novices |
| 2. A house | B room | C home | D place |
| 3. A preferential | B preferable | C better | D key |
| 4. A resting | B holding | C keeping | D residing |
| 5. A instance | B extent | C amount | D prospect |
| 6. A property | B estate | C dwelling | D district |
| 7. A catch | B touch | C reach | D chance |
| 8. A fixed | B built up | C fight | D cramped |
| 9. A housewarming | B domestic | C normal | D interior |
| 10. A leadership | B parenthood | C sponsorship | D household |
| 11. A generally | B totally | C greatly | D flatly |
| 12. A foregone | B distinct | C little | D slim |

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

HOMES IN ANCIENT GREECE

The home was an important aspect of ancient Greek (1) and the term *oikos* not only meant *house* or *home*, but also a *man's domain*. However, home (2) brought with it considerable responsibility, including protection of the home's (3) A typical Athenian (4) in the 5th and 6th centuries BC consisted of a couple, any children they might have, plus several slaves. The men were often away for work or at war and, as a result, (5) was a constant worry. A typical (6) had high walls and a strong gate, and was constructed of mud bricks around a (7) courtyard, which might have been used for cooking, relaxing or (8) with friends and family members. The courtyard also gave women the chance to enjoy the open air in the (9) of their own home, as they did not (10) go out much.

CIVIL
OWN
INHABIT
HOUSE
SECURE
DWELL
CENTRE
SOCIAL
PRIVATE
NORMAL

A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

ANYONE FOR A CAR BOOT SALE?

Do you collect old or interesting objects? Would you like to pick up antiques at bargain prices? If (1) one of the best places to look is a car boot sale – you know, where anyone can sell anything they want (2) condition that it belongs to them, and as (3) as they can fit it into the boot of their car to take it to the sale location. Typical venues include fields, school playgrounds and parks – anywhere, (4) fact, where there's room to park cars and allow others to browse round at the goods (5) sale. If you happen to be planning a visit to a car boot sale, don't forget that you need time and determination to look through tons of junk (6) you find what you're looking for. You should arrive early, otherwise you don't stand a (7) of picking up anything unusual or valuable. Of course, the chances (8) that you won't come across any treasure, but it's fun looking nevertheless. I once met a lady who (9) picked up some pretty ornaments for a few pounds, only (10) discover later that they were worth thousands. (11) she known how valuable they were, she told me, she wouldn't (12) bothered haggling, although trying to negotiate a better price is also part of the experience, and items are only worth what people are willing to pay for (13) If you don't mind spending a morning searching (14) other people's junk in the hope of finding something you want to keep, (15) a car boot sale might be the perfect way for you to boost your collection.

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. The reason we bought the cottage was because it was so conveniently located. **LOCATION**
If it hadn't , we wouldn't have bought the cottage.
2. Will the match be cancelled if the weather gets worse? **WORSEN**
If the weather were off the match?
3. The village isn't so noisy now because they have built a new bypass. **WOULD**
If the new bypass be much noisier in the village now.
4. Jane said it would be a good idea if I went to the optician's for a check-up. **EXAMINED**
Jane urged by an optician.
5. Henry said there was no way he would sell the property. **SELLING**
Henry said that the question.
6. You mustn't forget to include the cost of moving in your calculations. **ACCOUNT**
Moving costs when making your calculations.
7. The way to succeed in show business is never to miss a chance for publicity. **KEY**
Never missing a chance for publicity success in show business.
8. Everyone is always impressed by the way Steven speaks Spanish. **COMMAND**
Steven has Spanish.
9. The modern factory doesn't look right in the countryside, surrounded by fields and hedges. **PLACE**
The modern factory in the countryside, surrounded by fields and hedges.
10. You stand a good chance of passing the exam. **ODDS**
The pass the exam.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "I think I can find the information on my own."
"..... any help, just call me."
 - a. In case of you need
 - b. Were you to need
 - c. Had you needed
 - d. Should you need
2. "I hear your sister's going to the Bahamas on vacation."
"Well, if Dan could take more time off work, too."
 - a. we are going
 - b. we will go
 - c. we'd be going
 - d. we were going
3. Susan will graduate in June she submits her dissertation on time.
 - a. unless
 - b. provided
 - c. otherwise
 - d. supposing
4. "I saw the new George Clooney movie last night."
"..... you were going, I'd have come along."
 - a. Had I known
 - b. Were I to know
 - c. Did I know
 - d. If I know
5. "Would you be willing to commute to the city every day?"
"If I a good enough job, I might."
 - a. have been offered
 - b. would offer
 - c. were to be offered
 - d. had offer
6. "I have an appointment to see Dr. Harrison."
"If a seat, I'll let him know you're here."
 - a. would you take
 - b. you are taking
 - c. should you take
 - d. you will take
7. My teacher promised to contact me out.
 - a. until the exam results come
 - b. the minute the exam results come
 - c. as soon the exam results will come
 - d. the moment the exam results will come
8. My father recommends at least one book a month.
 - a. us to read
 - b. of us reading
 - c. we read
 - d. we will read
9. "Did you hear that Dr. Wilson has written a crime novel?"
"..... yet?"
 - a. Did it publish
 - b. Has it been published
 - c. Was it being published
 - d. Has it published
10. The eyewitness said that she had seen the scene of the crime.
 - a. a tall man leaving
 - b. leaving a tall man
 - c. leave a tall man
 - d. a tall man to leave

VOCABULARY

11. Harry is building a cabin near the lake using cut from the local forest.
 - a. steel
 - b. tin
 - c. timber
 - d. stalks
12. Significant amounts of money are being invested in modernizing the country's
 - a. citizenship
 - b. infrastructure
 - c. implementation
 - d. vocation
13. The counselor tried to make John feel less about talking about his problems.
 - a. inhibited
 - b. innovative
 - c. infallible
 - d. inherited
14. It's a tradition in many areas for the groom to carry his bride over the of their new home.
 - a. threshold
 - b. premises
 - c. border
 - d. entrance
15. It's that the letter was lost in the mail.
 - a. juvenile
 - b. distinct
 - c. conventional
 - d. conceivable
16. The apartment would be far too for a family of four.
 - a. congested
 - b. cramped
 - c. concise
 - d. converted
17. If you are interested in applying for the vacancy, send in your
 - a. paperback
 - b. mortgage
 - c. résumé
 - d. endorsement
18. King's Real Estate to clients from all walks of life.
 - a. occupies
 - b. caters
 - c. associates
 - d. opts
19. The museum is being fully in time for the city's anniversary celebrations.
 - a. renovated
 - b. nurtured
 - c. resided
 - d. inhabited
20. The speaker was by a series of accusations by a member of the audience.
 - a. wiped
 - b. drifted
 - c. doubted
 - d. floored

D. **CLOZE** Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

There is no such thing as a completely earthquake-proof structure, but engineers work to make buildings, roads and bridges earthquake resistant, particularly in regions where earthquakes are common. In (1) of a major quake, a building needs to remain stable long enough so that the occupants stand a (2) of getting out safely. Building codes also require that structures (3) designed or renovated to ensure that falling pieces from the (4) do not pose a danger to people nearby.

The way buildings are constructed is the (5) factor. Blocks or bricks are the most dangerous – (6). There is an earthquake, the building is (7) to sideways forces which cause the bricks to separate from one another. If a wall collapses, (8) the roof, whose weight is supported only (9) the walls, will fall in, and the whole house will (10) go down like a house of cards. In simple terms, the solution (11) to tie the walls, roof, floor and foundations together so that the structure is (12) to survive shaking. (13) reinforced with steel is (14) considered the best material for earthquake-resistant buildings.

Scientists and engineers learn how (15) to do this by monitoring how existing structures behave (16) an earthquake occurs. There are instruments installed in buildings throughout earthquake-prone areas of the US and (17) provide valuable data on how exactly any (18) building behaves. Scientists can then (19) this knowledge to designing safer buildings. This knowledge is time-consuming and expensive to (20), but essential.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. time | c. fact |
| b. case | d. tune |
| 2. a. possibility | c. chance |
| b. hope | d. prospect |
| 3. a. have | c. be |
| b. always | d. that |
| 4. a. exterior | c. outskirts |
| b. disrepair | d. barriers |
| 5. a. key | c. first |
| b. flat | d. preferential |
| 6. a. although | c. happen |
| b. if | d. unless |
| 7. a. shaken | c. subject |
| b. bound | d. imposed |
| 8. a. then | c. before |
| b. so | d. too |
| 9. a. in | c. onto |
| b. by | d. at |
| 10. a. implicitly | c. inevitably |
| b. doubtfully | d. terribly |
| 11. a. will | c. comes |
| b. is | d. due |
| 12. a. able | c. conceivable |
| b. known | d. strong |
| 13. a. Threshold | c. Concrete |
| b. Walls | d. Building |
| 14. a. generally | c. utterly |
| b. totally | d. successfully |
| 15. a. often | c. best |
| b. they | d. well |
| 16. a. when | c. during |
| b. should | d. because |
| 17. a. here | c. who |
| b. these | d. there |
| 18. a. other | c. more |
| b. of | d. given |
| 19. a. apply | c. broaden |
| b. cover | d. enact |
| 20. a. enrich | c. account |
| b. acquire | d. inquire |

I wish, Unreal Past

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. I **wish** / **hope** I could come to the cinema with you tonight.
2. I wish that **you would pay** / **you will pay** more attention in class.
3. Victoria wishes she **is taking** / **was taking** part in tonight's ballet show.
4. If only Jeremy **has let us** / **had let us** know he'd be late.
5. Claire would rather we **had spent** / **would spend** the money on something more practical.
6. We would prefer it if you **didn't** / **don't** smoke in front of the children.
7. It's high time something **was done** / **is done** about the poor state of the nation's roads.
8. What's the matter with Jack? He looks as if he **is** / **were** about to explode.
9. The skiing trip sounds like fun – I wish I **could** / **would** come with you.
10. I'd sooner you **won't** / **didn't** chew gum in class.
11. I would have preferred **not to have spent** / **I didn't spend** the evening at a football match.
12. Paul would rather buy his own copy of the book **to** / **than** borrow mine.
13. I wish **to see** / **I could see** the manager so could you inform him, please?

B. Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. a. I wish you had written down her phone number | but of course you didn't. |
| b. I hope you wrote down her phone number | otherwise we won't be able to contact her. |
| 2. a. Sue wishes she were more assertive | during yesterday's meeting. |
| b. Sue wishes she had been more assertive | but it's not in her character. |
| 3. a. If only Beth could visit us this Christmas | but unfortunately she has to work. |
| b. If only Beth would visit us this Christmas | instead of insisting on celebrating alone. |
| 4. a. I'd rather not watch that film | as I don't like the lead actor. |
| b. I'd rather you didn't watch that film | as it's not suitable for your age group. |
| 5. a. It's time to start the rehearsal | because we always get going at six. |
| b. It's high time you started rehearsals | or you won't be ready on the night. |
| 6. a. I wish you wouldn't smoke | but I know how hard it is to quit. |
| b. I wish you didn't smoke | in front of the children. |
| 7. a. I'd rather go to Germany in the summer | as it must be cold there in the winter. |
| b. I'd rather have gone to Germany in the summer | but my wife persuaded me we'd have more fun in Spain. |

Score: / 20

RULES

Past verb forms are sometimes used to refer to the present and future when talking about hypothetical, imaginary or unlikely situations. This special use of the past tenses – as we saw with the second conditional (Unit 13) – is sometimes referred to as the **unreal past**. We can use it to express wishes, desires, regrets, opinions or attitudes.

If I **became** a film star, I'd move to Hollywood. (*hypothetical – dreaming of unreal / imaginary future*)

We can also use Past Perfect with certain expressions to refer to something unreal in the past.

If you **had asked** me, I would have given you some money. (*but you didn't*)

WISH

wish / If only + Past Simple / Past Continuous

dissatisfaction with the present situation, including longings, hopes, dreams (similar to second conditional)

I wish I **had** more time for relaxation.

If only I **were** as bright as Sue.

If only I **were going** with you to London.

wish / If only + could

talking about present / future ability or possibility

She wishes she **could take** a course.

If only I **could see** her one more time.

wish / If only + would

(change of subject)

complaint or desire to change the present; often refers to another person's unwillingness to do something

I wish **you wouldn't play** the radio so loud.

wish / If only + Past Perfect / modal perfect

regret about a past situation that cannot be changed

I wish I **had known** he was in hospital. (*implies: If I had known, I would have visited him.*)

similar to third conditional; the result is not always stated but can be understood

I wish we **hadn't been** so unkind to Jane.

If only I'd **studied** harder when I was young.

I wish we **could have stayed** longer.
(*we couldn't*)

Notes

1. *If only* is equivalent to *I wish* but is often used for emphasis or to express a strong desire or regret.
2. There is a subtle difference between *I wish + would* and *I wish + past tense*. Compare:
I wish you **wouldn't work** at weekends. (*desire for change / complaint – implies: Why don't you stop doing this?*)
I wish you **didn't work** at weekends. (*stating a fact – It's a pity you work at weekends. If you didn't, we could ...*)
3. Wish can also be used in the following ways:
 - *wish + infinitive* means *want* and is used in formal English
I **wish to complain** about the poor service at the hotel.
 - in expressions of good wishes
We would like to **wish you luck** in your new career.
4. We can use *hope* to express wishes about things that are likely to happen or real events in the present / past.
I **hope it doesn't rain** while we're in Italy. (*not: I wish it wouldn't rain ... X*)
I **hope you enjoyed** your meal. (= You probably enjoyed your meal. Compare: I **wish you had enjoyed** your meal. = I know you didn't.)

WOULD RATHER / SOONER; WOULD PREFER

Reference to Present / Future

• **would rather / sooner + bare infinitive** (one subject)

I **would rather go** abroad. (*what I want to do*)

She'd **sooner postpone** the meeting than be late.

• **would rather / sooner + subject + past tense** (change of subject)

I'd **rather you drove** tonight. (*what I want you to do*)

They'd **sooner we didn't bring** the children.

• **would prefer + to + bare infinitive** (one subject)

I'd **prefer not to wait** any longer.

• **would prefer it if + subject + past tense** (change of subject)

Sue **would prefer it if** you didn't phone.

Reference to Past

I **would rather have gone** abroad. (*what I wanted to do but didn't*)

She'd **sooner have postponed** the meeting.

I'd **rather you had driven** that night. (*what I wanted you to do*)

They'd **sooner we hadn't brought** the children.

I **would have preferred not to have waited** any longer.

Sue **would have preferred it if you hadn't phoned**.

Notes

- *Would sooner* is similar in meaning to *would rather*, but a little stronger. *Would sooner* is sometimes used to indicate rejection of an idea or suggestion.
Will you marry Pete? No, **I'd sooner** remain single all my life!
- When we show preference for one thing over another, we use **would rather + bare infinitive ... than + bare infinitive**
I would rather eat out than eat at home.

IT'S TIME; AS IF / THOUGH; IMAGINE

• It's time + infinitive (one subject)	when the time has come to do something	It's time to buy a new car.
• It's time + for + pronoun + infinitive (one subject)	to say something is urgent / important	It's time for us to leave.
• It's time / high time / about time + subject + Past Simple	to express criticism	It's time you bought a new car. It's high time we left. It's about time you learned some decent manners!
• as if / as though + past tense + subject + verb	often used to compare; when something appears to be the case but is not	John behaves as though he owned the place. (but he doesn't) When the 10-hour flight finally ended, she felt as though she had run a marathon. I felt as if I were dying .
• Imagine (that) + present / past / past perfect	means <i>what if</i> and refers to unreal or hypothetical situations, similar to <i>suppose / supposing</i> (see Unit 13)	Imagine you won a fortune, what would you do?

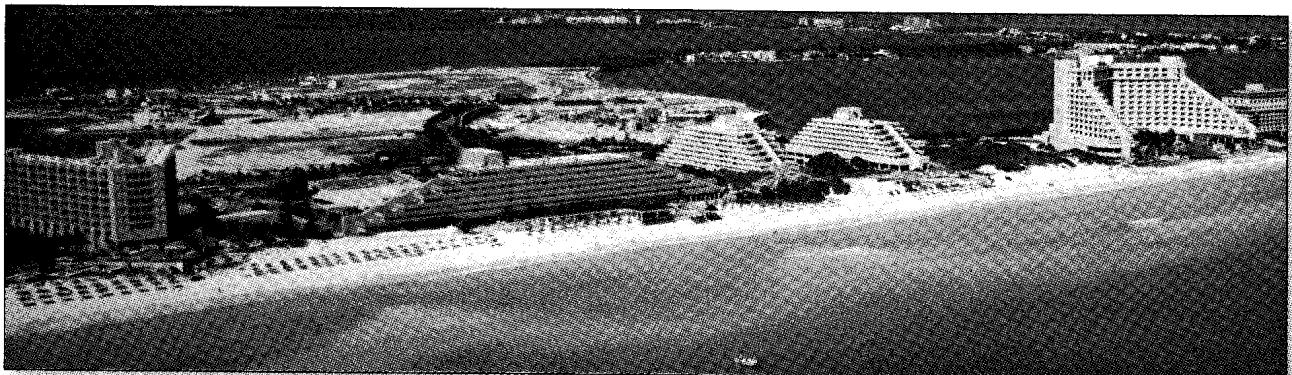
Notes

- In an unreal situation, *were* can be used instead of *was*. Imagine your dad *were* Prime Minister!
- If the situation is possible or real, normal tenses are used.
Compare: You're behaving as if you **have** something to hide. (*real: you may have*)
You're behaving as if you **had** something to hide. (*unreal: less likely / you don't have*)

PRACTICE

A. Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets, positive or negative. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. I wish my best friend (make) it to my party last night but she was ill.
2. If only my flat (look out) over the sea ... then it would be perfect.
3. Many women of my mother's generation wish they (give up) their careers when they had children.
4. Jonathan wishes Bill (get) so aggressive whenever they play squash.
5. If only the old stadium (knock down). I can't imagine the city without it.
6. When things get tough, I often wish I (just pack) my bags and go on holiday.
7. I wish the weather (brighten up). It's really getting me down.
8. The travel agent said that we would probably end up wishing that we (book) a fortnight because the resort is so beautiful.



B. Complete the sentences using the correct word or phrase below. Use each word or phrase only once.

hope ● high time ● as though ● would prefer ● time for ● wish ● would rather ● wish to

1. Our manager we had taken less time off in the summer.
 2. The sky looked someone had painted a huge orange stripe across it.
 3. I it doesn't rain tonight – we want to have a barbecue.
 4. It's the show to be broadcast.
 5. I you could have seen the look on his face when I told him what I think of him.
 6. Many voters feel it's the government did something about the health service.
 7. I it if you didn't watch me while I'm working.
 8. Should you withdraw from the course, please notify us in writing.

C. Complete the text using the most suitable tense of one of the following verbs, positive or negative. One verb can be used twice.

stay ● throw ● go through ● bring ● go ● give up ● emigrate ● be ● sprain

IF ONLY I COULD STAY HOME

I wish I (1) on holiday next week! I know it sounds strange but it causes so much trouble that sometimes I feel I'd rather (2) home. The hassle starts when we first utter the words, "So where are we going this year?" and doesn't end until you're home, faced with enough washing to fill the machine 10 times over and wishing you (3) away. Take packing, for example. You have to take twice as much as you need to avoid getting to the hotel and thinking, "I wish I (4) my blue dress instead." So you end up looking as if you (5) when in reality you were heading off for seven days half-board in Minorca.

I often wish I (6) just a few items in a bag and make do with those, but I know I'm not brave enough. I'd sooner (7) a wrist trying to lug my suitcase off the baggage reclaim than risk being seen with shoes that clash with my handbag! Maybe it's time I (8) holidays altogether. I'd save a fortune and reduce my summer stress levels no end. If only I (9) strong enough to resist the glossy brochures that appear every year in the dark days of January. But even if I tried, I know I'd suffer at the sight of a colleagues' holiday snaps and wish that I (10) the whole procedure as usual.



D. Choose the correct answers.

1. Ryan annoyed everyone by behaving the team captain.
a. though he is b. if only he were c. supposing that d. as if he were
 2. Max would have preferred had been put off.
a. if the meeting b. it if the meeting c. the meeting d. to have the meeting
 3. "I'd love to see Madonna live, wouldn't you?" "Yeah. I wish she at a venue near us."
a. was performing b. would have performed c. is performing d. had to perform
 4. "I got a letter from Matt yesterday." "Well, it's in touch."
a. about time he got b. time for him to c. high time he would get d. time he was getting
 5. "Did you go away at the weekend like you planned?" "..... . I stayed home and was bored to death."
a. I wish to b. I wish I would c. I wish I had d. I wish I did
 6. If only Jamie so easily.
a. wouldn't quit b. wasn't quitting c. doesn't quit d. couldn't quit
 7. I sleep than miss my French class.
a. had soon given up b. wish I would c. prefer giving up d. would rather give up

8. Tim had told me the truth that night.
 - a. If only that
 - b. I wish
 - c. As if
 - d. It's about time
9. I wish I so early tomorrow. I could really do with some extra sleep.
 - a. wouldn't get up
 - b. don't need to get up
 - c. didn't have to get up
 - d. hadn't got up
10. Walk to work? I'd , thanks very much!
 - a. sooner drive
 - b. prefer driving
 - c. prefer it to drive
 - d. rather to drive

E. Complete each sentence with one suitable word.

1. It's time Aunt Jenny realised she's not a kid anymore.
2. I prefer it if you could get me the book in hardback.
3. I really wish I kept more photos from my childhood.
4. Sam as if he were about to cry.
5. I you didn't mind staying in to keep me company tonight.
6. I wish my brother stop lazing around and give me a hand sometimes.
7. If your grandmother could have seen you today. She would have been so proud.
8. you had to make a speech in public. You'd be nervous, wouldn't you?
9. I'd rather report this matter to the police.
10. I really miss Sarah. I wish she be here with us.



TEXT FEATURES

A. SPELLING: words with Greek origin (See Spelling Appendix, page 219.)

Correct the spelling in the following sentences. There may be more than one mistake in a sentence.

1. The gynacologist gave her an anasthetic. *x*
2. I researched my autobiografy by going to the city arkives. *x*
3. Being strict about higene can help prevent infections. *x*
4. You need a good voice and a sense of rythm to join the choir. *x*
5. Airobic exercise will improve your phisical condition. *x*
6. Most people still have a lot of sympathy for the monarc. *x*
7. She's not only clinical but hypocritical as well. *x*
8. His high kolesterol levels don't help his cronic heart problem. *x*

B. PUNCTUATION: brackets and inverted commas (See Punctuation Appendix, page 221.)

Read the following extract from an article and add punctuation where necessary.

I recently read about a new craze that sounds insane. One expert enthusiast, Frenchman David Belle, calls it Le Parkour the obstacle course, but basically what he does is jump from building to building across rooftops and balconies, doing acrobatic tricks on the way for example, handstands and spins. In Britain it has been called doing the roof and apparently anybody can do it – all you need is running shoes. In the interview I read, a fan called it using the environment to express movement ... like a dance. Personally I think they're crazy but it's also worrying because teenagers, inspired by movies like Spider-Man, are likely to consider this a cool activity, and could easily be seriously injured in an attempt to copy the experts.

C. COHESION AND COHERENCE

Auxiliary verbs are used to avoid repetition of a verb.

Most lawyers work incredibly hard. Despite the public perception that they have excessively long holidays, most teachers **do** too. (**do** refers back to work incredibly hard)

Slaves in ancient Greece were not allowed to vote. Nor **were** women. (**were** refers back to allowed to vote)

Do so can be used to avoid repeating a verb + object, when the verb describes an action.

Full-time students can apply for a loan to cover living expenses. In order to **do so**, they must have proof of permanent residence.

So can be used on its own with certain verbs.

Freetown will probably win the cup. Their supporters certainly hope **so**.

Such + a / an + noun can be used to mean *like this*.

The government plans to raise the retirement age. **Such a move** is bound to anger many people. (= a move *like this*)

1. Complete the sentences below with one or two words, using the reference techniques above.

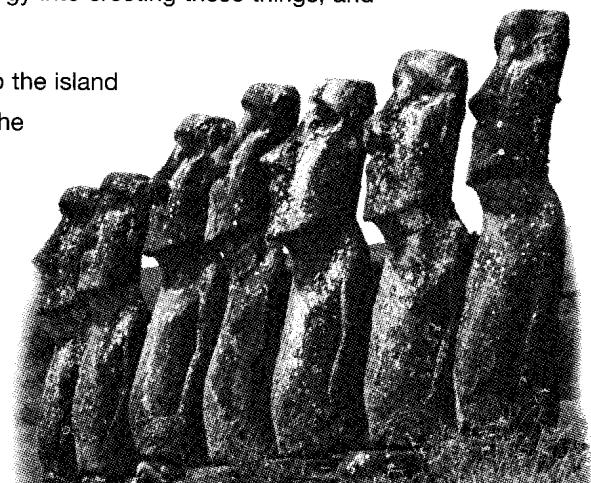
1. It is not advisable to take antibiotics without a prescription, but many people on a regular basis.
2. Mr Thomson told the student to check her spelling and she replied that she already
3. Anyone who attempts to climb Mt Everest at their own risk.
4. One recommendation is to shorten the working day. a change would be popular with staff, but costly for the company.
5. Over time, the company developed smaller, more complex products. Their competitors too.
6. Jim Kent is an amazing actor. talent should not be wasted on second-rate films like this.

2. Read the article and choose the best explanation for the words in bold.

The Mysteries of Easter Island

Easter Island has to be one of the most mysterious places on earth, and a land full of surprises. One is its great beaches and fantastic waves if you want to go surfing. Of course, very few of the island's visitors actually (1) **do so**, for the main attraction on the island is its unique statues. At various sites around the island, huge statues of human heads stare out to sea or across the volcanic landscape. Not surprisingly, (2) **such a sight** gets you thinking: Why did the people here put so much energy into erecting these things, and what's more, how did they manage (3) **it**?

Historians have documented how Polynesian settlers came to the island around 400 AD and gradually established agriculture across the island. In (4) **doing so**, however, they removed much of the natural forest, causing soil erosion. In addition, a lot of wood was required for the statues, which are believed to represent the chiefs of this tribal society. Skilled craftsmen carved the statues, then transported them to their positions, though it remains a mystery how they (5) **did so**. However they were moved, many trees had to be cut down. (6) **Such activities** eventually led to ecological disaster.



- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. do so | 4. doing so |
| a. visit the statues | a. crossing the ocean |
| b. go surfing | b. establishing agriculture |
| 2. such a sight | 5. did so |
| a. the large human heads | a. carved the statues |
| b. the volcanoes | b. transported the statues |
| 3. it | 6. such activities |
| a. to erect the statues | a. cutting down trees and moving them |
| b. to travel around the island | b. electing chiefs and carving statues |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Adrian doesn't like living so far from the train station. **REACH**
Adrian wishes the train station.
2. The manager wants Debbie to be put in charge of this department. **TOOK**
The manager would prefer this department.
3. It would have been better to reserve a room at a hotel than a guesthouse. **RESERVATION**
I'd at a hotel than a guesthouse.
4. Jim only got into debt because he was given a credit card. **ISSUED**
If Jim a credit card, he couldn't have got into debt.
5. What a shame they demolished the building! **BEEN**
If only down!
6. This problem has to be solved immediately. **SOLUTION**
It's high this problem.
7. Helen's behaviour at the meeting resembled that of a child. **THOUGH**
At the meeting, Helen was child.
8. The editor prefers to be asked before articles are changed in any way. **CHANGES**
The editor would rather staff articles without asking him.

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

GETTING ENOUGH EXERCISE

While most people (1) to have a toned healthy body, not everyone enjoys (2) out at the gym. In fact, many of us (3) sooner avoid any kind of vigorous exercise altogether, and may not even feel it is necessary. Over the years, various health experts have assured us that keeping (4) simply requires a total of 30 minutes of moderate activity most days of the week. Many people believe that a walk to the shops or some light housework constitutes moderate activity, but it turns (5) this may not be the case.

According to the British Association of Sport and Exercise, it is high (6) more specific advice (7) given about what actually constitutes moderate activity. Housework, it seems, does not fall into this category. Anyone who devotes a great deal of time every day to dusting and vacuuming no doubt wishes that it (8) , but research has shown that women who spend over eight hours a day (9) housework actually tend to be slightly more overweight than (10) who do none whatsoever. The association, therefore, would prefer (11) if the public were instructed as to exactly what (12) of physical activity to aim for.

But setting such guidelines is not easy (13) individual fitness levels and exercise requirements vary. For instance, while walking at a fast pace (14) generally beneficial for women, it may not be physically challenging enough for men. For this reason, the association would rather this section of the population took up jogging (15) relied on walking as a form of exercise.

10 Science and Technology

Use your mini-companion when working on this unit.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Match the examples to each category below.

hardware • substances • appliances • living organisms
machinery • working with computer programs • laboratory equipment

- vacuum cleaner, microwave oven, kettle **appliances**
- keyboard, hard disk, modem
- solid, liquid, fluid, gas
- bacteria, virus, microbe
- install, download, upgrade
- microscope, test tube, sterilizer
- motor, boiler, generator

B. WHAT ARE THEY TALKING ABOUT? Match each speaker to the correct word below.

surveillance • virtual reality • compound • emission • hacking • patent • cyberspace

1.  Citizens are worried that the security cameras will mean a loss of privacy.

2.  A typical example, carbon dioxide, is composed of two atoms of oxygen and one atom of carbon.

3.  A 14-year-old boy managed to access the bank's central records.

4.  The power station releases tons of poisonous gases into the atmosphere.

5.  As the first person to register the device, only he has the legal right to manufacture it.

6.  You wear a headset with special glasses that give you the impression that you are actually inside the game.

7.  Where exactly do emails go when you press "send"?

C. Read the encyclopaedia entry and fill in the blanks. Make any necessary changes.

Biotechnology

Biotechnology is a biological science that makes use of bacteria, plant and animal cells for industrial and technological purposes for the benefit of humans. For example, in order to make farm animals grow faster, scientists genetically modify microbes to produce artificial growth hormones which are then fed to the animals. Vaccines against human diseases like Hepatitis B have been genetically engineered in the laboratory. Genetic engineers can also change genetic codes. In humans, replacing a missing or defective gene could be a way to treat some diseases. The most extreme example of genetic engineering is producing a clone (an identical copy of a living creature). These procedures involve tampering with nature and there is great public concern about the ethics and safety of genetic engineering.

Which word means:

- the smallest part of an animal or plant that can function independently
- alter
- synthetic
- natural substance produced by the body that controls bodily processes
- substance put into the body to cause immunity to a disease
- faulty
- method of doing something
- (wrongly) change or interfere with something
- principles of right or wrong

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. COLLOCATIONS

The verbs below are commonly used when talking about science and technology.

Cross out the noun in each line which is not normally used with the verb given.

1. make	a breakthrough	an experiment	an attempt	a discovery
2. do	research	harm	an experiment	a change
3. develop	a method	software	a theory	a mistake
4. raise	awareness	access	expectations	money
5. get	improvements	results	an idea	permission
6. take	risks	precautions	control	encouragement
7. reach	the top	a conclusion	an arrangement	a compromise

B. PHRASAL VERBS out

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs. What does each phrasal verb mean?

filter • give • try • phase • take • figure • single • sort

1. The telecommunications company plans to out use of all non-digital lines.
2. I can't out how to install this software.
3. I've out a year's subscription to *Science Monthly* magazine.
4. A light bulb out a small amount of heat as well as light.
5. This paperwork is in a mess – we'll have to it out.
6. Mrs Jones out my project as one of the best and showed it to the whole school.
7. George couldn't wait to get home and out his new laptop.
8. New technology enables factories to out harmful substances from their emissions.

C. RELATED WORDS looking seeing

Complete the following texts using the correct form of the verbs given.

1 THE NIGHT SKY

glimpse • make out • gaze • witness

It can be both educational and relaxing to (1) at the stars. On clear nights it is possible to (2) distant planets or briefly (3) a shooting star. On special occasions you may be lucky enough to (4) an astronomical phenomenon like an eclipse of the moon.



2 THE DISCOVERY OF PENICILLIN

observe • notice • glance • oversee

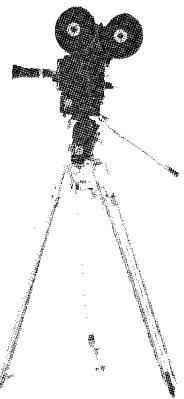
In 1928, Alexander Fleming, a top doctor and researcher, was cleaning out some dishes he had used for growing bacteria. He (1) at each before washing it and in one dish he suddenly (2) something strange. A ring of mould had grown, killing off the bacteria. He went on to perform a number of experiments to (3) the effects of the mould on other bacteria. But it was not until 1940 that a team of scientists, (4) by Howard Florey and Ernst Chain, managed to produce enough penicillin to be used in clinical tests.



3 THE FIRST MOVIE

stare • peer • envisage • view

1893 saw the appearance of what were probably the first motion pictures. At a trade fair in America, crowds queued up to (1) 90-second-long black and white films. As they were unenlarged, each individual had to (2) through a hole in a box to see the moving pictures. When the first public screening of a movie took place in 1895 in Paris, the audience (3) at the screen in wonder. Back then, nobody could (4) the extent to which the "movies" would become part of our lives.



D. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

compromise
comprise
compile

1. a. It took hours of negotiation before the two sides agreed to
b. Combinations of four proteins the genetic code of each gene.
c. The researchers all the statistics they had gathered.

transplant
transfer
transform

2. a. Mobile phones have the way people communicate.
b. Computer networks allow information to be easily from one location to another.
c. The doctors a kidney and the operation was successful.

discover
invent
explore

3. a. Scientists claim to have bacteria on Mars.
b. Terry says he's a new robotic device and he's already applied for the patent.
c. We spent our first day in Berlin the city's museums and galleries.

evolution
progress
advance

4. a. The new vaccine is a major in the fight against the disease.
b. The new fossil finds may tell us about human
c. There has been so much in medical treatments but we still can't cure the common cold.

common
typical
ordinary

5. a. It's of John not to read the instruction manual.
b. Cybercrime is becoming more as more business is done on the Internet.
c. A cloned animal looks perfectly

install
insert
inject

6. a. You have to your key card to open the door.
b. The experiment involves the drug into mice to check for side effects.
c. We a burglar alarm in our house.

E. WORD FORMATION

Nouns for people are often formed with the suffixes **-or**, **-ian**, **-er** or **-ist**.

1. Complete the chart by putting the following words under the correct headings.

act	campaign	drama	hack	operate	supervise
active	comedy	economy	history	own	survive
animate	competition	electric	invent	politics	technical
art	consume	environment	law	research	translate
beauty	create	explore	magic	science	vegetable
biology	curate	genetics	manufacture	special	vocal

-or

actor.....

-ian

.....

-er

.....

-ist

.....

2. Answer the following questions using the nouns you formed in Exercise 1. There may be more than one possible answer.

Which people ...

1. are involved in entertainment / the arts?
2. fight to change others' opinions?
3. might work in an office?

Other suffixes used to form words for people are **-al**, **-ant**, **-ive**, **-ic**, **-ent**, **-person**.

3. Answer the following questions using the words in colour.

What do you call somebody who ...

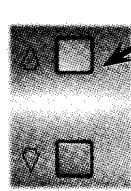
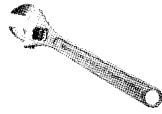
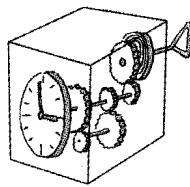
1. commits a crime? **criminal**.....
2. keeps accounts?
3. represents somebody?
4. fixes machines?
5. speaks on behalf of a group?
6. depends on somebody financially?
7. tries to detect the truth?
8. chairs a meeting?

F. METAPHOR AND MEANING

We often use words connected with machines and tools to talk about how we work and speak.

1. Label these tools and machine parts with the following words.

hammer ● **button** ● **screw** ● **wheel** ● **clockwork** ● **spanner** ● **gear**



1.

2.

3.

4.



5.

6.

7.

2. Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Things here are running like clockwork | a. as it's important they realise we mean business. |
| 2. We'll have to hammer the message home | b. they announced they were pulling out of the talks. |
| 3. The research team will have to get into gear if | c. mathematical knowledge and a good memory. |
| 4. We will tighten the screws on lawbreakers | d. thanks to your organisational skills. |
| 5. They threw a spanner in the works when | e. by introducing high-tech surveillance. |
| 6. In my business, the tools of the trade include | f. they want to make a breakthrough. |

3. Now write the expressions in Exercise 2 next to the correct meanings below.

1. strongly emphasise
2. prevent something from happening as planned
3. start working effectively
4. essential skills
5. clamp down on
6. go smoothly

G. MULTIPLE MEANINGS monitor screen web

Complete the sentences using the correct form of one of the words above.

1. He instructed his secretary to **screen** his calls.
2. A spider is never far away from its
3. Adding between the desks would allow for some privacy.
4. The hardware package includes a 17-inch
5. Simon deceived his wife with a of lies.
6. Women over 50 are regularly for breast cancer.
7. Jenny was elected as library this term.
8. He sold the rights to his novel for a million dollars.
9. The government says it is the situation before deciding on a course of action.
10. He's busy designing his own page.

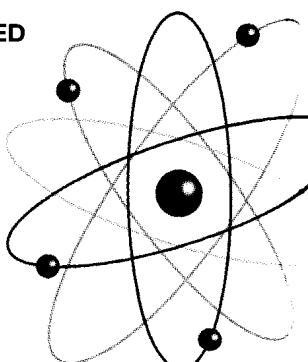
H. IN OTHER WORDS Match each formal sentence with its informal paraphrase.

1. The batteries occasionally need recharging.
 - a. You only have to recharge them once in a while.
 - b. You must recharge them over and over again.
2. Inspections are held on a regular basis.
 - a. They have inspections at set times.
 - b. They do inspections in time.
3. Vaccines will shortly be available.
 - a. There's time to spare before the vaccines come.
 - b. It's just a matter of time until the vaccines are here.
4. The problem is invariably a virus.
 - a. Just this once a virus was the problem.
 - b. It's nearly always the case that a virus is to blame.
5. We have made a provisional arrangement.
 - a. The arrangement is just for the time being.
 - b. We can take our time.
6. Appliances have a tendency to malfunction.
 - a. Appliances break down one at a time.
 - b. It's pretty common for appliances to break.
7. Such experiments are increasingly common.
 - a. They are done more and more often.
 - b. They are becoming less important.
8. Cleaner fuels are being gradually introduced.
 - a. The change is happening bit by bit.
 - b. The introduction is coming in the nick of time.

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. They have to test all donated blood to check for infectious diseases. **SCREENED**
All donated blood infectious diseases.
2. The festival was so well organised that everything went smoothly. **CLOCKWORK**
Everything at the festival thanks to the excellent organisation.
3. Both parties will have to accept less than they are demanding on this issue. **REACH**
The two sides on this issue.
4. It is impossible to give credit for this discovery to only one person. **SINGLED**
No one can be wholly responsible for this discovery.
5. Jack would make an excuse – that's just like him. **TYPICAL**
It make an excuse.
6. An atom consists of smaller particles called protons, neutrons and electrons. **COMPRISED**
An atom smaller particles called protons, neutrons and electrons.



B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.**GENETIC ENGINEERING**

Scientists have always tried to make things better, stronger and faster. In the previous two centuries the emphasis was on machines: from household (1) to reusable spacecraft. However, the (2) in this century cannot be (3) without a microscope as genetic engineering changes the world from within. From disease-resistant crops to pigs with low-fat meat, researchers have (4) numerous breakthroughs by (5) the genetic make-up of animals and plants. But who could have imagined that goats would be able to produce spider silk? Spider silk is an amazing (6) – it is five times stronger than steel, yet light enough to make protective clothing. Unfortunately, spiders cannot be farmed because they have a (7) to eat each other! However, genetic engineers have finally (8) how to produce the protein (9) on a large scale by creating *transgenic goats*. The gene for producing the silk protein was inserted into goat embryos and when these reach (10) , they make the protein in their milk. Once extracted from the milk, the protein is made into a fibre almost identical to the silk of a spider's (11) Innovations like this are incredible and seem likely to become increasingly common, but they (12) serious issues about the right of human beings to tamper with the DNA of animals in this way.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A buttons | B compounds | C appliances | D software |
| 2. A advance | B progress | C machinery | D research |
| 3. A gazed | B watched | C stared | D viewed |
| 4. A taken | B made | C done | D come |
| 5. A modifying | B tampering | C transferring | D creating |
| 6. A emission | B patent | C substance | D liquid |
| 7. A precaution | B tendency | C procedure | D conclusion |
| 8. A phased out | B taken out | C filtered out | D figured out |
| 9. A shortly | B artificially | C provisionally | D ordinarily |
| 10. A immaturity | B age | C adulthood | D top |
| 11. A web | B wheel | C line | D cell |
| 12. A develop | B raise | C sort out | D give out |

C. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.**BIG BROTHER IS WATCHING YOU**

Technology has changed the way we live and particularly how we communicate. But beware – every phone call you make and every site on the Internet you visit can be recorded, and this data can be made available to the authorities upon request. A (1) new law will give government departments in Britain the right to access these records without our (2) However, civil liberties (3) are fighting to stop this law, calling it an invasion of (4) But the truth is that all of us are under almost constant (5) anyway. It is a well-known fact that hidden cameras (6) in shops and on street corners record our (7) At airports today, security has been (8) and nearly all passengers are screened. Pictures and data from these sources can be accessed by the police looking out for (9) , particularly terrorists.

The authorities claim that in order to live in a safer society, we must (10) accept some limits to our freedom. How far can they be allowed to take away an individual's right to lead his life in private?

CONTROVERSY**PERMIT****CAMPAIGN****PRIVATE****SURVEY****INSTALL****MOVE****TIGHT****CRIME****OCCASION**

A. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. The inscription on the back of the watch is so old it's hard to out the date.
I really think that local residents should a stand against the council's plans to demolish that historic building.
The examiners will give candidates credit if they an attempt to illustrate their work.
2. The firefighters got the last resident out of the house just in the nick of
To my mind, it's only a matter of before genetic solutions are found for most major diseases.
With the aid of this CD, you'll pick up basic conversational French in no
3. There is a huge risk of the water supply being contaminated unless precautions are
Ruby would be the first to admit that she has unnecessary risks in her life.
I assume you've into account the temperature when calculating the results of the experiment.
4. At first I thought it was a rare species but it turned out to be a sparrow.
Cybercrime is becoming increasingly as more transactions take place online.
It's a misconception that most scientists are eccentric personalities.
5. The doctor asked the patient to go behind a and undress.
It's no easy task to adapt a novel for the , but that movie was amazing!
Shouldn't you have a special filter to protect your eyes if you sit in front of a all day?
6. How on earth are we going to the money we need for the renovation work?
The campaign aims to awareness of the problems faced by the disabled.
Surely if we the price of the product, fewer customers will buy it?

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

WHAT'S THAT TUNE?

Have you ever heard a song playing on the radio or in a club and thought "If (1) I could remember (2) sang that!" Now there's a new service for any of you who don't want to spend the whole evening racking your brains for an artist's name, wishing you (3) a better memory. (4) a small sum, a mobile user can find out the identity of a song and artist, just (5) calling a number. The procedure is very simple – just point your phone at the source of the recorded music and a computer will filter (6) all the background noise and check its extensive database of songs to find a matching sample. All of (7) can be accomplished in less than a second, and a reply is then (8) via text message with the answer. The company, called Shazam, (9) developed the sophisticated technology required and is likely (10) be a success because the service is easy to use, and you don't have to (11) out a subscription or pay registration fees. In future, it is hoped that the service (12) be expanded to enable instant downloading of the song. At present, CDs and ringtones (13) be bought on the company's website, where you can also view a list of the songs you've had identified, or even send a song to a friend. Personally, I would prefer (14) if my mobile phone could give me this kind of information without my having to (15) a call at all, but I suppose phone technology like that might still be a few years away.

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "My flight is at seven tomorrow."
"I wish ! Is there no way you can stay?"
a. you won't leave
b. you not to leave
c. you weren't leaving
d. you hadn't left
2. If only long enough for us to take some decent photographs.
a. will the rain stop
b. the rain stops
c. the rain stopping
d. the rain had stopped
3. Any customers who the spa facilities should book at the reception desk.
a. wish they would use
b. wish to use
c. wish they can use
d. wish the use of
4. "Did you enjoy your date last night?"
"No, I home and watched TV."
a. would sooner have stayed
b. prefer to stay
c. would prefer it if I stayed
d. would rather I stayed
5. "Can you take Fluffy out for his walk?"
"..... I just got in and I'm exhausted."
a. If only you went
b. I'd rather you went
c. I wish you went
d. I'd prefer you go
6. It's high time this state the death penalty.
a. abolished
b. would abolish
c. abolishes
d. to abolish
7. Andrea's secretary speaks to me the managing director.
a. though she is
b. if only she were
c. as she is
d. as if she were
8. The performance was almost funny.
a. so bad as to be
b. too bad that it was
c. enough bad to be
d. only so bad to be
9. I think it would be to upgrade the existing computers – not replace them.
a. preferable
b. preferential
c. preferred
d. preferring
10. "Why is the storeroom in such a mess?"
"I don't know. Ben it out by today."
a. supposes he has cleaned
b. has been supposed to clean
c. was supposed to have cleaned
d. is supposed to be cleaning

VOCABULARY

11. If you with the device in any way, the guarantee will no longer be valid.
a. inject
b. transform
c. consist
d. tamper
12. Representatives of the charity are closely the distribution of aid.
a. installing
b. glimpsing
c. monitoring
d. witnessing
13. Workers at the factory must take to avoid injury.
a. progress
b. precautions
c. procedure
d. perception
14. The results of the examination will be posted on the Internet
a. shortly
b. totally
c. artificially
d. literally
15. She only wears natural fibers as she's allergic to most fabrics.
a. domestic
b. synthetic
c. virtual
d. exterior
16. The research work was going well until we a problem we couldn't solve.
a. enlightened
b. entrusted
c. envisaged
d. encountered
17. I managed to complete the exam with 20 minutes to
a. run
b. set
c. spare
d. leave
18. The senator was when he read the allegations against him in the newspaper.
a. incensed
b. invariable
c. illicit
d. infallible
19. This painting is my favorite. I could at it for hours.
a. observe
b. explore
c. gaze
d. glance
20. The museum's created an exhibition that would be both interesting and educational.
a. curator
b. consumer
c. animator
d. manufacturer

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

The idea of superhuman “bionic” vision, familiar to us from science fiction movies, may soon become reality. Wearers of a new type of contact lens may in the future be able to see (1) displays of images or information in front of them, just as robots and superheroes (2) in movies. (3) through one of these lenses you would see (4), but it would also seem as (5) there was a computer display in front of you that no one (6) could see.

Scientists at the University of Washington have made a major (7) in the technology required to create (8) lenses. A prototype device has been (9) which consists of a contact lens with an imprinted electronic circuit and light-emitting diodes. (10) components were manufactured on a microscopic (11) using microfabrication techniques. The creation of a biologically safe contact lens was (12) challenging not just (13) of the size. Building electronic circuits (14) using toxic chemicals and high temperatures. (15) now, it has been impossible to do (16) on a flexible contact lens because it is (17) from very sensitive material.

The technology is not yet perfected but scientists are already considering possible (18) applications for the lenses. They could be worn by pilots or drivers so that they can (19) technical information without (20) their eyes off the road. They may also be used with state-of-the-art virtual reality games instead of headsets.

1. a. usual
b. natural
c. virtual
d. gradual
2. a. do
b. have
c. appear
d. like
3. a. Noticing
b. Looking
c. Going
d. Being
4. a. invariably
b. nothing
c. normally
d. it
5. a. rather
b. if
c. so
d. long
6. a. but
b. else
c. again
d. other
7. a. progress
b. method
c. evolution
d. breakthrough
8. a. more
b. those
c. such
d. both
9. a. managed
b. transplanted
c. developed
d. existed
10. a. Other
b. These
c. So
d. Large
11. a. scale
b. basis
c. by
d. width
12. a. absolutely
b. ethically
c. technically
d. hardly
13. a. because
b. due
c. thinking
d. one
14. a. is
b. needs
c. involves
d. depends
15. a. From
b. So
c. By
d. Until
16. a. this
b. chemicals
c. harm
d. such
17. a. made
b. derived
c. invented
d. discovered
18. a. defective
b. outspoken
c. foregone
d. commercial
19. a. view
b. screen
c. comprise
d. peer
20. a. reaching
b. raising
c. moving
d. taking

17 Word Order, Inversion and Emphasis

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. Trevor would rarely be / be rarely on time for his appointments.
2. I wonder what George thought / what did George think of the presentation.
3. What / That I'm looking for is a job with better pay.
4. I always recycle plastic packaging, as / like do the majority of my neighbours.
5. Have you any idea how long will it take / it will take to finish decorating the second floor?
6. How much you exercise / do you exercise affects the rate at which you lose weight.
7. Difficult though / Though difficult it may seem, I'm confident you can solve the riddle.
8. I'm being unreasonable, aren't I / am I not?
9. In London was it / It was in London that I first met Alan.
10. Who does live / lives in the flat upstairs from you?
11. Such / So violent was the scene that it was cut from the film.
12. Sue hardly ever walks to work, doesn't she / does she?
13. I wonder if you can talk to him myself / yourself – he won't listen to me.
14. Were you / You were to be offered a job abroad, would you accept it?
15. The hotel doesn't have a swimming pool nor does it have / it has a children's play area.

B. Choose the correct answers.

1. is this species of wild flower found growing at such a high altitude.
 - a. Seldom
 - b. Little
 - c. Not only
2. should the contents of this report be made public.
 - a. No sooner
 - b. Only then
 - c. Under no circumstances
3. did they realise what a risk they were taking that day.
 - a. Hardly ever
 - b. Rarely
 - c. Little
4. had the race started when one of the runners stumbled and fell.
 - a. Not only
 - b. Hardly
 - c. Only after
5. the inquiry is complete will the findings be published.
 - a. No way
 - b. Not until
 - c. No sooner

Score: / 20

RULES

WORD ORDER IN SENTENCES

The parts of a simple sentence typically appear in the following order:

Subject + verb + object + adverb of manner + place + time.

Many time words and adverbs can come at the beginning or end of a sentence.

Frequency expressions, time words and adverbs come before the main verb but after the verb *be*.

A verb should never be separated from its object.

He rides his bike slowly through the park every morning.

Throughout the meal he complained about the service. He complained about the service **throughout the meal**.

I **generally** get home around 6 pm.
I **am generally** home around 6 pm.

Let's discuss the budget issue **after** lunch.

not: Let's discuss **after** lunch the budget issue. X

WORD ORDER IN QUESTIONS

Yes / No questions

Auxiliary verb / modal + subject + verb + rest of sentence.

Open questions with *What, Why, How*, etc.

- **Subject questions**
Question word + verb + rest of sentence
- **Non-subject questions**
Question word + auxiliary verb + subject + verb + rest of sentence

Do you like chess?

Can I make the arrangements?

Who told you about my new car?

Who are they planning to invite?

Where did you live in England?

Indirect questions

begin with a phrase / direct question and follow the word order of a sentence. We often use indirect questions to make questions more polite.

I wonder **where Susan went**.

Do you know **when the lecture begins**?

Notes

1. Question words do not always introduce questions. In this case, the sentence follows ordinary order.
How the virus reproduces remains a mystery. (*not: How does the virus reproduce ... X*)
What she said at the meeting did not affect the company in any way. (*not: What did she say ... X*)
2. The suffix *-ever* and the phrase *on earth* can be added to question words (except *whose*) to show we are surprised or annoyed.
Whoever would have imagined such a thing?

What on earth do you think you're doing?

QUESTION TAGS

auxiliary verb + (not) + pronoun at the end of a sentence

- Positive statements are usually followed by negative tags and vice versa.
- Statements containing negative words take positive tags.
- Positive question tags can follow positive statements to show interest, surprise, concern, sarcasm or annoyance. Tone of voice is also an indication.

The meeting is at 12.00, **isn't it**?

You won't forget, **will you**?

Jane never tells the truth, **does she**?

Nobody will find out, **will they**?

So, you're going away for the weekend, **are you**?

How nice!

Oh, **you borrowed** my car, **did you**?

Irregular tags

Question tags may also be used in the following cases:

- to ask for help or information
- exclamations or rhetorical questions
- imperatives + (*will / won't / can / can't / could / would*) you
- suggestions (*Let's + shall we?*)

Lend me £5, **would you**? (*polite request with would, not will*)

It's really amazing, **isn't it**?

Help me lift this box, **will you**?

Let's eat, shall we?

Note

I am has an irregular tag (*aren't I*).

I am supposed to bring the books, **aren't I**?

INVERSION

We sometimes use the question word order (inversion) for emphasis or to link new information with previous information. Inversions are often used in formal or written English; they are less common in conversation. Inversions are used after certain words when they appear at the beginning of a sentence or a subordinate clause.

- **Rarely, Seldom, Hardly (ever), Never, Little, Scarcely, Not only ... (but) ...**
- **Nowhere, At no time, (In) no way, Under no circumstances, On no account, Under no condition**
- **Hardly / Scarcely ... when**, often with Past Perfect
- **No sooner ... than** (we use this when one event quickly follows another, often with Past Perfect)
- **Only then / later / after / if / by** (only + time expression / prepositional phrase), **Not until**
Note: the inversion is in the main clause
- adverbs of place (**Here, There, Opposite, ...**) or adverbs of time (**First, Then, Finally, ...**) + be or verb of movement (stand, sit, come)
- **so / neither / nor** (to show agreement)
- **as** (= the same is true for)
- in conditional sentences with auxiliaries **were, had** and the modal **should** where the word **if** is omitted

Seldom have I seen my father so angry.
Little did he know that we had called the police.
Not only can she sing, she is a fantastic dancer as well.

Under no condition should you lend him money.
No way am I inviting her! (informal)

Hardly had we sat down when the fire alarm went off.
No sooner had we opened the door **than** we realised something was wrong.

Only after I had heard his reasons **did I forgive** him.
Not until we met **did I realise** that I knew him.

Here comes my sister.
There in front of my house was my headmaster.

Jack can give a Powerpoint presentation and **so can** Julie.
Anna didn't arrive and **neither / nor did** Kate.
We always vote Conservative, **as do** most of our friends.
Should you hear anything, let me know. (first conditional)
Were I in your position, I'd tell the truth. (second conditional)
Had he proposed, I would have accepted. (third conditional)

OTHER WAYS OF ADDING EMPHASIS: Cleft sentences, fronting, auxiliary verbs, reflexives

Cleft sentences are used to emphasise something.

Cleft sentences have two parts; each part includes a verb.

- **It + be + emphasised word / phrase + who / that / which / when / where**
- **What clause + be + (to) infinitive / noun**
(what = the thing that)
- **All / The (only / last) thing**

It was Peter who found the car keys. (not someone else)

It was the car keys that Peter found. (not something else)
It was very late when she phoned.

It was because you were late that we missed the train.

What he did was ruin my chances of success.

What this book does is help you with your grammar.

What you need is a holiday.

What impressed me most was his thoughtfulness.

All she did was smile and shake her head.

The only thing she did was smile and shake her head.

The last thing I want to do is fire him.

Fronting is when we move parts of the sentence to the beginning (front) to add emphasis. These parts of the sentence are often followed by **be** + subject.

- **comparative / superlative**
- **so + adjective + be ... that**
- **such** (= so much / so great)
- **verbs of movement / position**
- **adjective / verb + though / as + subject + be / may / might**

I like all his dishes. **Best of all** is his spinach pie.

So severe was the storm **that** several trees were blown down. (= The storm was so severe that ...)

Such was his anger **that** he could barely contain himself.
(= He was so angry that ...)

Standing at the entrance to the harbour is the beautiful statue of the mermaid.

Hopeless as it may seem, we must persevere with the treatment. (= Although it may seem hopeless ...)

Try though you might, you will never succeed.

The bride **does** look gorgeous!

Auxiliary verbs are used in positive statements.
The auxiliary is stressed in spoken speech.

Reflexives can emphasise a noun / pronoun.

- after the subject
- at the end of the sentence

The **book itself** is fascinating.

It would be better if you asked her **yourself**.

PRACTICE

A. Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the verb in brackets or add a question tag.

1. The report should have focused on what we need (we / need) to do to improve the situation.
2. Do you have any idea where (the bus / leave) from?
3. Which of the candidates (you / plan) to interview?
4. The mystery was never solved, ?
5. Let's use our common sense, ?
6. A two-week course hardly qualifies him as an expert, ?
7. You've been vaccinated against measles, ?
8. What on earth (you / make) think I would want to move house?

B. Rewrite the following sentences beginning with the most suitable word or phrase below.

Little • Under no circumstances • No sooner • Only by
Never before • Rarely • Not only • Only when

1. The only way we can hope to save the species is by protecting its habitat.
Only by protecting its habitat can we hope to save the species.
2. The twins started screaming the minute the aeroplane took off.
.....
3. I saw Clive last week and I realised then how much weight he has lost.
.....
4. It was the first time a book had moved me so much.
.....
5. The public doesn't usually realise that the police work hard to prevent crime, not just to solve cases.
.....
6. It's not often that you catch a glimpse of an owl in these woods.
.....
7. You are absolutely forbidden to enter the studio when the red light is on.
.....
8. It wasn't just the weather that spoiled my holiday – I was ill too.
.....

C. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown.

1. The substance is so toxic that protective clothing must be worn at all times.
So toxic is the substance that protective clothing must be worn at all times.
2. The advertising campaign was so successful that the product sold out within a week.
Such was
3. So inaccurate was the report that the newspaper had to print an apology.
There were
4. Such are the demands on an astronaut's body that above average physical fitness is required.
The demands
5. If any members of staff wish to take leave this month, they must submit their forms by tomorrow.
Should
6. Were everybody in this country to contribute one euro, the charity would reach its target.
If
7. We'd never have trusted him with our money if we'd known the truth.
Had
8. The reason we got lost was that we were reading the map upside down.
It

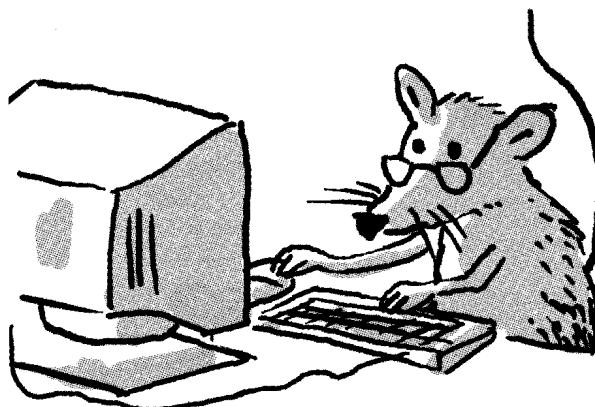
9. I realised who she was when she took her sunglasses off.
It
10. A boy sat on the fence looking lost and alone.
On
11. We just went for a meal at our local Italian restaurant.
All
12. Although we were exhausted, we refused to give up the search.
Exhausted

D. Complete the sentences. Use one word for each sentence.

1. Who on**earth**..... would buy such a ridiculous hat?
2. The garden is overgrown, but the house is in excellent condition.
3. That painting was a present from the artist
4. I live right in the centre of town, do most of my friends.
5. I can't afford them, but the kids need new shoes.
6. made my day was getting flowers delivered to the office.
7. Talented she was, she never made it as a professional singer.
8. could I have put my keys?

**E. The following letter to the newspaper contains six mistakes in questions, inversion and word order.
Find and correct the mistakes.**

|
| Dear Editor,
|
| On a radio programme recently, I heard about the most appalling experiment that some genetic
| engineering scientists are planning to do. Can you imagine why might a scientist want to put human
| brain cells into a mouse? Apparently this will help scientists see how these special cells behave in a
| live animal. Not only they are planning to do this, but they might then allow the mouse to grow up and
| reproduce. What the resulting animal would be - a mouse, or a man-mouse? Surely nobody would
| intend to create an animal with a human brain, wouldn't they? Personally, I find all this tampering
| with nature very worrying. Under no circumstances experiments like this should be allowed to take
| place. What's worse, I'm sure most of the research is being carried out in secret. Only if we all speak
| out against these experiments anything will be done to stop them.
|



EXAM PRACTICE

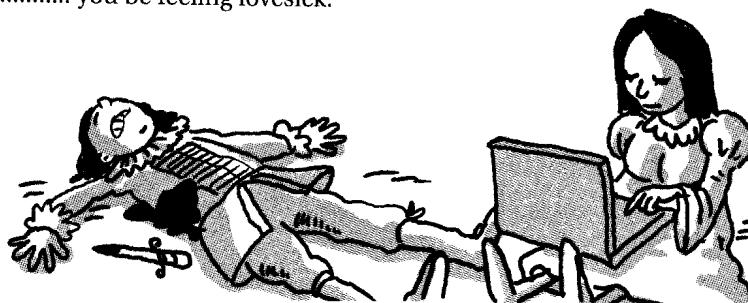
A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. No matter what happens, Jane will never forgive Mark for what he did. **EVER**
Under Mark for what he did.
2. They don't usually let students leave the school premises during break. **PERMISSION**
Hardly ever the school premises during break.
3. Harry wanted to be famous so much that he participated in a reality show. **DESIRE**
So great fame that he participated in a reality show.
4. I never intended to give up work. **ANY**
At no time giving up work.
5. The rough sea didn't discourage us from going sailing. **WAS**
Rough we still went sailing.
6. I'm drawn to this resort because of its long sandy beach. **ME**
What is its long sandy beach.
7. Meg has subscribed to a new fashion magazine. **IS**
What Meg a subscription to a new fashion magazine.
8. They only discovered the mistake when the book was in the shops. **COME**
Not until the mistake discovered.

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

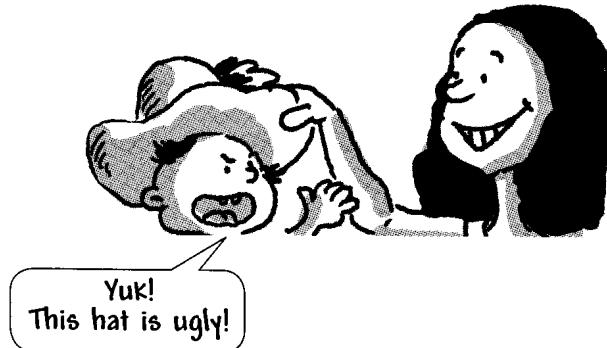
DEAR JULIET

Verona, the setting of Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*, is steeped in the legend of the star-crossed lovers. Not (1) are there hotels named after the pair, (2) there are a motorcycle racecourse and campground too. The local tourist office will show you (3) you can find their family homes. (4) powerful is the myth that (5) sites attract two million visitors a year. But (6) is Juliet who gets most of the attention these days. Bizarrely, the local post office receives about 5,000 letters a year from all (7) the world, addressed to her as a kind of international agony aunt. Even more surprisingly, every single letter (8) receive an answer. Verona has founded a voluntary organisation, *The Juliet Club*, to reply to each and every letter personally. Not until you have read some of the letters, (9) you realise how deep some people's need is to pour out their feelings. Many of the problems are timeless: parental opposition to teenage love, and the trials of marriage and divorce. But (10) people should turn to Juliet is a mystery. In Shakespeare's play, Juliet, in love with Romeo and facing an arranged marriage, fakes her own death with poison. Romeo, believing she is really dead, kills (11) at her side. She wakes up and stabs herself in despair at the sight of her beloved. (12) this really the kind of person you'd expect good advice from? Maybe (13) , but the myth lives on – not just in Verona but (14) the Internet too – where you can view some of the letters written to her, or send her an electronic letter yourself (15) you be feeling lovesick.



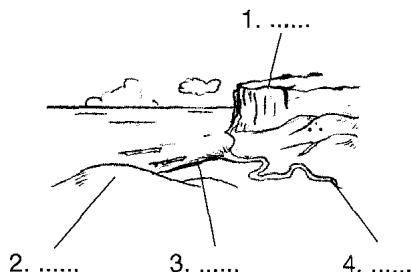
C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. "Why are they doing the survey?"
"They need to find out how much demand for a new arts centre."
 - a. would it be
 - b. would be there
 - c. would there be
 - d. there would be
2. "Where shall we go to eat?"
"I used to love going to that Italian restaurant next to the cinema, but it closed down, ?"
 - a. hadn't it
 - b. didn't it
 - c. hasn't it
 - d. wasn't it
3. Hardly to the city when he met his future wife.
 - a. had John moved
 - b. moved John
 - c. John had moved
 - d. John moved
4. than Sam's directions was the map that Jenny drew for us.
 - a. What were clearer
 - b. Much clearer
 - c. It was much clearer
 - d. How clear
5. "Didn't you see the notice saying the talk was canceled?"
"No. known, I would have made other plans."
 - a. Were I to
 - b. Should I have
 - c. Had I
 - d. If I
6. The last thing is more trouble with the police.
 - a. Thomas needs
 - b. needs Thomas
 - c. does Thomas need
 - d. Thomas needs it
7. "Do you know where we're supposed to go now?"
"..... . We can ask her."
 - a. Julia comes
 - b. Here comes Julia
 - c. Is coming Julia
 - d. Here come Julia
8. Never before to our college.
 - a. so many students have applied
 - b. have so many students applied
 - c. had applied so many students
 - d. students had applied so many
9. Andrew expected to win and the rest of his team.
 - a. as
 - b. neither
 - c. nor did
 - d. so did
10. "Are your parents still upset?"
"Yes. They can't understand of medical school."
 - a. why I am dropping out
 - b. why am I dropping out
 - c. do I drop out
 - d. will I drop out
11. the rain has stopped can the repair work begin.
 - a. After
 - b. No sooner
 - c. Only when
 - d. At no time
12. "Here, put on this hat I bought you."
"..... this ugly hat on!"
 - a. No way am I putting
 - b. I'm in no way putting
 - c. No way I am putting
 - d. I'm not putting in any way

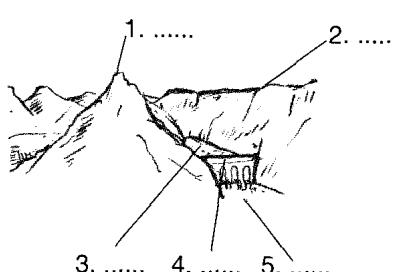


TOPIC VOCABULARY
A. Label the parts of the drawings using the words given.

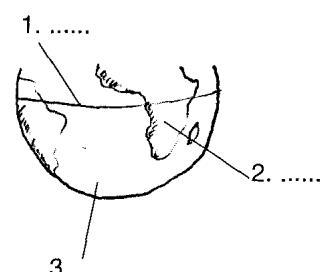
1. a.
- estuary**
- b.
- shore**
-
- c.
- cliff**
- d.
- sand dunes**



2. a.
- peak / summit**
- b.
- ridge**
-
- c.
- valley**
- d.
- dam**
- e.
- reservoir**



3. a.
- hemisphere**
- b.
- equator**
-
- c.
- continent**


B. Match each sentence with the most appropriate endings.

1. An eruption may occur at any time
-
2. Erosion occurs at a fast rate
-
3. Crops cannot be grown easily in arid conditions
-
4. There are more likely to be avalanches
-
5. Mountaineers must allow for the fact that there is less oxygen in the atmosphere
-
6. Countries may implement bans on using water
-
7. Damage may be caused to houses and trees may be blown down
-
8. You can get away from civilization completely
-
9. Island residents import many of the products they use

- a. on mountain slopes that are disturbed by skiers
-
- b. in the wilderness.
-
- c. from an active volcano.
-
- d. at high altitude.
-
- e. in a hurricane.
-
- f. when there are no trees to anchor the soil.
-
- g. without irrigation.
-
- h. from the mainland.
-
- i. during a drought.

C. Read the weather forecast and choose the best explanation for the words in colour.
OUTLOOK FOR MONDAY AND TUESDAY

The north of the country will be mainly wet, with light drizzle in some places. In the south, skies will be overcast, but light northwesterly breezes will clear away most of the clouds during the course of the afternoon. Generally mild daytime temperatures will range from 9°–12°C. Overnight, dense fog will affect visibility in coastal areas on Tuesday morning and there may be frost further inland. Wind speeds will increase, resulting in gale-force winds Tuesday night.

OUTLOOK FOR THE REST OF THE WEEK

In much of the country, rain will turn to sleet by Wednesday evening and some snow may fall, although it is unlikely to settle. Temperatures will be below the seasonal average, and there may be ice in patches in the early hours of the morning. This will thaw as temperatures rise to 3°– 8°C.

- | | | |
|-------------|---|--|
| 1. drizzle | 4. mild | 7. sleet |
| a. rain | a. bitterly cold | a. balls of ice that fall from the sky |
| b. winds | b. pleasant; neither hot nor cold | b. freezing rain |
| 2. overcast | 5. frost | 8. settle |
| a. sunny | a. thin layer of ice crystals on the ground | a. block roads |
| b. cloudy | b. deep drifts of snow | b. remain on the ground |
| 3. breezes | 6. gale-force winds | 9. thaw |
| a. winds | a. very high winds | a. thicken |
| b. storms | b. complete calm | b. melt |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

1. COMPOUND NOUNS

1. Combine the nouns below with the nouns given to make compound nouns.

wind • coast • rain • heat • thunder • water • land • snow • sun

line
guard

4.

mill
screen
surf

7.

stroke
wave

storm
drift
flake

5.

fall
front
colour

8.

storm
cloud
clap

shine
light
beam

6.

slide
mark

9.

fall
bow
forest
drop

2. Match the compound nouns from Exercise 1 to the sentences below.

- It's their job to monitor all the boats that enter the harbour. **coastguard**.....
- The average for the month is about 15 cm, but drought is a serious possibility this year.
- If you look closely, you can see that each one has its own intricate pattern.
- It's been over 40°C every day for a week – I can't bear it!
- You can while away the evening sitting at one of the cafés near the water's edge.
- The noise really scared the dog, and the flashes of lightning were so dramatic!
- Solar water heating is a good choice because we normally get over six hours a day.
- The rocks and mud blocked the road for several hours.



3. ADJECTIVES AND PREPOSITIONS

1. Cross out the adjective in each line that is not usually followed by the preposition on the right.

1. capable	typical	popular	characteristic	aware	of
2. talented	optimistic	serious	curious	crazy	about
3. familiar	shocked	obsessed	compatible	content	with
4. immune	harmful	beneficial	superior	suitable	to
5. ready	responsible	worried	available	famous	for
6. sensitive	absent	different	safe	isolated	from
7. terrible	brilliant	amazed	certain	present	at
8. interested	confident	experienced	engrossed	deficient	in

2. Complete the sentences using the correct word from the corresponding line in Exercise 1.

- Female explorers have proved that women are **capable** of amazing feats of endurance.
- I studied geology because I've always been about what the earth is made of.
- You need to be with the route before you set off.
- People recommend drinking water from this spring because it is believed to be to your health.
- The region around the French city of Bordeaux is for its wine.
- The islanders are from the mainland when there are gale-force winds.
- I was at how quickly the temperature dropped in the mountains.
- In some parts of the world, people's diets are in important vitamins.

C. RELATED WORDS ways of walking

1. Which verb describes each picture? Tick.



- wander
✓ tiptoe
..... trudge



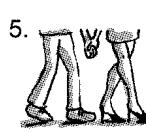
- stride
..... step
..... wade



- plod
..... shuffle
..... march



- dash
..... dawdle
..... clamber



- scramble
..... stagger
..... stroll

2. How might you walk in these situations? There may be more than one possible answer.

1. You are late for school. I would dash to school.
2. There is thick snow on the ground.
3. You are feeling dizzy.
4. You are on holiday and are looking for souvenirs in a seaside town.
5. You are feeling confident and happy.
6. You are going up a steep hill with loose stones.
7. You want to cross a river using several large flat stones.
8. You are in a queue that is moving forward slowly.
9. You are on your way to school but the first lesson is one you really dislike.

3. Complete the text using the correct verbs from Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

There may be more than one possible answer.

We set off first thing so we'd have time to get to the ridge while it was still daylight. We (1) strode along the valley floor, as if we had all the time in the world, laughing and joking, until we reached a stream. There was no bridge so we had to (2) across and then we (3) through the muddy fields on the other side. Soon we were (4) up a steep slope, between huge rocks. When we got to the top, we spent ages (5) around, picking flowers and taking photos of the view before we began our descent. By now we were all exhausted and we (6) slowly downhill. By the time we got back to the hotel, it was so late we had to (7) upstairs to our room so as not to disturb the other guests.

D. MULTIPLE MEANINGS ground plain hail

The main meaning of these words is connected with the weather / geography. Complete the sentences with one of these words: *ground, plain and hail*. Make any necessary changes.

1. She made it plain that we were not welcome.
2. I love the smell of freshly coffee.
3. Joe from the Scottish Highlands.
4. Andrew's parents were furious that he had lied so they him for a week.
5. The sea off Greenland is a popular fishing for European fisherman.
6. She was really as a teenager but now she's stunning!
7. Our application was rejected on the that we did not submit the forms in time.
8. The bride wore a ivory dress.
9. The discovery was as a major breakthrough.
10. I don't want to walk – let's a taxi.
11. Visitors are welcome to explore the castle's extensive

E WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| damp | 1. a. The air is often before a thunderstorm. |
| humid | b. The basement is cold and |
| soaking | c. I got caught in the rain and came home wet. |
| overboard | 2. a. It's been all morning and rain is forecast for this evening. |
| overcast | b. The huge wave knocked two crew members |
| overseas | c. The centre needs to have leaflets in different languages for visitors. |
| current | 3. a. It's chilly in here – there's a coming under that door. |
| caught | b. A dam is being built to control the of water. |
| tow | c. The was so strong we couldn't swim. |
| marsh | 4. a. The residents of the mountain village are used to conditions. |
| strict | b. The school is a huge, building. |
| austere | c. John's parents are really – he's not allowed to go out at all on weekdays. |
| descendant | 5. a. The back to base camp was more hazardous than the ascent to the summit. |
| descent | b. Do you know of a hotel in the area? |
| decent | c. She claims to be a of Marie Curie. |
| diversion | 6. a. He is trying to overcome his strong to spiders. |
| aversion | b. A landslide has blocked the road and there is a through the country lanes. |
| conversion | c. The of the old train station into a restaurant was very successful. |
| outlook | 7. a. We should be on the for signs of bad weather. |
| lookout | b. The for the weekend is fair – let's go camping. |
| overview | c. In the first lecture, the professor gave an of the course. |

F WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with adjectives formed from the words below. Make any necessary changes.

ambition	danger	grass	ice	number	sun
breeze	day	guilt	infect	peril	taste
bulk	dirt	harmony	live	prosper	time
caution	disaster	hazard	luxury	rain	trend
chill	fog	health	mess	rebel	wealth
choose	friend	hill	month	risk	week
cost	gloom	hour	mountain	rock	wind
courage	glory	humour	mystery	salt	year

-ous

-ly

-y

ambitious			
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Which adjectives from the chart in Exercise 1 can you use to complete each sentence below?

1. The castle looks out on a landscape.
2. An attempt to ascend the north face of the mountain would be
3. The garden needs attention on a basis.
4. The children liked the look of their new teacher.
5. We set off on a morning before the sun came up.

G. METAPHOR AND MEANING

We can use expressions connected with water to talk about quantities of things.

a flood of applications (= a huge number of applications)

1. **Mark the following nouns and verbs + (a lot of water) or - (a little water).**

deluge drown flood sea torrent
drop dry pour storm trickle

2. **Complete the sentences with one of the following words.**

flooding • **showered** • **sea** • **torrents** • **wade** • **pour**

1. The newlywed couple was with gifts.
 2. Looking at the photos, the memories came back.
 3. The visiting team was greeted with of abuse from the local fans.
 4. I've got to through all these law books tonight.
 5. At rush hour, people into the city on buses and trains.
 6. At my first concert, I looked down at the of faces in horror.
3. **Explain the meaning of the phrases in colour.**

1. The announcement of the tax increase was met with storms of protest. **loud expressions of disapproval**
2. Cheap imitations have flooded the market.
3. There has been a steady trickle of customers all morning.
4. My inspiration for the story I'm writing has completely dried up.
5. The money raised at the concert is just a drop in the ocean.
6. Our department is completely snowed under at the moment.
7. The authorities are concerned about the rising tide of crime.

H. IN OTHER WORDS: expressions using measurements

The expressions below use units of measurement from the pre-metric English system. Compare these measurements:

inch = 2.54 centimetres yard = 91.4 centimetres ounce = 28.35 grams ton = 1018.2 kilos
foot = 30.48 centimetres mile = 1.6 kilometres stone = 6.35 kilos pint = 568 cc.

Match the phrases in colour to their meanings.

1. He'd run a mile if you asked him to do that.
 2. She stood out a mile.
 3. It weighed a ton.
 4. Debbie went the extra mile.
 5. They came down on us like a ton of bricks.
 6. Give him an inch and he'll take a yard.
 7. She'd had a few pints.
 8. Jack made me feel 10 feet tall.
 9. He'd lost half a stone.
 10. Cathy didn't give me an ounce of help.
- a. been drinking
 - b. managed to lose three kilos
 - c. takes advantage
 - d. avoid doing
 - e. any help
 - f. was very heavy
 - g. was very conspicuous
 - h. boosted my confidence
 - i. reprimanded us
 - j. did everything possible to help

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. How many people attended the opening ceremony? **PRESENT**
How many people the opening ceremony?
2. Their opposition to the new dam is based on the claim that it will lead to droughts. **GROUNDS**
They oppose the new dam it will cause droughts.
3. A huge number of people applied for the job. **FLOOD**
There was for the job.
4. When the railway was invented, many people said it was a miracle. **HAILED**
The invention a miracle.
5. Everyone knows that Denise hates heights. **AVERSION**
Denise's well known.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

THE WORLD MELTS UNDER THEIR FEET

While scientists debate the causes of climate change and the likely (1) of global warming, the Inuit (the native people of the Arctic tundra) are watching their world disappear before their eyes, as the ice (2) The Inuit live in small settlements along the (3) of Alaska, Canada, Greenland and northernmost Russia, and rely on hunting and fishing to survive. Inuit hunters forecast the weather by looking for warning signs in the clouds, the ocean (4) , and in animal behaviour. In such a (5) climate, this knowledge can mean the difference between life and death. In recent years, however, weather conditions have become unpredictable. Thunderstorms in a region where it was once too cold for them are not (6) Winters are (7) and summers last longer, altering the natural (8) of the animals the Inuit hunt, causing their numbers to (9) The Inuit can no longer rely on the same hunting (10) , and movement over the ice can be (11) because it is thinning and breaking up at an alarming (12) Some scientists predict that the Arctic could be ice-free within 50 years. Whatever the consequences of this for the planet as a whole, it would certainly mean the end of the Inuit way of life.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. A reason | B events | C affects | D effects |
| 2. A wades | B thaws | C flows | D trickles |
| 3. A coastlines | B landmarks | C outlooks | D mainland |
| 4. A drizzle | B rainfall | C currents | D draughts |
| 5. A strict | B harsh | C risky | D rocky |
| 6. A unaware | B unhealthy | C uncommon | D untimely |
| 7. A damper | B milder | C safer | D plainer |
| 8. A continent | B descent | C estuary | D habitat |
| 9. A diminish | B dawdle | C dry up | D come down on |
| 10. A soils | B lands | C miles | D grounds |
| 11. A cautious | B disastrous | C perilous | D numerous |
| 12. A rate | B pacing | C beat | D route |

C. WORD FORMATION Use the words given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

WIND FARMS

It is generally accepted, and not only by (1) , that there is an urgent need for clean energy sources to replace the world's diminishing supplies of oil and coal, and to bring about a (2) in the amount of (3) emissions from power stations. Although solar power which relies on energy from direct (4) is popular in homes as a means of heating water, the most common form of (5) energy is wind power. Modern wind farms, (6) in the windy areas of the country like Cornwall, consist of modern turbines, which vaguely resemble the old-fashioned (7) that harnessed the power of the wind to grind wheat.

Supporters of wind power are (8) about the future, saying that wind farms could soon provide 10% of Britain's energy. It is also less (9) to build a new wind farm than a new coal-fired power station. It is worth remembering that energy (10) makes sense, as whatever the source, it is cheaper to save energy than to generate it.

ENVIRONMENT

REDUCE

HARM

SUN

ALTERNATE

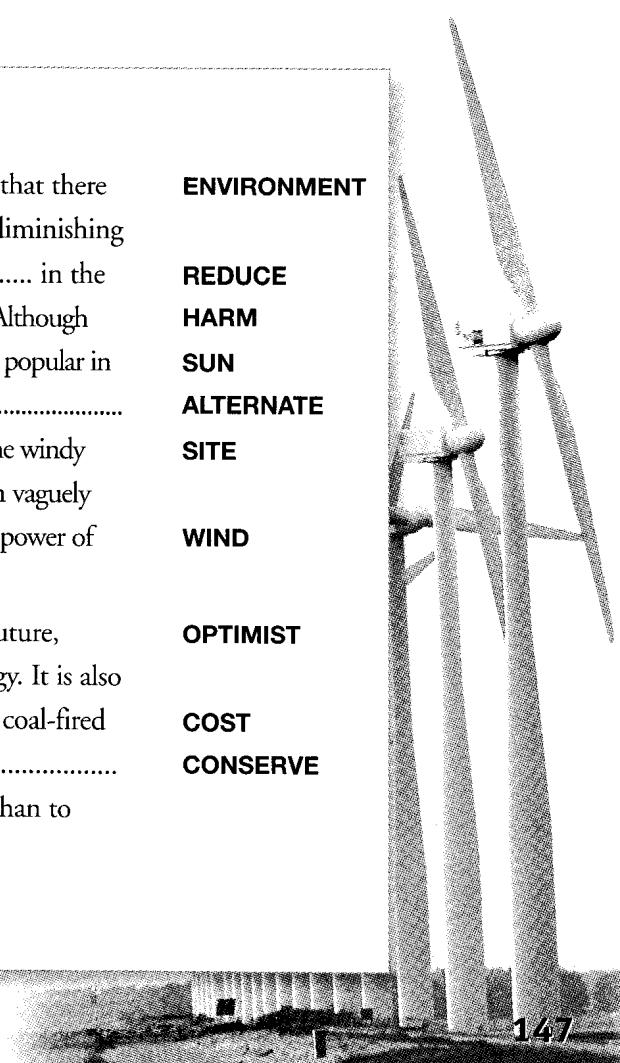
SITE

WIND

OPTIMIST

COST

CONSERVE



A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

TWISTERS

Man is no match for the power of nature. One extreme weather phenomenon that proves this (1) the tornado. You've probably seen pictures of a *twister*, as they are often (2) – a high speed spiral of wind which stretches down from a storm cloud above. Scientists are still investigating exactly (3) tornadoes are formed, but they know that air begins (4) rotate inside a storm cloud when the winds at higher and lower levels differ in (5) of speed or direction. How (6) damage is caused by a tornado depends (7) wind speed, size, and on whether the end of the spiral actually touches the ground. The area a tornado affects may only be a few hundred metres wide, (8) its power can be immense. A powerful twister may rip a house from its foundations, or carry away vehicles, heavy objects or even farm animals.

According to experts, the best way to protect yourself (9) you see a tornado approaching is to head (10) an underground shelter or basement. (11) you most certainly shouldn't do is try to outrun the storm. Not (12) would you need an incredibly powerful automobile to do (13) , as a twister can easily travel at 100 kilometres an hour, but it is nearly impossible to predict (14) the storm is heading, so you are just as likely to drive into it as (15) from it.

B. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. I wouldn't admit my mistake to Angela because I know she'd me down behind my back.
Our new manager is a great organiser; everything has like clockwork since she's been in charge.
My son is incredibly shy with members of the opposite sex – he'd a mile if a girl asked him out.
2. Demand for holiday accommodation reaches a around the middle of August, when most people have leave.
When the mist lifts, you can see the snow-covered of Mont Blanc in the distance.
Most athletes are at their in their late twenties.
3. Drought is a serious possibility as the area has had any rain this summer.
..... had we turned the corner when a tyre burst and we had to stop.
You can expect the weather to be warm enough for a garden party in February.
4. The radio stations were with complaints after playing the uncut version of the song.
As soon as the music began, memories of my childhood piano lessons back.
If the water level in the River Ware rises any further, the town will be
5. It is illegal to exclude somebody from a club on the of their race or religion.
The Browns are very responsible tenants, and the landlord can have no for complaint.
The house, built in the 18th century, is surrounded by extensive containing a tennis court and a kitchen garden.
6. Every time I sit down to do my maths homework my mind starts to
Professor Jones is an amusing lecturer because he tends to off the topic.
The old town is so attractive that it is worth taking the time to around at your leisure.

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- ave you any idea the spare envelopes?
a. where does Jan keep
b. Jan has kept
c. where Jan is kept
d. where Jan keeps
- Jim locked himself out of his car again last night.”
“You’d think he’d have more common sense, ?”
a. doesn’t he
b. wouldn’t you
c. shouldn’t he
d. hadn’t you
- the books in the series that the publisher anticipates record sales for the latest title.
a. Such was the success of
b. It was so successful
c. How much was the success of
d. So successful has
- Only after the taxi had pulled away that I’d left my bag on the back seat.
a. I didn’t realize
b. that I had realized
c. than I realized
d. did I realize
- than it was during the recent fuel crisis.
a. Rarely the price of gas was higher
b. The price of gas hardly has been higher
c. Never has the price of gas been higher
d. At no time has been the price of gas higher
- that Kim was getting married, we were sorry she’d be leaving home.
a. Delighted though we were
b. As we were delighted
c. However delighted were we
d. As we were so delighted
- The mountain village we are going to visit
a. is famous about its waterfall
b. its waterfall is famous
c. is famous for its waterfall
d. whose waterfall is famous
- It is vital that out of the reach of children.
a. you will keep these pesticides
b. to be kept these pesticides
c. you must keep these pesticides
d. these pesticides be kept
- “We can go for a swim now if you like!”
“If only my bathing suit with me!”
a. I was bringing
b. I had brought
c. I could bring
d. I would bring
- good reviews, the producers would commission a 10-part series.
a. Were the pilot show to get
b. If the pilot show will get
c. Unless the pilot show got
d. In case the pilot show would get

VOCABULARY

11. The girls were to hear that they had been selected for the gymnastics team.
a. overjoyed
b. overactive
c. over the hill
d. overcast
12. The package was too to fit in the mailbox, so they left it on the step.
a. trendy
b. bulky
c. gloomy
d. breezy
13. The company was asked to their recruitment policy.
a. modify
b. erode
c. confide
d. fasten
14. The climber finds it hard to breathe because of the
a. attitude
b. austerity
c. altitude
d. aversion
15. Nick was born on a small island, and only traveled to the when he left home to go to college.
a. landlord
b. mainland
c. landslide
d. overseas
16. The yacht’s skipper pulled down the sails and allowed the boat to on the waves.
a. fend
b. plod
c. stride
d. drift
17. Ed is fairly – he always wears designer clothes.
a. prosperous
b. costly
c. priceless
d. numerous
18. Cameras are prohibited in the museum.
a. strongly
b. harshly
c. strictly
d. greatly
19. The vast open in the north are the country’s most fertile agricultural region.
a. dams
b. dunes
c. corridors
d. plains
20. The marathon runner just managed to find the energy to across the finish line.
a. stroll
b. steer
c. stagger
d. scramble

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

The Amazon River is the greatest river in the world in terms of the volume of water it carries and its drainage area. The headwaters of this river begin high in the Andes Mountains of South America. The Amazon snakes through the entire northern half of the (1) and is fed by more than 1,000 rivers. It (2) through the largest equatorial forest to the Atlantic Ocean. Annual (3) is approximately nine feet, but most of the water does not reach the (4) as it is caught by the foliage of the trees and returned to the atmosphere, (5) in a high level of (6). This combination of heat and water creates a (7) that can support vast biological diversity. (8) else on earth (9) there such a variety of plant and animal life.

The Amazon rainforest is the world's most valuable resource and is (10) to the health of the world's climate. Not only (11) the trees absorb carbon dioxide, they also produce about 20% of the world's oxygen. Scientists (12) that the forest reduces the global temperature (13) about one or two degrees Celsius. (14) is the importance of the Amazon area to the world's climate as a whole that deforestation is already (15) to have contributed to global warming.

Sadly, a large area of the forest has already been permanently destroyed and the (16) is not good for the rest. So what is responsible (17) this destruction? Trees are felled for (18), land is cleared for agricultural use, and major infrastructure works like the construction of new roads and dams are also (19). A recent report estimated that 55% of the forest could be gone by 2030, which would be disastrous. Remote (20) the Amazon may seem, it is vital that the whole world take an interest in its fate.

1. a. river
b. continent
c. waterfront
d. ridge
2. a. strolls
b. hails
c. flows
d. floods
3. a. raindrop
b. level
c. rainfall
d. waterfall
4. a. forest
b. river
c. top
d. clouds
5. a. causing
b. leading
c. resulting
d. meaning
6. a. humidity
b. aridity
c. austerity
d. deficiency
7. a. dwelling
b. habitat
c. boundary
d. nature
8. a. What
b. Little
c. Somewhere
d. Nowhere
9. a. can
b. is
c. does
d. has
10. a. key
b. characteristic
c. isolated
d. different
11. a. then
b. do
c. because
d. that
12. a. estimate
b. discover
c. generate
d. monitor
13. a. to
b. through
c. by
d. within
14. a. This
b. Such
c. It
d. Little
15. a. knowing
b. had
c. believed
d. possible
16. a. outlook
b. prosperity
c. lookout
d. overview
17. a. with
b. for
c. about
d. to
18. a. blossom
b. bush
c. branch
d. timber
19. a. issued
b. hailed
c. blamed
d. manufactured
20. a. as
b. that
c. is
d. being

19 Relative Clauses and Participle Clauses

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. The book sold over 20,000 copies, that / which is phenomenal for a work of non-fiction.
2. It was Daisy who / — made that unkind remark.
3. She's the singer — / that has had three number-one hits this year.
4. The other girls at the audition, who / whom all have more experience, weren't as nervous as I was.
5. The village is located in a region where / which is renowned for its wine.
6. Did anyone tell you the reason why / which the flight was delayed?
7. I met someone yesterday whose / whom father fought in the Battle of Crete.
8. The school to which / that they send their children is very prestigious.
9. Ten students, not all of whom / them can ski, signed up for the ski trip.
10. The palace, which / — built in 1765, is a fine example of Georgian architecture.
11. There is a fantastic children's pool that / where there are trained lifeguards to supervise the kids.
12. Staff members have designated particular times which / when they are available to answer queries.
13. I spent the morning with Colin, after whom / which I visited an art gallery.
14. This report is based on the replies of over 500 people who / whom took part in a survey.

B. PARTICIPLE CLAUSES Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning to the first one.

1. Seeing Sue in a bad mood, I kept out of her way.
 - a. I avoided Sue because I was in a bad mood.
 - b. I avoided Sue because I knew she was in a bad mood.
2. Filled with inspiration, Jenny picked up her pen to write.
 - a. Jenny picked up her pen, which filled her with inspiration.
 - b. Jenny picked up her pen as she was filled with inspiration.
3. Having collected over €10,000, the school was able to buy new equipment.
 - a. Once the school had collected €10,000, they were able to buy new equipment.
 - b. If they had collected over €10,000, the school could have bought new equipment.
4. Not having been trained, the dog was quite a handful.
 - a. The dog was quite a handful when he wasn't being trained.
 - b. The dog was quite a handful because he hadn't been trained.
5. Concerned about his health, Joe took his grandfather to the doctor.
 - a. Joe was concerned about his grandfather's health, so he took him to the doctor.
 - b. Joe's grandfather was concerned about his health, so he went to the doctor with his grandson.
6. Looking through the photograph album, we were filled with nostalgia.
 - a. As we looked through the photograph album, we were filled with nostalgia.
 - b. Because we were nostalgic, we looked through the photograph album.



Score: / 20

RULES

RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND CLAUSES

We use relative clauses to identify people / things or to add more information about them. Relative clauses allow us to combine separate items of information into one sentence. There are two main types of relative clauses:

- **defining clauses** – identify the noun and cannot be removed from a sentence without making the meaning unclear.
There is the gentleman **who(m)** / **that** you met at the conference.
- **non-defining clauses** – give more information about a previously defined noun and can be removed from a sentence without changing or confusing the meaning. These clauses are more common in written English. They are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

Mr Smith, **who(m)** you met at the conference, is here for the meeting.

who / whom	for people	She is the candidate who failed the interview. That is the conductor whom we met after the concert. The winner was Jason Hawk, who was a member of the city council.
which	for things	Most of the forests which once covered the country have been destroyed. The maths exam, which many students failed, was far too difficult.
that	for people and things (in defining clauses only)	She is the candidate that failed the interview. The police have found the car that was stolen last night.
whose	to show possession	The student whose scooter was stolen has called the police. The company is owned by the Stevensons, whose daughter is about to open a new branch in our town.
when	for time	I remember (the time) when you first left to travel the world.
where	for place	Is this the hotel where you stayed last year? The French Riviera, where we spend our summers, attracts many tourists.
why	to show reason	I don't understand (the reason) why she left the party early.

Notes

1. The relative pronoun is often omitted when it is the object of the verb in a defining relative clause.
This is the report (**which**) we received from head office. Is Helen the cousin (**that**) you told me about?
Hint: If the relative pronoun is followed by a subject + verb, it can be left out.
2. If a relative pronoun is used with a preposition, the preposition can come before the relative pronoun (formal style) or at the end of the clause (informal style).
The tool **with which** the lock was forced open has not been found. (*formal*)
The magazine **that** my article was published **in** is on the table. (*informal*)
3. *That* and *who* cannot be used after a preposition; we use *which* and *whom* instead. *Whom* is considered formal.
The company **that** he works **for** is in serious financial trouble.
The company **for which** he works is in serious financial trouble.
The man **for whom** he works is an immigrant from Spain.
4. To show possession when referring to things, we can also use noun + *of which* or *that ... of*.
He made a film **whose title** / **the title of which** I've forgotten.
He made a film **that** I've forgotten **the title of**.
5. *Which* can refer to a whole situation that is described in the main clause.
The girl was obviously lying, **which** annoyed me immensely. (*which* = *the fact that the girl was lying*)
6. The words *whatever*, *whoever*, *whichever*, *wherever* and *whenever* can be used to replace relative pronouns. We use them to talk about people or things that are indefinite or unknown.
Take **whatever** you want from the boxes over there. (*anything that you want / it doesn't matter what*)
Why don't you just come over **whenever** you're ready? (*any time*)
7. *What* cannot be used as an ordinary relative pronoun after a noun or pronoun. *What* can replace a noun.
✗ We haven't got the wine glasses **what** you ordered.
✓ We haven't got the wine glasses **that** you ordered.
✓ We haven't got **what** you ordered. (*what* = *the thing[s] that*)

IDENTIFYING / ADDING TO RELATIVE CLAUSES

- For non-defining clauses, the following expressions of quantity can be added to the relative clause and used with *of whom*, *of which* and *of whose*:

all	both	either	half	much	none	several
any	each	few	many	neither	one	some

Paul has to attend two exhibitions, **both of which** are in London.

The Tudor buildings in Chester, **many of which** have been preserved, are popular tourist attractions.

Jonathan and Stephen, **neither of whom** studied horticulture, have designed a beautiful landscaped garden.

Other expressions of quantity and expressions using superlatives can be used in this way. For example:

<i>the first / second / of which / whom</i>	<i>the youngest of whom</i>	<i>three of which / whom</i>
<i>the last of which / whom</i>	<i>the majority of whom</i>	<i>a number of which / whom</i>

My friends, **the majority of whom** live in the city, don't own cars.

- Relative pronouns may combine with connectors and prepositions to make a reference more specific.

<i>during which</i>	<i>despite whom</i>	<i>at which point</i>	<i>in which case</i>	<i>in which event</i>
---------------------	---------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

They enjoyed an interesting lecture, **after which** they took a stroll in the university grounds.

We completely renovated the offices, **in addition to which** we installed a revolutionary security system.

We argued for about an hour, **at which point** I felt there was nothing left to say.

I waited until almost midnight, **by which time** all the passengers had disembarked.

REDUCED CLAUSES

- For defining clauses, we can omit *who*, *which* or *that* and the verb *to be*.

This hotel is the only one (that is) available near the conference site.

Someone (who is) not accustomed to air travel might find the takeoff disturbing.

- We can also reduce the relative clause by using a participle clause. We replace the relative pronoun and the verb with a participle.

Keiko was the name of the whale **starring in the film, *Free Willy***. (= *that starred in*)

PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

Participle clauses, like relative clauses, can give extra information or describe the time, cause or result of the information in the main clause. The subject of the participle clause is usually the same as the subject of the main clause.

time	Approaching the roundabout , we saw the school on the left-hand side. (= <i>As / When we approached ...</i>) Opening the letter , she found she'd been accepted to the college of her choice. (= <i>When she opened / On opening ...</i>) Having checked her email carefully, she sent it. (<i>perfect participle = After she had checked ...</i>)
reason	Not being qualified , she is unlikely to be promoted. (= <i>Because she is not qualified ...</i>) Not having been invited to the wedding, I didn't send a gift. (<i>perfect passive participle = As / Because I had not been invited ...</i>)
condition	Washed by hand , the sweater will not lose its shape. (= <i>If it is washed by hand ...</i>)
result	School teachers went on strike, leaving many young children without adequate supervision. (= <i>As a result of the strike, many children were left ...</i>)

Notes

- The -ing participle** has an active meaning and does not only refer to the present. The tense of a participle clause is usually obvious from the verb in the main clause.
 - Assuming** you like meat, I'd heartily recommend the restaurant. (= *I assume ...*)
 - The man pushed to the front of the queue, **waving** his passport and ticket. (= *he was waving his passport ...*)
- The past participle** has a passive meaning and does not only refer to the past.
 - Properly maintained**, a car like that could last you a lifetime. (= *If it is properly maintained ...*)
 - Abandoned** by his friends, the boy had to find his own way home. (= *After he had been abandoned ...*)
- The perfect participle** is used to emphasise that one thing happened before another.
 - Having enjoyed** the meal, he left a large tip. (*active*)
 - Having been given** an assignment at work, she decided to put off her holiday. (*passive*)
- Participles can have their own subjects.
 - Bags packed**, we stood at the door and waited for Jim to pick us up.

PRACTICE

A. Write one sentence using a relative clause to combine the sentences without repetition. Make any necessary changes.

1. Simon Wells is a director. He made *The Time Machine*.

Simon Wells is the director who made *The Time Machine*.

2. Minoan Crete was a prosperous civilisation. It was probably destroyed by a tidal wave.

.....

3. The bank charged me £50. It was unfair of them to charge me £50.

.....

4. The school is run by a Mrs Denton. Her husband was once mayor.

.....

5. We visited a house. My grandfather had been born in that house.

.....

6. The detectives finally caught up with the suspect. They had been searching for him for months.

.....

7. Over 40 species of spiders live in this region. Many of them are poisonous.

.....

8. The letter was addressed to a girl. The girl doesn't live here any more.

.....

B. Complete the sentences with the phrases below.

**both of whom • several of which • on top of which • most of whose • in which case
in spite of which • at which time • wherever • about which • a number of whom**

1. This new collection of Hardy's short stories, haven't been published for 50 years, is sure to capture the imagination.

2. You may find that the site doesn't accept your password, you should contact our support desk.

3. The exhibition focuses on 18th-century landscape painters, names will be unfamiliar to the non-expert.

4. I shared a room with Karen and Julia, talked about their boyfriends constantly.

5. The two painters first met in 1965, they established a friendship.

6. The latest mobile phones can pick up a signal you go.

7. There were over 500 entrants, had submitted multiple entries.

8. He sustained an injury in the first lap, he set a new record.

9. The interviewer asked me questions on subjects I knew nothing.

10. I paid a fine for riding without a helmet, I had to report to the station the next day to prove I owned one.

C. Underline any words in the sentence that can be omitted.

1. Is there anything that I can do to help?

2. Jim has found a rare coin which is worth \$20,000.

3. The number of people that have been invited won't fit comfortably into the dining room.

4. Was there any food that was left over after the party?

5. Anyone who is interested in taking part should call the secretary.

6. The book that was written by my friend won a literary prize.

7. The hotel which the Simpsons recommended to us was a big disappointment.

8. The success rate, which has been estimated at 30%, looks set to improve with this new method.



D. Complete each sentence with one suitable word.

1. The teachers, many of live far away, can't stay for tonight's meeting.
2. There was a scene that showed a murder in detail, at which I turned the DVD off.
3. The interview panel was interested to find out I had left my previous job.
4. It was Christmas we met, not summer.
5. If I was rich, I would buy I wanted.
6. There were several vacancies in the paper, none which interested me.
7. What's the name of the boy mother does so much fundraising for the school?

E. Circle the correct answer.

1. Consumed / Consuming on a daily basis, VitaPlus will soon boost your energy levels.
2. Not owned / owning a car, I have to use public transport to get to work.
3. The river burst its banks, flooded / flooding many nearby villages.
4. Having packed / Packing, Harry loaded his luggage into the car and set off for the airport.
5. Criticising / Criticised for his wooden performance, the actor felt he had let down the rest of the cast.
6. Anyone submitting / submitted entries to the competition must be resident in the UK.
7. When discussing / discussed a client's financial problems, try to be as sensitive as possible.
8. Hair washing / washed, I set about finding something suitable to wear.

F. Complete the text with participles formed using the verbs in brackets.

Laughter is the Best Medicine

Each week Hilary Day, also (1) (know) as Doctor Doppit, visits Southampton's General Hospital. (2) (carry) balloons and magic tricks rather than a stethoscope, she administers her own special kind of medicine. (3) (employ) by the Theodora Children's Trust, Hilary brings fun and laughter onto the children's wards, (4) (make) a hospital stay a less difficult experience for the young patients. (5) (study) drama at university, Hilary later became interested in children's theatre. (6) (see) an advert for a clown doctor, she knew she had found the ideal job. Before taking up the position, Hilary had to complete four weeks of training, (7) (instruct) in balloon modelling and magic tricks as well as (8) (take) basic courses in children's psychology, hygiene and infection control.

According to a spokesperson for the Theodora Children's Trust, hospitalized children, (9) (exclude) from their normal day-to-day routine and the family environment, are likely to be frightened and homesick. Clown doctors like Hilary have a valuable part to play in helping them forget their problems for a while. Humour, it has been seen, has a positive impact on health. In fact, certain chemicals (10) (produce) in the body by laughter have even been shown to act as natural painkillers. Laughter really is the best medicine, it seems.



TEXT FEATURES

A. SPELLING: homophones (See Spelling Appendix, page 220.)

Circle the correct answer. Then explain what the other word in each pair means.

1. It's not polite to stare / stair at other people.
2. The male / mail seahorse takes care of its young.
3. The hole / whole programme was devoted to the scandal.
4. The pilot was the soul / sole survivor of the plane / plain crash.
5. I need a new pair / pear of shoes.
6. The keys / quays were there / their when I left the house.
7. You may be write / right, but I see / sea things differently.
8. My aunt gave me a peace / piece of advice to warn / worn me.

B. PUNCTUATION: question marks / exclamation marks / full stops (See Punctuation Appendix, page 220.)

Should each of the sentences below end with a question mark, an exclamation mark or a full stop?

1. It's absolutely the worst sitcom I've ever seen !
2. Would you like to cast your eye over my report
3. Each contestant had to say why she wanted to win the title
4. Will you stop interfering
5. Wherever there is injustice, Amnesty International fights for human rights
6. Janet socialises a lot, doesn't she

C. COHESION AND COHERENCE

One / ones is used to refer back to a countable noun.

Several courses are available. The most popular **ones** are always oversubscribed.

One / ones can be left out after **which** or superlatives.

The discussion covered the schemes for improving the canteen and the library.

However there was no agreement over **which** (one) was **the most important** (one).

Read the following article about log cabin holidays. What do the words in bold refer to? Write the answers below. Then circle the words in bold that can be left out.

AUTUMN HOLIDAYS

The idea of an outdoor holiday in mid-autumn is not (1) **one** that people in Britain would relish, simply because the autumn months are some of the coldest (2) **ones** in this part of the world. However, an autumn holiday spent at a wooden cabin in the woods might be (3) **one** with more appeal for Brits – even (4) **ones** averse to the cold.

There are many types of cabins, and rental prices obviously vary depending on which (5) **one** you choose. But whichever (6) **one** you decide to go for, you're sure to be delighted with it. The wooden cabins are charmingly like (7) **ones** you might see in a children's storybook. They sit deep in lush forest, romantic little buildings that evoke childhood memories of our favourite tales, the (8) **ones** that parents have been telling children generation after generation. But unlike the (9) **ones** in fairytales, these cabins come equipped with various modern features. Some of the most common (10) **ones** are: full central heating, a fully equipped kitchen, and bathroom facilities just like the (11) **ones** in any modern dwelling.

1.an idea.....
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
11.

A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.**Advice on the Net**

A new online service is now available, (1) should reassure any parents concerned about (2) children watching too much TV or those (3) believe that the Internet represents a threat to children's safety. Some TV shows, including soap operas, are known to be popular with young people. (4) watched certain of these, the viewers are then referred to a website (5) they can get information on issues raised on screen (6) as drugs, eating disorders or unwanted pregnancies. Internet sites run by TV channels are important (7) it would be irresponsible for the channel to raise serious health issues without providing a means (8) finding further information and advice. Soap operas touch people and make them think, and such sites offer a safe place (9) teenagers to ask questions without the risk of appearing ignorant. Knowing (10) young people rely on their peers for advice, (11) than their parents or doctor, sites (12) careful not to be judgemental or to tell people (13) to do. A site offering quality information and a chance for young people to chat about their problems (14) they feel the need is more likely to attract the attention of (15) who need it than more traditional sources of advice.

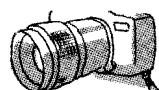
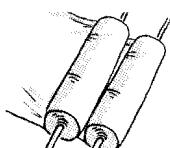
B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. There are many 20th-century paintings in her collection, the most valuable is a Picasso.
 - a. that
 - b. which
 - c. of that
 - d. of which
2. to throw a party, I set about drawing up a guest list.
 - a. Decided
 - b. Had decided
 - c. After decided
 - d. Having decided
3. "Did you buy a new cellphone?"
"Unfortunately, the store didn't have I wanted."
 - a. that
 - b. which
 - c. what
 - d. that what
4. "How come you didn't find a jacket for Saturday's party?"
"Well, all of I liked didn't fit."
 - a. ones
 - b. the ones
 - c. jackets
 - d. jackets which
5. I stayed at a great hotel I can't recall at the moment.
 - a. whose name
 - b. the name of
 - c. what its name
 - d. which is its name
6. If it , this alarm will deter burglars.
 - a. carefully installing
 - b. carefully installed
 - c. is carefully installed
 - d. has carefully installed
7. , James did not attend the wedding.
 - a. Having not invited
 - b. Being not invited
 - c. Not inviting
 - d. Not being invited
8. The ideas in this essay are not particularly original.
 - a. discussed
 - b. are discussed
 - c. which are discussing
 - d. discussing

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Label the pictures with the correct words below.

dome • arch • pottery • fabric • lens • sculpture • column



1.

2.

3.

4.



5.

6.

7.

B. What is it? Match the words in colour with the examples.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------|---|
| 1. mural | | a. a photo you took of your friends on the beach |
| 2. ornament | | b. a picture in a children's storybook |
| 3. snapshot | | c. a painting covering a whole wall of a youth club |
| 4. abstract art | | d. a painting of Saint George on the wall in an Orthodox church |
| 5. artefact | | e. a sword found on an archaeological site |
| 6. illustration | | f. a china model of a small animal |
| 7. icon | | g. a painting consisting of lines and patterns in bright colours |
| 8. portrait | | h. a painting of Queen Victoria painted to commemorate 20 years on the throne |

C. Read the article. Match the words in colour to the meanings given below.

GET STARTED WITH ART

Have you ever said, "I wish I could draw"? Well, with the right instruction, anyone can learn to bring their ideas to life on paper or canvas. Whatever materials you use, whether pencil or crayon, oil paints or watercolours, all you need is a little inspiration. Start by sketching your picture in light pencil so that you can erase anything you want to change. If you fancy trying your hand at painting a landscape of a picturesque place you know, it's best to go outside, but you don't need to set up an easel and take your paints with you — your sketchbook will do. With oils, use a palette for mixing the exact shade you want. If you want to start off with portraits but don't have a live model, you could try copying photographs. Photos are useful because they capture a particular expression. Nobody expects a beginner to produce a masterpiece — the important thing is that you enjoy yourself. You might discover that you have more artistic flair than you thought.

- kind of fabric used for painting on
- sudden arrival of a creative idea
- make a quick drawing without details
- remove marks from paper, etc.
- picture of an outdoor scene
- wooden frame for supporting a picture while it is being painted
- board used by a painter for mixing colours
- particular kind of colour
- very high quality work (of art, music, writing, etc.)
- natural talent



BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

4. PHRASAL VERBS up

Replace the words in colour with the following phrasal verbs. Make any necessary changes.

touch up ◊ hang up ◊ wind up ◊ follow up ◊ draw up ◊ pick up
mix up ◊ ease up on ◊ cover up ◊ brush up on

1. The editor prepared a list of illustrations she wanted to commission for the book.**drew up**....
2. Marion will need to improve her computer skills if she wants a job in journalism.
3. Not even models have perfect bodies – their photos in magazines have been subtly changed.
4. I know Kevin makes mistakes but he is new – perhaps we should not be so harsh on him.
5. The politician was accused of trying to conceal a major scandal.
6. As soon as I heard the recorded message, I put the phone down.
7. Sales have been slow, but the market for contemporary art is expected to improve soon.
8. The shop confused our holiday snaps with somebody else's.
9. It's getting late. We'd better bring the meeting to an end.
10. If you give us the details, we'll investigate your complaint further.

5. COLLOCATIONS Choose the verb that combines with the nouns below.

show ◊ mount ◊ catch ◊ focus ◊ draw ◊ pose ◊ read ◊ take ◊ bear ◊ restore

1. **take** 

an interest
a photo
control

6.

a comparison
a conclusion
attention to

2. **take** 

a photograph
a campaign
an exhibition

7.

a grudge
a signature
a resemblance

3. **take** 

order
a painting
confidence

8.

a map
someone's mind
music

4. **take** 

someone's eye
someone's attention
a glimpse

9.

paintings
kindness
your feelings

5. **take** 

one's energy
attention
a camera

10.

for a photo
a problem
a question

C. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

commission
omission
mission

likewise
likeness
likelihood

visible
audible
tangible

contemporary
temporary
contemptuous

represent
indicate
demonstrate

remainder
ruins
leftovers

1. a. The architect was given a to design the new museum.
b. It was a serious not to mention the name of the designer in the article.
c. The arts minister sees it as her to make museums more accessible to the general public.
2. a. The portrait depicting the duchess was a perfect
b. Gran took up pottery when she retired and she has advised all her friends to do
c. There isn't much that you will make a living as an illustrator if you can't draw quickly.
3. a. While an arts centre would be nice, the town council prefers to invest in projects which bring more benefits to local inhabitants.
b. A dark figure is just in the background of the painting.
c. Although she was shouting, her voice was barely over the noise of the crowd.
4. a. The artist has always been of painters who have not studied at art school.
b. The gallery mostly exhibits art – nothing painted before about 1990.
c. This weekend is the last chance for visitors to see the exhibition of artefacts from Tutankhamen's tomb.
5. a. Our teacher how to use a potter's wheel.
b. The cover illustration a scene from the beginning of the story.
c. Please which shade you require by ticking the appropriate box on the order form.
6. a. Archaeologists uncovered a beautiful mosaic in the of a Roman villa.
b. The instructor spent the first two classes explaining the basic techniques but the of the course was purely practical.
c. The only choice for lunch was from the previous night's dinner party.

D. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with adjectives formed from the words below. Add negative prefixes in brackets where possible. Make any necessary changes.

access	archaeology	cure	history	prefer	technique
achieve	astronomy	digest	hypothesis	psychology	theatre
adapt	bear	drink	hysteria	reason	theory
admire	believe	economy	knowledge	recognise	treat
adore	comedy	flex	mathematics	rely	vision
afford	compare	forgive	memory	renew	wash
analysis	comprehend	geography	permit	resist	
apply	conceive	grammar	philosophy	respect	

-able

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

-ical

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

-ible

(in)accessible
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

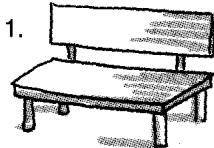
2. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Magic Language CD-Rom

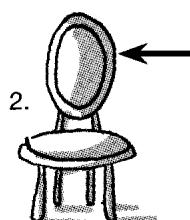
- With Magic Language CD-ROMs, a second language is (1) **ACCESS**
 to all at the touch of a button or the click of a mouse.
- Our (2) combination of DVD, animation and recordings make new words (3) **COMPARE**
MEMORY
- All new (4) structures are introduced clearly in simple conversations which are easily (5) **GRAMMAR**
COMPREHEND
- Magic Language is (6) enough to be used by complete beginners as well as by those who are already quite (7) **FLEX**
KNOW
- The program assesses your performance and selects activities accordingly. Click on the grammar-extra icon if you would like a more (8) approach or choose syntax-extra to look at a text in a more (9) way. **THEORY**
ANALYSE
- At only £59.99, Magic Language CDs are an (10) way to learn a completely new language or to brush up on one you may have studied at school years ago. **AFFORD**

RELATED WORDS lines, shapes and textures

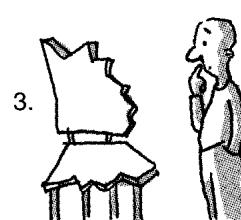
1. Tick the best word to describe each picture.



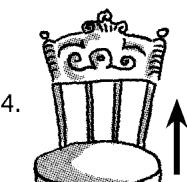
- circular
 rectangular
 triangular



- oval
 square
 round



- spiral
 diagonal
 jagged



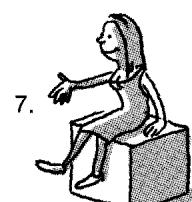
- curved
 horizontal
 vertical



- smooth
 rough
 furry



- sphere
 cylinder



- cone
 pyramid
 cube

2. Answer the questions using adjectives from Exercise 1.

1. Describe the shape and texture of three objects in your room.

.....

2. What kind of pictures or doodles do you like to draw when you're bored?

.....

F. METAPHOR AND MEANING

Words and expressions connected with light and colour are often used to describe hope or happiness, while darkness is often associated with unhappiness and despair.

1. Mark the following words L (light) or D (dark).

black	bright	gloomy	ray	shadow	twinkle
bleak	darken	radiant	rosy	shine	

2. Choose the best answer to each question.

1. How did Gillian react when she opened her present?
a. She looked on the bright side. b. Her face lit up.
2. The sales figures are good, aren't they?
a. Yes, the prospects look bright. b. Yes, things look bleak.
3. Did Emily seem happy?
a. Yes, she was radiant. b. Yes, she was gloomy.
4. Are they likely to find any more survivors?
a. There's a twinkle in their eye. b. There's still a ray of hope.
5. The prestigious art prize was won by a 21-year-old!
a. There's a shadow hanging over him. b. He has a rosy future ahead of him.
6. How did Professor Green react to the criticism?
a. His face darkened. b. His face was shining.
7. Harriet's a real optimist, isn't she?
a. Yes, she casts a shadow on everything. b. Yes, she sees everything through rose-coloured glasses.

G. MULTIPLE MEANINGS light picture shape

Match the words or phrases in colour to their meanings.

- | | | |
|--|-------|-----------------------------|
| 1. When Jack told me about his voluntary work, I saw him in a new light. | | a. imagine |
| 2. My shirt has faded – it's much lighter than it used to be. | | b. describes |
| 3. Some interesting new clues have come to light. | | c. see things differently |
| 4. Jodie always makes light of her problems. | | d. fit |
| 5. I can't picture myself looking after children! | | e. not treat seriously |
| 6. Oh, I get the picture – he's trying to cover up his mistakes. | | f. paler |
| 7. The article paints a picture of a world without pollution. | | g. understand the situation |
| 8. A twice-weekly workout will help you keep in shape. | | h. become known |
| 9. His experiences in Africa shaped his political ideas. | | i. develop |
| 10. The plan began to take shape in my mind during the summer. | | j. greatly influenced |

H. IN OTHER WORDS: expressions with go

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the expressions below.

go on and on • go cheap • all go • have a go • go with
get going • make a go of • going strong • goes to show • to go

1. The opening night party was still at 3 am.
continuing successfully
2. The curtain fabric the sofa at all – they are different shades of red. clash
3. We've got to on the display – the exhibition is next week. start working
4. Those ornaments were at the fair. inexpensive



5. They about the design until we were tired of hearing about it. kept talking and we were bored
6. It just that talent isn't everything. proves a general point
7. There are three weeks before the exhibition opens. remaining
8. I'd like to at pottery but I don't know where they have classes. try
9. It's been at the gallery this week – I'm exhausted! incredibly busy
10. Apparently Helen and Greg are their ceramics business. becoming successful

EXAM PRACTICE

A Choose the word that best completes the sentence.

1. Despite having eaten a large meal, I found the chocolate pudding
 - a. unforgivable
 - b. irresistible
 - c. inflexible
 - d. unreasonable
2. The doctor assured us that the condition was fully
 - a. treatable
 - b. permissible
 - c. renewable
 - d. washable
3. Can you think of any reason why Jane would want to drop out of college?
 - a. preferable
 - b. adaptable
 - c. conceivable
 - d. digestible
4. There's no way we can afford to eat at Harvey's – the prices are
 - a. astronomical
 - b. theatrical
 - c. uneconomical
 - d. reasonable
5. Are the new rules to everyone?
 - a. applicable
 - b. permissible
 - c. respectable
 - d. preferable
6. The puppies in the shop window were so we stood and watched them for ages.
 - a. adorable
 - b. psychological
 - c. comparable
 - d. bearable

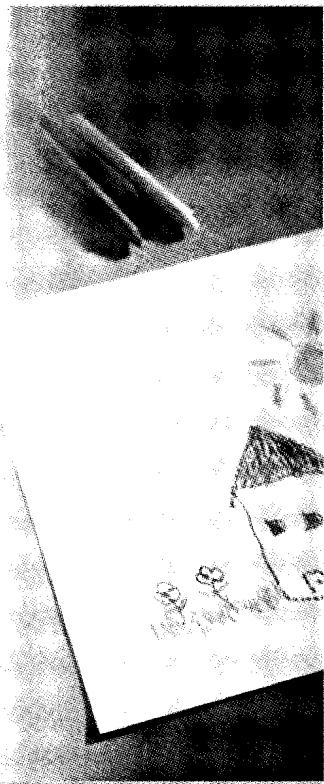
B. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. We were quite upset but Dan attempted to make of the situation.
I'm putting the plant near the window because it needs a lot of
The evidence did not come to until after the trial.
2. The new show has painted quite a bleak of the life of immigrants in this country.
I wish somebody would put us in the about the office redecoration.
A photographer is coming to the school tomorrow to take everyone's
3. Terry keeps in by jogging before work twice a week.
The swimming pool is in the of a rectangle and has a diving board at one end.
The idea first began to take in Allison's mind when she read about his success.
4. The curator our attention to the texture of the paint on the canvas.
Lindsey not only wrote the stories, she all the illustrations, too.
The artist's agent up a contract guaranteeing the sculptor at least 50% of the sale price.
5. Whose idea was it to play tennis today when it's obviously going to rain?
After winning the designer's award, he has a future ahead of him in fashion.
The columns in these ancient temples were painted red and blue originally.

C. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

ART THERAPY

Early psychologists regarded their patient's dreams as the work of the subconscious, and, recognising that dreams consist almost entirely of visual images, they discussed what they might (1) One drawback of traditional therapy is the problem of translating these images into words. Art therapy gets around this problem by having patients produce paintings, drawings or sculptures to make their innermost thoughts (2) The process of creation itself may bring (3) benefits for the participants, as it is a safe way to express strong and sometimes destructive feelings. Simply making something helps (4) self-confidence to those with low self-esteem. The finished product is not important, but the therapist may choose to (5) the session with a discussion of the significance of what the patient (or client) has made. Art therapists need to be highly trained because they often work with people with (6) problems. It is a particularly (7) way to help children (8) with trauma or loss because they generally find it easier to express themselves through (9) than through words. Art therapy is a fast-growing (10) because its techniques are (11) not only in schools and clinics, but also in businesses – anywhere, in fact, where people might benefit from (12) themselves in a new light.



- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. A specialise | B pose | C demonstrate | D represent |
| 2. A visible | B diagonal | C credible | D digestible |
| 3. A light | B straight | C tangible | D bright |
| 4. A focus | B restore | C pick up | D brush up |
| 5. A follow up | B hang up | C go on | D light up |
| 6. A conceivable | B hypothetical | C psychological | D hysterical |
| 7. A reasonable | B effective | C inventive | D achievable |
| 8. A deal | B draw | C ease | D go |
| 9. A lines | B spheres | C lights | D pictures |
| 10. A field | B place | C aspect | D domain |
| 11. A contemporary | B knowledgeable | C applicable | D flexible |
| 12. A taking | B showing | C going | D seeing |

D. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Trudy is such an optimist – even in the most difficult situations. **SIDE**
Trudy manages to even in the most difficult situations.
2. Harry is the spitting image of his mother! **RESEMBLANCE**
Harry his mother.
3. I once saw Madonna – just for a second – as she got into her limo. **GLIMPSE**
I once as she got into her limo.
4. It is important that parents be interested in their child's progress. **TAKE**
Parents should their child's progress.
5. You should never confuse the varnish with the paint remover. **MIX**
Make sure the varnish and the paint remover.
6. The record attendance at the exhibition proves that people are still interested in the visual arts. **SHOW**
The record attendance at the exhibition just that people are still interested in the visual arts.

- A. WORD FORMATION** Use the word in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

PABLO PICASSO

Pablo Picasso (1881-1973) is generally considered to be the foremost figure of 20th-century art. Trained by his father, an art professor, he was a (1) skilled draftsman and painter from an early age, and went on to produce an incredible number and range of works, including (2) drawings, ceramics and designs for (3) productions. Picasso's works all show great (4) and he was an (5) figure for his contemporaries as well as later artists.

TECHNIQUE
SCULPT
THEATRE
ORIGIN
INFLUENCE

It is customary to discuss Picasso's works in terms of a series of periods. In his Blue Period (1901-1904), Picasso's paintings depict social outcasts, such as beggars and prostitutes, and these melancholy paintings are (6) by the use of the colour blue in (7) shades. In the Rose Period, beginning around 1904, Picasso's palette (8) to include pinks and beige, and his choice of subjects also showed more warmth and optimism. Breaking with traditional ideas of artistic harmony, Picasso went on to develop the Cubist style, in (9) with his close friend Georges Braque. His early cubist pictures show the (10) of primitive African statues, with figures with mask-like faces and flat, angular shapes.

CHARACTER
VARY
BRIGHT
COLLABORATE
INSPIRE

- 3. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. The Thorntons didn't feel that either of the properties they viewed suited their needs. **NEITHER**
The Thorntons viewed two suited their needs.
2. I didn't know what to expect at the first rehearsal as I hadn't read the script. **HAVING**
Not no idea what to expect at the first rehearsal.
3. Amy didn't realise how noisy her neighbourhood was until she moved away. **MOVING**
Only realise how noisy her neighbourhood had been.
4. A list of recommendations is still being prepared by the committee. **DRAWING**
The committee their list of recommendations.
5. Something needs to be done to make consumers feel confident about our services again. **RESTORE**
Action must be in our services.
6. My attitude towards Graham changed when I found out about his past. **LIGHT**
I after I found out about his past.
7. Despite the difficulties, they have every intention of working hard to make the restaurant a success. **GO**
It won't be easy but they are determined the restaurant.
8. The young pupils gave the computer program their full attention for the entire lesson. **ENGROSSED**
The young pupils the computer program for the entire lesson.
9. Lily is going to help me set up the equipment – she promised me. **WORD**
Lily she would help me set up the equipment.
10. The museum has difficulty ensuring that the painting is secure when they exhibit it. **POSES**
Security the museum when the painting is exhibited.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. Students should be told they have been rejected by a college.
 - a. which reason
 - b. the reason for
 - c. for that reason
 - d. the reason why
2. The author, remains a secret, must have inside knowledge of the government.
 - a. whose identity
 - b. of whom his identity
 - c. the identity of which
 - d. who his identity
3. The practical component lasts six months, trainees will be able to demonstrate what they have learned.
 - a. at that time
 - b. during which time
 - c. the time when
 - d. whenever
4. I can't remember the name of the hospital
 - a. in where I was born
 - b. that I was born
 - c. I was born in
 - d. where I was born in
5. "Did you get to speak to Ms. Smith yesterday?"
" her during a meeting, I left her a message."
 - a. Having to disturb
 - b. Not disturbed
 - c. Wanted not to disturb
 - d. Not wanting to disturb
6. "Ralph is finding life stressful at the moment."
" in a similar situation myself, I really sympathize."
 - a. When I was
 - b. I was also
 - c. Having been
 - d. That I have been
7. to last a lifetime, this watch is also stylish.
 - a. Designed
 - b. Having designed
 - c. Designing
 - d. To design
8. "This computer program would be a great way to brush up on my Italian, wouldn't it?"
" with your pronunciation."
 - a. It was because it can't help
 - b. What it can't do is help
 - c. All it can't help is
 - d. The thing that it can't help
9. Over 10,000 people have already volunteered the Olympic games.
 - a. for helping run
 - b. helping to run
 - c. to help running
 - d. to help run
10. , we'd have found the place easily.
 - a. But for bringing the map
 - b. Had we brought the map
 - c. If we should bring the map
 - d. Were we bringing the map

VOCABULARY

11. Joanna has a real for interior design – her home is stunning!
 - a. likeness
 - b. flair
 - c. prospect
 - d. popularity
12. The portrait is amazing – the artist has Peter's expression of amused tolerance perfectly.
 - a. captured
 - b. capsized
 - c. conceived
 - d. compiled
13. The relatives of the victims are a campaign to ban the sale of all guns.
 - a. raising
 - b. focusing
 - c. bearing
 - d. mounting
14. The best thing about being a freelance designer is that the working hours are quite
 - a. tangible
 - b. audible
 - c. flexible
 - d. accessible
15. The curtain fabric is beige, with brown stripes.
 - a. vertical
 - b. spherical
 - c. furry
 - d. analytical
16. We followed the instructions carefully so we couldn't why the video camera wouldn't work.
 - a. single out
 - b. figure out
 - c. boil down
 - d. follow up
17. In an attempt to prevent graffiti, the local youth group painted a huge on the wall of the community center.
 - a. mural
 - b. fabric
 - c. easel
 - d. shade
18. Unfortunately, the contributions were just
 - a. an ounce of help
 - b. a slim chance
 - c. a drop in the ocean
 - d. a twinkle in the eye
19. Your rental agreement states that no pets are allowed in the building.
 - a. credibly
 - b. explicitly
 - c. mildly
 - d. decently
20. With rising costs and falling demand, the future for the car plant looks
 - a. jagged
 - b. abstract
 - c. arid
 - d. bleak

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

In order to appreciate Egyptian art, it is necessary to understand the purpose for which paintings and sculptures were initially created. The Egyptians believed in life after death, so the body was (1) and put in a pyramid together with possessions (2) in the afterlife. Here they also (3) objects belonging to the person to make sure that this person would continue to live (4), as well as pictures of servants to accompany him or her.

(5) mattered about such pictures was ensuring completeness and clarity, and to do (6), strict rules were developed for how real life was to be (7).

Egyptian artists did not (8) nature as it appeared to them in life at any given moment. Each element of a picture was drawn from the angle (9) which could be depicted most completely. (10), in a drawing of a human figure, the head was drawn sideways, in profile, but the eye, which is best seen from in front, was drawn from that viewpoint. The body and arms were shown from the front, whereas the lower (11) were drawn from the side, to best (12) their movement. In each case, it was (13) was considered most important about each part of the body (14) was shown. Rules determined almost every (15) of painting. The size of a human figure depended on his or her (16) in society, not physical height, and women were painted a (17) shade than men. These conventions remained much the same for (18) 3,000 years and gave Egyptian art a clearly recognizable style – (19) of order and austere harmony that (20) little resemblance to today's art.

1. a. restored
b. preserved
c. transplanted
d. settled
2. a. wanting
b. thought
c. needed
d. going
3. a. placed
b. posed
c. sketched
d. indicated
4. a. forever
b. up
c. admirably
d. there
5. a. It
b. This
c. Nothing
d. What
6. a. pictures
b. this
c. one
d. it
7. a. focused
b. shaped
c. represented
d. commissioned
8. a. sketch
b. invent
c. oversee
d. cast
9. a. and
b. that
c. from
d. by
10. a. Thus
b. Where
c. However
d. Visibly
11. a. arms
b. ones
c. limbs
d. pictures
12. a. recognize
b. demonstrate
c. for
d. do
13. a. that
b. illustration
c. whatever
d. also
14. a. it
b. that
c. who
d. what
15. a. one
b. aspect
c. kind
d. outlook
16. a. ratings
b. history
c. status
d. mission
17. a. lighter
b. smoother
c. smaller
d. milder
18. a. vertically
b. lasting
c. roughly
d. timely
19. a. which
b. not
c. out
d. one
20. a. bears
b. catches
c. draws
d. takes

Connectors and Conjunctions

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Choose the correct function for the words in colour.

1. A mistake was made entering the information into the computer. **Consequently**, the hotel was overbooked for the conference.
 - a. expressing result
 - b. concluding
2. I didn't really fancy dessert. **Besides**, everything looked so fattening.
 - a. giving a reason
 - b. adding an idea
3. Technology, such as video conferencing, is revolutionizing the way business is **concluded**.
 - a. explaining
 - b. giving an example
4. The letter was simplified **so as to** avoid confusion.
 - a. expressing purpose
 - b. expressing result
5. Several countries are interested in exploring Antarctica on account of its rich mineral resources.
 - a. giving an example
 - b. giving a reason
6. **In short**, the long-term future of the company looks assured.
 - a. concluding
 - b. showing contrast
7. Ordinary fans can now have a say in the club's future. That is, any member can stand for election to the general committee.
 - a. expressing purpose
 - b. explaining
8. The country's crime rate is very low. **Nevertheless**, visitors should be cautious as pickpockets target tourists.
 - a. showing contrast
 - b. adding an idea

B. Circle the correct answer.

1. Although / **In spite of** the good weather, there is a distinct possibility some climbers will not reach the summit.
2. The government has announced plans to reduce taxes. In addition to / **Furthermore**, they intend to cut the cost of mortgages.
3. Sandy has taken on extra hours **so as to** / so that she can supplement her income.
4. They own a flat in central London, as well as / **moreover** a villa in Spain.
5. She's incredibly sociable, while / **yet** she appears to have few close friends.
6. Contrary to / **In contrast to** other museums, here the majority of the exhibits are no more than 20 years old.
7. **As** / For we were unable to cook, we went out to dinner that night.
8. Nobody is allowed to enter the laboratory **except** / apart those with security clearance.
9. The property will fetch a high price owing to / **seeing** that its splendid location.
10. The virus is **so** / such infectious that medical staff must take special precautions.
11. There are many reasons why smoking should be banned in restaurants. **At first** / **First of all**, non-smokers should not be exposed to this health risk.
12. Switzerland is known for two food products, for instance / **namely** its chocolate and its cheese.

Score: / 20

RULES

Conjunctions link clauses that are related in meaning. Other words (like adverbs and prepositions) may also be used to link words and phrases.

- We can use linking words (*and, or, but, nor, then, yet, etc.*) to join words, phrases and clauses that are similar or parallel grammatically in a sentence.
His attitude was curious, **yet** respectful. (*joining two adjectives*)
- Some conjunctions join a subordinate or dependent clause to a main clause (e.g., *although, because, so that, even if*). If the subordinate clause comes at the beginning of the sentence, it is followed by a comma.
Although he had few formal qualifications, he was clearly well read.
- Some linking words modify a whole sentence or link two sentences together. They are often followed by a comma.
We try to encourage initiative in our employees. **However**, not everyone is willing to take responsibility.
- Some conjunctions have two parts (e.g., *both ... and, either ... or, not only ... but also*). However, they still link parallel structures such as two-verb phrases.
Not only did he arrive late **but** he **also** failed the exam.

ADDING INFORMATION

- **Furthermore / Moreover / In addition / What's more** + sentence (formal)
- **Besides / Anyway / In any case / On top of that** + sentence (informal)
- **In addition to / Besides / Apart from / As well as** + noun / gerund
- **too / also / as well / still**

The city holds many high-quality cultural events. **Moreover**, the vast majority of them are free.

I can't afford a holiday. **Besides**, I'm too busy to travel now.

In addition to the art museum, there are several galleries **as well as** small exhibitions by local artists.

Italy sounds great but a trip to Greece would be fantastic **too**.

SHOWING CAUSE / REASON

- **since / as / because / seeing that / on the grounds that** + subject + verb
- **because of / due to / owing to / on account of / as a result of** + noun
- **so / therefore / hence / thus / as a result / consequently / in consequence** + subject + verb
- **such + (adjective) + noun + that + sentence**
- **so + adjective / adverb + that + sentence**
- **so many / few / much / little + noun + that + sentence**
- **so + adjective + a + noun + that + sentence** (formal)

Since it is snowing heavily, flights have been cancelled.

The plan was rejected **on the grounds that** it exceeded the budget.

Owing to the strike, all trains have been cancelled.
Sales fell **as a result of** the price increase.

There was thick fog, **so** outgoing flights were delayed.
The business has grown. **Therefore**, we have to look for larger premises.

It was **such a good bargain that** we bought it on the spot.
The audience reacted **so enthusiastically that** we gave an encore.

She has **so many friends that** she is never lonely.
It was **so moving a speech that** it will remain in my memory forever.

EXPRESSING PURPOSE

- **so / so that + modal**
- **to / in order (not) to / so as (not) to + bare infinitive**
- **for fear that / lest + subject + verb**
for fear of + gerund (formal, = *to avoid*)

I took a taxi **so that** I **would** arrive at work on time.
They risked their lives **so that** we **might** live in safety.

She took a taxi **in order to** **arrive** at work on time.
She kept quiet **for fear that** they'd laugh at her accent.
She kept quiet **for fear of** **being** laughed at.

Note

Not cannot be used with **to** on its own for a negative purpose.

He slammed on the brakes **not** to hit the pedestrian. X

He slammed on the brakes **so as not to** hit the pedestrian. ✓

CONCESSION AND CONTRAST

- *although / even though / though / even if / in spite of the fact that* + subject + verb
- *despite / in spite of* + noun / pronoun / gerund / the fact that
- *no matter / whatever* (= it doesn't matter)
- *however / nonetheless / nevertheless*
- *however + adjective / adverb + subject + may*
- *on the one hand ... on the other (hand)* + subject + verb (two sentences)
- *while / whereas* + subject + verb
- *still / yet* + subject + verb
- *contrary to + noun* (used for emphasis, often with *popular opinion*)
- *in contrast to + noun*
- *on the contrary* (between two sentences)
- *instead / even so / all the same / just the same*
- *given that* (= although, if we consider that)

Although he is inexperienced, he does a good job.
He is trying hard to succeed **even though** he is new at the job.
In spite of having little talent, he manages to sell his paintings.
No matter what you decide, please inform us.
The business lost money. **However**, it won't go bankrupt.
However difficult it may seem, you will survive this.
On the one hand, London is expensive. **On the other (hand)**, it's an exciting place to live.
Tom found the lecture boring, **whereas** we enjoyed it.
Designer jeans are terribly expensive; **yet** people buy them.
Contrary to popular opinion, he is not a millionaire.

In contrast to the rest of the city, the old town is always quiet.
"Isn't Australia cold at this time of year?" "**On the contrary**, it's summer there now."
I feel better. **All the same**, I'll take it easy for a few days.
Given that she never had any training, she plays well.

SEQUENCING IDEAS

- *first / first of all / firstly / at first / to begin with / in the beginning*
- *second / secondly / next / then*
- *finally / lastly / last but not least / in conclusion / to sum up / in short / all in all*

First of all, I should like to thank you on behalf of the staff.
Location is an important consideration. **Next**, the cost of such a festival must be considered.
All in all, it has been a very worthwhile project.

MAKING EXCEPTIONS

- *except (for) / apart from*
- *instead (of) / rather than* (when one thing replaces another)
- *unlike + noun*

I tried every dish **except for** the seafood, as I'm allergic to it.
Last year we holidayed here **instead of** going abroad.
Jane couldn't get tickets so we went out to dinner **instead**.
Unlike most action movies, this film has very little violence.

GIVING EXAMPLES

- *for example / for instance / in the case of*
- *such as / like*

The city is full of attractions. **For example**, there are museums and palaces.
In the case of John, the problem was a lack of respect.
Large cities **such as** London face tremendous traffic problems.

RESTATING AND EXPLAINING

- *in other words / that is (to say) / namely / in a sense / in this / that way*

It's not a direct flight. **That is**, you have to change planes in Rome.
Two of the delegates, **namely** Ann and Jill, became quite ill.

INTRODUCING A NEW SUBJECT

- *as for / as to*

As for the software, you can download it free from the Internet.

Notes

1. Some combinations of linking words are possible (e.g., *but ... anyway*; *but ... still*; *yet ... still*; *but despite ...*).
I felt dejected and alone, **but** I joined the group **anyway**.
He was not handsome or interesting, **yet** he **still** attracted many women.
2. *Though / as* are often used for emphasis and can be preceded by an adjective. (See Unit 17, page 137.)
Experienced though / as he was, Paul made a reckless decision and lost a fortune.

PRACTICE

A. Complete the texts below using the correct word or phrase from the box.

however
that is
contrary to
owing to
so as not to

on top of that
also
not only
due to

so
despite
still
instead of

1

SPECIAL NOTICE

(1) **Owing to** the urgent need for essential repair work, the municipal swimming pool will be temporarily closed. The work will be carried out during the months of December and January (2) disrupt training schedules for summer competitions. (3) , as renovation work is also necessary in the foyer and changing room areas, the pool will remain closed to the public for a further six weeks, (4) , until the beginning of March. (5) rumours in the local press, the closure will not be permanent, our aim being to upgrade facilities for local residents.

2

Fly with BudgetAir!

(1) do we offer the best prices on flights to European destinations, but we (2) offer unrivalled service from the moment you book to the moment you reach your destination. (3) , this April we're offering free coach transfers to and from the airport. (4) limited availability, this offer only applies to passengers booking directly with us via our website.

3



She promised me she'd be here by 9 o'clock, but (1) all her fine words, I knew she'd let me down. (2) when she called me at 10.15 to apologise, I was angry, but not really surprised. (3) , I can't help thinking – wouldn't it be nice one day if (4) giving us a whole load of excuses, she actually helped out?

B. Join each pair of sentences in two different ways, using the connector given.

1. The bank increased its interest rate. They wanted to attract more customers.

so as to **The bank increased its interest rate so as to attract more customers.**

so that

2. People believe that cutting out a meal will help them lose weight. It won't.

contrary to

although

3. Tina found the play difficult to follow. I loved every minute of it.

unlike

whereas

4. The train company improved punctuality. They installed electronic timekeeping systems.

as a result of

in this way

5. The architect submitted a proposal which was impressive. She was awarded the commission.

so

such

6. No announcement about the epidemic was made. We didn't want to cause panic.

lest

for fear of

C. Complete the following sentences with one suitable word. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. Some people spend all day doing watersports,while..... others prefer lazing on the beach.
2. Attractive it may sound, life on an island in winter can be harsh.
3. The bus was delayed for half an hour so, we got to our destination on time.
4. "I thought you liked Chinese food!" "On the ! I can't stand ethnic cuisine."
5. All in , we would not hesitate to recommend Susan for the scholarship.
6. from a few scratches, there was no serious damage to the car.
7. As a of their new sponsorship deals, the athletes were able to train full time.
8. Mr Johnson has sometimes been unwilling to co-operate. What's , his work has not always been of a satisfactory standard.



D. Choose the correct ending for the sentences below.

1. The airport will be closed for 48 hours owing to
 - a. strike action by the baggage handlers.
 - b. considerable problems to anybody travelling at this time.
2. However unusual the idea may seem,
 - a. bathing in mud is not an effective way to cleanse the skin.
 - b. bathing in mud actually cleans the skin thoroughly.
3. Even though many people objected to the proposed development,
 - a. local authorities cancelled it.
 - b. local authorities went ahead with it.
4. Rather than help us understand the theory, the lecturer
 - a. only succeeded in confusing us.
 - b. also demonstrated its practical applications.
5. Cigarette advertising is now illegal. Nonetheless,
 - a. tobacco companies no longer sponsor sports events.
 - b. sports events continue to be sponsored by tobacco companies.
6. The staff at the hotel were efficient yet
 - a. somewhat unfriendly.
 - b. extremely polite.
7. During the earthquake the building sustained some damage. Therefore,
 - a. repairs will have to be carried out.
 - b. residents will not have to move out.
8. The weather's cleared up a bit. All the same,
 - a. I think I'll go for a walk.
 - b. I think I'll stay home.

E. Rewrite the following sentences using one of the conjunctions below. Make any necessary changes.

given that • whatever • because of • namely • nevertheless • instead

1. You know I would be willing to help with any problem you are having.

.....

2. We stayed at a guesthouse because all the hotels were full.

.....

3. Her drawings are extremely good and she is only five years old.

.....

4. The plot lacks originality in places but the book is worth reading.

.....

5. Staff salaries and flexible working hours were the two issues the board met to discuss.

.....

6. The conflict between the two countries resulted in the border being temporarily closed.

.....

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Tom was the only person who wasn't at all interested in the exhibition. **FOR**
Everybody enjoyed the exhibition interest in it whatsoever.
2. Sally was afraid of heights as she had fallen off a bridge as a child. **DUKE**
Sally's her falling off a bridge as a child.
3. Spinach contains fibre as well as a great deal of iron. **FULL**
In , spinach is also a source of fibre.
4. Ben and his brother are so alike that I sometimes get them mixed up. **SUCH**
Ben bears his brother that I sometimes get them mixed up.
5. The politician tried to hide his mistake as he didn't want to be criticized. **FEAR**
The politician tried to cover that he would be criticized.
6. The medicine may not be pleasant tasting but you must take it anyway. **HOW**
You must take the medicine taste.
7. The rain won't put Paul off going jogging in the park. **IT**
Even , Paul will still go jogging in the park.
8. We were seated at the back of the auditorium yet we could still hear clearly. **HAVING**
We could hear clearly at the back of the auditorium.

B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. "Dan borrowed the car without asking last night."
"I know, and , he asked me for a raise in his allowance."
 - a. all in all
 - b. therefore
 - c. all the same
 - d. on top of that
 2. Nadia gave that the clients signed up immediately.
 - a. so a professional presentation
 - b. a so professional presentation
 - c. such a professional presentation
 - d. such professional a presentation
 3. The college offers summer courses accumulate degree credits more quickly.
 - a. so that students can
 - b. in order for students
 - c. so as to students can
 - d. as for students to
 4. The proposal was rejected the changes would be too costly.
 - a. on the grounds that
 - b. as a result of
 - c. in spite of
 - d. because of
 5. Many sportsmen attract publicity but Beckham, his fame was more like that of a pop star.
 - a. namely
 - b. for example
 - c. in the case of
 - d. in any case
6. Advertising on TV is now very expensive. , there is no shortage of companies competing for air time.
 - a. Moreover
 - b. Nonetheless
 - c. Consequently
 - d. Whereas
 7. "Won't I find the philosophy course hard to follow?"
"No what you might expect, everything is explained in very simple terms."
 - a. In contrast with
 - b. Contrary to
 - c. On the other hand
 - d. Although
 8. "I heard Todd turned up at your party!"
"He came he wasn't invited."
 - a. no matter
 - b. even though
 - c. besides
 - d. even so
 9. "Should I bring anything with me to the seminar?"
"..... a notebook and pen, everything will be provided."
 - a. As well
 - b. Unlike
 - c. Besides
 - d. Rather than
 10. I waved at Sally didn't notice me.
 - a. and she even
 - b. but she yet
 - c. yet she still
 - d. so she then

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Find words in the quotes that mean:

- “ Breakfast cereals are a good source of carbohydrates and fibre so they get your metabolism going first thing in the morning. Many are rich in vitamins and minerals and if you add milk, you boost your calcium intake too.
- When Anna invited us to supper, she really showed off her culinary talents. She prepared a feast – a huge selection of dishes that were simply mouth-watering. Needless to say, we polished them all off in no time!
- Most top models look like they haven't eaten a square meal in weeks. I'm sure many of them have some kind of eating disorder like anorexia! There's no way I could starve myself like that.
- I can't eat dairy products like yoghurt because I suffer from lactose intolerance. Sometimes though, I really crave ice cream! There are soya substitutes I could have, but they taste really artificial.
- Now that the baby is six months old we're trying to wean him onto solid foods. But he can't chew yet so we have to puree everything. Today he'll be having carrot and potato, all mashed up in the blender. ”

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. amount someone consumes | 6. meal which makes you feel satisfied |
| 2. to do with food and cooking | 7. negative physical reaction to a certain type of food |
| 3. large meal | 8. replacement |
| 4. looking delicious | 9. start feeding a baby solid food gradually |
| 5. eat all of something | 10. crush food |

B. Label the drawings using the words below.

sieve • frying pan • crockery • saucepan • cutlery



1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

C. Complete the recipe with the words below.

consistency • drain • ingredients • peel • simmer
dough • grease • pastry • pinch • stir

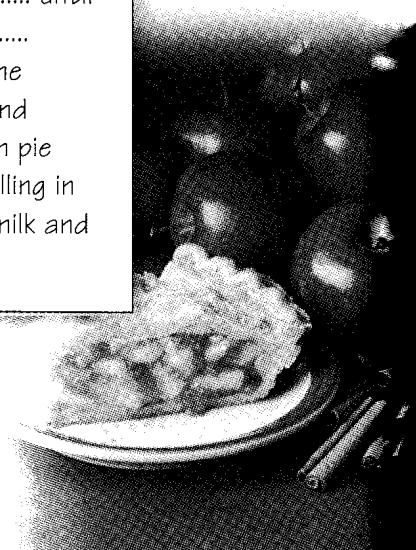
APPLE PIE

(1) Ingredients

FILLING 1 kg cooking apples
50 g sugar
1 tsp cinnamon or nutmeg

CRUST 125 g margarine
250 g flour
(2) of salt

Method: (3) and slice the apples and place them in a saucepan with the sugar and a little water. Bring to the boil, reduce the heat and (4) until the apples have softened. Remove from heat and allow to cool. (5) off excess juice. Sift the flour. Make the pastry by rubbing the flour and margarine together until it is the (6) of breadcrumbs. Add a little water and (7) to form a (8) (9) a 20-cm pie dish and roll out half of the (10) to cover the base. Spoon the filling in carefully, then cover with the remaining pastry to form a lid. Brush the pie with milk and bake at 200°C until the crust is golden brown.



D. Complete the article using the words below.

calories • fattening • food poisoning • nutritious • poultry
 cholesterol • food chain • genetically modified • organic • processed

With so many food scares these days it's a wonder we still enjoy our food. That undercooked seafood or (1) can cause (2) , and the fact that (3) foods are less (4) than home-cooking is nothing new to us. In the past only those who were watching their weight avoided (5) foods, which are high in (6) , or worried about their (7) levels. But the stakes today are much higher – with the possibility of catching Mad Cow disease from eating beef or other meats, often overloaded with hormones. The further up the (8) an animal is, the more likely it is to have been contaminated with chemicals from environmental pollution. But even fruit and vegetables may not be safe. Food from (9) crops (plants whose DNA has been altered to give the crop a certain quality) is now on sale, although its safety is yet to be scientifically proved. More and more consumers are now opting for (10) food, produced without artificial fertilisers or pesticides. Though these foods are more expensive, consumers feel reassured that they are not putting their health at risk with every mouthful they swallow.

TEST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. Which is the odd one out? Justify your choice.

1. grate	chop	digest	slice	all are ways of cutting food
2. grape	pork	plum	peach	
3. helping	portion	serving	craving	
4. spill	swallow	nibble	chew	
5. consume	devour	ingest	starve	
6. nutrient	staple	vitamin	mineral	
7. beef	lamb	wheat	poultry	
8. bitter	savoury	sour	greedy	
9. gourmet	casserole	foodie	connoisseur	
10. pulses	herbs	seasonings	spices	

B. Complete the restaurant review with the correct prepositions.

If you're (1) **in the mood** (2) a good square meal but fancy something healthy, *Herbie's Restaurant*, in the high street, is the place for you! Although not strictly a vegetarian restaurant (there are a few meat dishes (3) **offer**), fresh vegetables **are central**

(4) the concept of the menu. But **compared** (5) other vegetarian restaurants, *Herbie's* is more honest in its cuisine. Meat is not replaced by soya; instead the **emphasis is** (6) fresh produce. Everyday vegetables are **transformed** (7) a magical **array** (8) colour and taste, which should whet even the most jaded appetite.



The menu varies **according** (9) what is (10) **season**. We **opted** (11) a divine mushroom risotto and crepes **filled** (12) cheese and pine nuts which simply **melted** (13) **your mouth**. And as (14) dessert, well, we were **spoilt** (15) **choice** – mouth-watering chocolate creations sat **side** (16) **side** with fresh fruit, putting us (17) a **teal quandary**: after a meal so **rich** (18) nutrients, was it right to ruin it all by **indulging** (19) a sugary treat? *Herbie's* is deservedly popular and we only got a table (20) **difficulty**. Our advice? Book early!

C. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with nouns formed from the words below (the word **close** can form two different nouns). Make any necessary changes.

achieve	commit	equip	invest	press	tired
architect	cup	expose	involve	replace	weak
amaze	depart	fail	judge	require	willing
assess	develop	foolish	like	seize	
aware	eager	hand	literary	shy	
bitter	effective	house	move	spoon	
close	encourage	improve	please	sweet	

-ment

achievement

-ness

awfulness

-ful

houseful

-ure

shyness

2. Complete the sentences below with nouns you formed in Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes. There may be more than one possible answer.

- When the water boils, add three of rice.
- Setting up a restaurant requires a lot of
- Susie is studying at the University of Glasgow.
- Vince's prevented him from enjoying the dinner party.
- The of the company put hundreds of people out of work.

D. COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

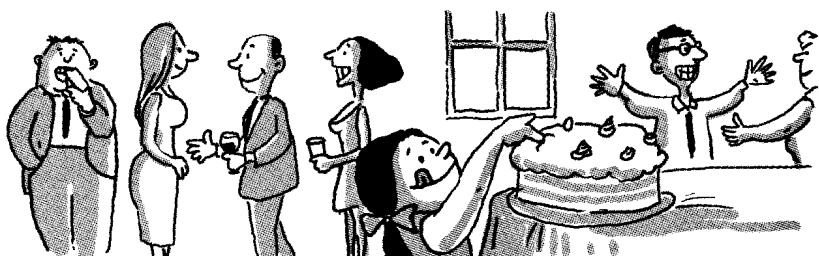
1. Complete the expressions using the verbs below.

whet ● watch ● quench ● swallow ● wean

- **wean** a baby
- your thirst
- your pride
- your appetite
- your weight

2. Make statements about the following situations using the correct form of the expressions from Exercise 1.

- Dan had to accept help from someone he didn't want to. **Dan swallowed his pride.**
- Julie is gradually introducing her baby to solid food.
- Brad is calorie counting.
- Sue drank a litre of water.
- A taste of the icing on the cake made Ann want to eat more.



E. MULTIPLE MEANINGS Complete the sentences using the one word below that fits both sentences in each pair.

splashed • heat • fed • stirred • bite • eat

1. a. Let's grab a bite to eat on the way home from the movie.
b. Don't bite your nails – it makes them look ugly!
2. a. The newspaper stories public anxiety about the food scare.
b. After waiting around all morning, everyone was really up by lunchtime.
3. a. Denise won the first of the 800 metres and is through to the semi-final.
b. If you've got a microwave, it's easy to convenience foods.
4. a. Looking at the photo album up painful memories of his ex-girlfriend.
b. The teacher asked us to change places but nobody
5. a. Jake's mum told him to up everything on his plate.
b. My sister will have to her words when I show her my excellent school report!
6. a. As he put his glass down, water onto the table.
b. The scandal was all over the front pages of the papers.

F. RELATED WORDS large and small numbers / amounts

1. Complete the chart with the following words and phrases. Some words and phrases can fit into more than one category.

a handful of a minority of gigantic vast	dozens of tons of a pinch of innumerable	loads of a drop of abundant a trace of	immense a majority of a touch of minuscule	meagre countless minute ample
---	---	---	---	--

	AMOUNT (with uncountable nouns)	NUMBER (with countable nouns)	SIZE
small <u>a handful of</u> <u>a handful of</u>
large

2. Answer the following questions using expressions from the chart in Exercise 1.

1. How many people in your country are vegetarians? a minority of people.
2. How much oil do you like on your salad?
3. How big is a grain of sand?
4. How much meat is consumed at Easter?
5. How much seasoning should you put on your food?

3. Complete the expressions using the following words for small amounts.

pinch • ~~grain~~ • drop • speck • touch

1. a grain of truth
2. a of dust
3. a of milk
4. a of colour
5. a of salt

G. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Complete the sentences using the correct word. Make any necessary changes.

drop

drip

splash

leak

spill

pour

cook

cookery

cooker

spread

squeeze

sprinkle

preservative

conservative

addition

eligible

legible

edible

unlike

dissimilar

apart

1. a. The tap all night and by morning the bathtub was half full.
b. She dived into the pool, the sunbathers lying around the sides.
c. She the bowl and it shattered into a thousand pieces.
2. a. Would you like me to you a glass of wine?
b. That carton is – you'd better put the milk in a jug.
c. I milk all over the kitchen floor.
3. a. Maria is taking French lessons.
b. An experienced , Ron had no difficulty preparing our Christmas feast.
c. We bought a new gas to replace the old one.
4. a. The children butter and jam onto their bread.
b. The biscuits were with sugar and cinnamon.
c. You can make juice by oranges.
5. a. Always read the label to check which a product contains.
b. My uncle has very ideas about how the country should be run.
c. The of a few fresh herbs will liven up most dishes.
6. a. The contents label was so small that the letters were barely
b. Only certified chefs are for the job.
c. The food at the college was barely
7. a. Organic vegetables, those grown conventionally, are not contaminated with pesticides.
b. Sweet and sour dishes combine two tastes.
c. The children eat hardly any fresh vegetables from corn and carrots.

H. METAPHOR AND MEANING

Food and water are often used as metaphors for money or resources.

1. Mark the metaphors in colour F (food) or W (water). Then mark each of the statements T (True) or F (False).

1. Henry coughed up the cash.
a. Henry paid some money. T / F
b. The speaker implies that Henry was willing to pay. T / F
2. John sponged off his parents for years.
a. John was unwilling to take money from his parents. T / F
b. The speaker approves of John's behaviour. T / F
3. The company liquidated some of its assets to ease cash flow.
a. The company sold some of its properties and smaller companies. T / F
b. The speaker implies that the company was having financial difficulties. T / F
4. The business went under.
a. The owners sold the business for a profit. T / F
b. The business no longer exists. T / F
5. That oil corporation is getting greedy for a bigger slice of the market.
a. The corporation wants to improve its competitiveness. T / F
b. The speaker approves of the corporation's attitude. T / F



2. Complete the dialogue between two friends with the following expressions.

down the drain • eats into • piece of the pie • took a large bite • stay afloat

Steve: How's your shop doing these days?

Barbara: OK I suppose, but it's getting harder to (1)

Steve: Why's that?

Barbara: Well, there's so much competition – everyone is fighting for a (2)

Steve: Surely you've got loyal customers?

Barbara: We have, but the rent has gone up so that it (3) profits and we had to do the place up last month – that (4) out of the money we'd saved. I just hope we aren't throwing our money (5)

I. PHRASAL VERBS in

Match each informal phrase with its more formal paraphrase.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Our friend dropped in. | a. A large number arrived. |
| 2. Somebody broke in. | b. We got it in part exchange. |
| 3. Letters flooded in. | c. I came to understand something. |
| 4. The reality sank in. | d. Somebody substituted for us. |
| 5. They stood in for us. | e. Somebody paid us a visit. |
| 6. I packed it in. | f. We were burgled. |
| 7. The clues tied in with our theory. | g. I stopped doing something. |
| 8. We traded in our car. | h. They fitted in with what we believed. |



J. IN OTHER WORDS: phrasal verbs with multiple meanings

Match the words in colour to their more formal meanings.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Put the cheese in the fridge so it doesn't go off. | a. He served us. |
| 2. Earlier I fancied a burger but now I've gone off the idea. | b. He compensated for it. |
| 3. John made up for forgetting my birthday with a huge gift. | c. He wiped them. |
| 4. Women make up 70% of the work force. | d. We do not want it to spoil. |
| 5. As we talked, he poured out his feelings. | e. It has lost its appeal. |
| 6. The waiter poured out two mugs of coffee. | f. He no longer knew what to say. |
| 7. I washed the dishes and Uncle Joe dried up. | g. They comprise the majority. |
| 8. Frank dried up halfway through his speech. | h. He expressed himself without reserve. |

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. Looking at Joan's holiday snaps made Rita want to travel abroad. **WHETTED**

Joan's holiday snaps foreign travel.

2. Let's have a snack before we go shopping. **BITE**

Let's before we go shopping.

3. They have converted the old station into a smart restaurant. **TRANSFORMED**

The old station a smart restaurant.

4. There are so many different styles of ethnic cuisine to choose from these days. **SPOILT**

These days, we when it comes to ethnic cuisine.

5. Ray agonised over whether he should tell his host that the chicken was underdone. **QUANDARY**

Discovering that his chicken was underdone – should he tell his host or not?

6. The rent takes a large bite out of my salary every month. **EATS**

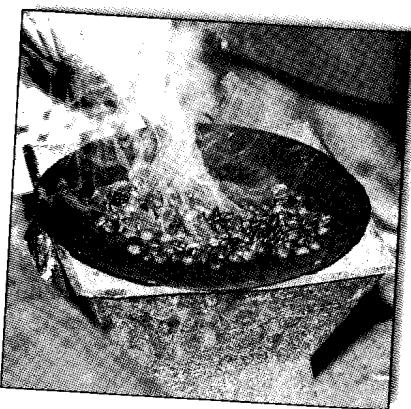
Paying the rent really every month.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

WE ARE WHAT OUR ANCESTORS ATE

Food is more than a biological necessity, and the rituals surrounding it play a central role in every society in the world. Almost all of life's milestones (1) food – from a child's birthday party to a first date. Animals may get together to (2) the rewards of the hunt and eat (3) by side, but only humans spend so much time on food preparation and derive so much (4) from it. It is this observation that has led some scientists to investigate the theory that it was the development of the (5) arts that triggered the (6) of humans from their ape-like cousins. The (7) differences between us and apes could have developed once people started eating cooked food. Smaller teeth were now able to (8) the softer food and a larger brain and body resulted from a higher (9) intake. (10) to this theory is the supposition that the history of cooking goes back almost two million years, although we may never know what kind of recipes prehistoric chefs put together. Ironically, a new kind of cuisine called *living foods* is based on the concept that the less food is cooked the better and that no food should be (11) above 118° F. Apparently this is conducive to a long and healthy life. If this is true, scientists have a great deal of research to do before they can answer the question of why humans are (12) other species in preferring cooked to raw food.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A involve | B touch | C swallow | D reminisce |
| 2. A devour | B nibble | C chop | D crave |
| 3. A meal | B round | C side | D safe |
| 4. A likeness | B greed | C pride | D pleasure |
| 5. A cooking | B culinary | C feeding | D kitchen |
| 6. A evolution | B exposure | C process | D omission |
| 7. A natural | B ample | C organic | D physical |
| 8. A wean | B chew | C stir | D pour |
| 9. A calorie | B savoury | C metabolic | D consumer |
| 10. A According | B As | C Eligible | D Central |
| 11. A seasoned | B feasted | C heated | D greased |
| 12. A apart | B dissimilar | C compared | D unlike |



C. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

DANGEROUS WEBSITES

Enter the words anorexia or bulimia on an Internet search and you'll get thousands of sites listed. The (1) of these websites offer help and (2) to those recovering from serious eating (3) like these. Unfortunately, there is a (4) of sites that advocate anorexia as a (5) lifestyle rather than as a life-threatening (6) These websites offer advice on how to eat less while fooling others into thinking that you are eating (7) These sites are dangerous because sufferers are in (8) with one another to eat less and become thinner than each other. Many (9) would like to see these websites closed down, but the Internet is unregulated and the only thing doctors and parents can do is to warn those who are likely to be influenced by their (10) not to believe what they read.

- | |
|-----------|
| MAJOR |
| ENCOURAGE |
| ORDER |
| HAND |
| DESIRE |
| ILL |
| SENSE |
| COMPETE |
| NUTRITION |
| CONTAIN |

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

FEEDING TIME AT THE ZOO

Modern zoos function more as guardians of the world's wildlife than as places of entertainment, and they have made a strong (1) to care for the animals that they house. An important aspect of that care is the nutritional needs of the animal inhabitants. If animals are not properly (2) , they may develop health problems, have a shortened life span, or have problems reproducing, which is especially worrying for endangered species. With several hundred species to (3) , zookeepers clearly have a difficult task, particularly as some creatures have very specialised tastes. The panda, for instance, only eats the leaves and (4) of the bamboo plant. But sometimes it is not enough simply to provide the (5) that the animals are used to. Scientific analysis can determine the exact amounts of certain nutrients that animals would (6) in the wild. Nutritionists can then concoct meals which provide (7) the same balance, even if this means serving unusual combinations or giving animals vitamin (8) Zoo nutritionists can take pride in their work as they are able to witness (9) improvements in the animals' well-being. Eagle chicks whose parents were given extra Vitamin E are now strong enough to (10) out of their eggs and survive into adulthood. Gorillas that are being given more vegetables, and not (11) in their liking for sweet fruit such as bananas, have lower cholesterol levels and are less prone to heart attacks. Such stories provide us with yet more evidence that diet is (12) to good health.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A commitment | B complement | C assessment | D involvement |
| 2. A filled | B served | C fed | D ingested |
| 3. A narrow down | B eat into | C make up for | D cater for |
| 4. A spines | B stems | C drops | D specks |
| 5. A staples | B makeover | C leftovers | D cookery |
| 6. A achieve | B develop | C acquire | D consume |
| 7. A comparably | B precisely | C reasonably | D minutely |
| 8. A ingredients | B supplements | C additions | D preservatives |
| 9. A innumerable | B large | C vast | D countless |
| 10. A hatch | B raise | C erupt | D lay |
| 11. A weaned | B craved | C stirred | D indulged |
| 12. A ample | B eligible | C central | D serious |

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

TOO MUCH ON OUR PLATES

An increasing proportion of the population are overweight, probably due (1) increased prosperity, cheaper food and changing dietary habits. One noticeable example of this is that portion sizes (2) increased dramatically over the (3) 30 years. What's (4) , we are losing the ability to judge how large an "appropriate portion" should (5) There is now (6) much food on our plates that if we eat up everything that is put (7) front of us, as our parents taught us to do, the chances (8) we will put on weight. Researchers at Pennsylvania State University investigating the factors that lead to obesity looked at the role portion size plays in determining how much people eat. In (9) to test this, researchers set the lunch table for four days for two groups of men and women. (10) group was given a plate that already contained a pre-measured portion. The others (11) handed an empty plate and allowed to serve themselves from the same-sized portions presented in a dish. Whether the participants put the food on their own plates or (12) , the larger the portion in front of them, (13) more they ate. Even (14) we think we are in control of what we eat, we all have the same innate reaction to portion size. (15) matter how hungry we are, we eat more if we are given more.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. Best not to trust James. he may seem, he thinks only of himself.
 - a. Whatever sympathy
 - b. In contrast to his sympathy
 - c. However sympathetic
 - d. As sympathetic
2. "It's strange Pat never learned to swim, isn't it?"
"..... she grew up by the sea, it's incomprehensible."
 - a. Given that
 - b. Even if
 - c. In a sense
 - d. On account of
3. "Did the camping trip go well?"
"..... one minor accident, we had a great time."
 - a. Apart from
 - b. Except for
 - c. Instead
 - d. Although
4. All the invitations have been sent. the seating plan, that can wait till next week.
 - a. But for
 - b. As well as
 - c. As for
 - d. Unlike
5. "Who's the best person to ask about the course?"
"..... Jess just finished hers, I'd suggest asking her."
 - a. Since
 - b. Due to
 - c. For instance
 - d. Because of
6. We hired a professional restorer damage the original furniture.
 - a. not to
 - b. so that not to
 - c. for fear that
 - d. so as not to
7. The curator felt it was that it should be at the center of the display.
 - a. a such significant exhibit
 - b. so significant an exhibit
 - c. so much a significant exhibit
 - d. exhibit so significant
8. After a successful career as a model, Cara in several theatrical productions.
 - a. went on starring
 - b. would go on as star
 - c. was going on to star
 - d. went on to star
9. very little work to do, I decided to take the day off.
 - a. Had I
 - b. To have
 - c. Having
 - d. That I had
10. , watching our every move.
 - a. Stood a tall man at the back of the room
 - b. A tall man at the back of the room stood
 - c. Stood at the back of the room a tall man
 - d. At the back of the room stood a tall man

VOCABULARY

11. Homemade lemonade is just the thing to your thirst.
 - a. crave
 - b. splash
 - c. whet
 - d. quench
12. Martin purposefully down the corridor and knocked on the principal's door.
 - a. stirred
 - b. spilled
 - c. spread
 - d. strode
13. The cake recipe says to add as much milk as necessary to the mixture to reach the right
 - a. compatibility
 - b. consumption
 - c. conversion
 - d. consistency
14. According to this recipe book, certain flowers are and are used in salads.
 - a. edible
 - b. legible
 - c. eligible
 - d. credible
15. The peach pie was so delicious that we the whole thing.
 - a. coughed up
 - b. polished off
 - c. wound up
 - d. sponged off
16. How does he support his family on such salary?
 - a. a meager
 - b. a vast
 - c. an ample
 - d. a countless
17. Jason has some extreme views but there is always a of truth in what he says.
 - a. drop
 - b. grain
 - c. twinkle
 - d. feast
18. Sharon is such a positive person – she her problems, whatever they are.
 - a. takes a large bite of
 - b. tightens the screws on
 - c. makes light of
 - d. eats into
19. Both of the jobs I've been offered are fantastic opportunities – I'm in such!
 - a. a dwelling
 - b. a grudge
 - c. an array
 - d. a quandary
20. A weekend away from home gave Doris the chance to in some long leisurely country walks.
 - a. indulge
 - b. insert
 - c. indicate
 - d. ingest

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

It is well known that babies and young children need milk in order to build a strong and healthy skeleton. However, nutritionists are becoming (1) worried that young people are not drinking enough milk, and as a result, are risking serious calcium (2) at a time when it is most essential for their development. Calcium is also present in (3) foods like cheese and yogurt, and in green vegetables, but the (4) of adults and children don't (5) enough of such foods to meet their daily requirements. There are other reasons (6) milk is the (7) dietary source of this vital nutrient. (8) most other foods, milk contains Vitamin D, as well as natural fats and sugars which (9) the absorption of calcium.

Not only (10) calcium play a significant role in building healthy bones, (11) scientists are now proving that it can help lower blood pressure and (12) harmful cholesterol levels too. (13), nutritionists recommend a calcium (14) equivalent to three glasses of milk daily for young children and, as teenagers require even more, it would seem sensible to make milk a (15) food in our diet. (16), it is more common for youngsters to choose soft drinks or fruit juices to (17) their thirst. Health (18) are promoting milk as a "cool" drink and have found that in schools where vending machines (19) flavored and plain milk were (20), sales indicate that it can be immensely popular.

1. a. further
b. increasingly
c. likewise
d. widely
2. a. deficiencies
b. disorders
c. supplements
d. poisoning
3. a. dozens
b. such
c. dairy
d. these
4. a. loads
b. problem
c. majority
d. food
5. a. contain
b. consume
c. chew
d. let
6. a. which
b. for
c. why
d. the
7. a. preferential
b. digestible
c. preferred
d. permissible
8. a. Unlike
b. Besides
c. Except
d. Likewise
9. a. stir
b. make
c. benefit
d. aid
10. a. would
b. this
c. does
d. also
11. a. despite
b. but
c. also
d. yet
12. a. drop
b. very
c. fall
d. reduce
13. a. Adversely
b. Ideally
c. Namely
d. Totally
14. a. intake
b. meal
c. portion
d. exposure
15. a. complete
b. square
c. play
d. staple
16. a. Furthermore
b. Nevertheless
c. Instead
d. Although
17. a. quench
b. erase
c. dry
d. liquidate
18. a. conservatives
b. campaigners
c. connoisseurs
d. curators
19. a. both
b. selling
c. which
d. filled
20. a. transformed
b. installed
c. adapted
d. enforced

Adjectives, Adverbs, Comparison

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. The key to solving a crime is the system / systematic / **systematically** analysis of evidence.
2. You'd better get a good travel / travelling / travels guide before you set off for the French countryside.
3. We'll need a car to get to the supermarket. It must be a ten-mile / **ten miles** / ten miles' journey.
4. It was very / rather / absolutely impossible to find parking near the theatre.
5. Emergency aid became necessarily / necessary / **necessity** during the famine.
6. Tina has been working hard / hardest / hardly all week.
7. I can't eat these vegetables – they taste bitterly / bitter / bitterer.
8. Derek works as an engineer of software / a software's engineer / a software engineer for a multinational company.
9. Does the library stock any books for blind / a blind / the blind?
10. The more theoretical a text is, the much / more / most difficult it is to understand.
11. We were told to be quiet so as not to wake up the sleeping / asleep / sleep child.
12. The hotel we stayed at was by far / every bit / rather the most luxurious in the city.
13. With this pass tourists can travel freely / as free / free on buses.
14. I certainly feel more / much / much more healthier since I started taking these vitamins.
15. Thomas is almost so / as / most badly behaved as his brother.

B. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning to the first one.

1. The brown bear is not nearly as aggressive as its relative, the black bear.
 - a. The black bear is more aggressive.
 - b. The two bears are equally aggressive.
2. I thought the entertainment was quite dreadful.
 - a. The entertainment wasn't very good.
 - b. The entertainment was terrible.
3. The greater the motivation, the more likely an athlete is to succeed.
 - a. If the chances of success are high, motivation will be higher.
 - b. As motivation increases, so do chances of success.
4. The plan is not so much risky as impractical.
 - a. The plan's biggest drawback is the fact that it's impractical.
 - b. The plan's biggest drawback is the fact that it's risky.
5. They'll speak to us about the new project shortly.
 - a. They'll speak to us soon.
 - b. They'll speak to us briefly.



Score: / 20

RULES

Adjectives describe nouns. They have neither singular nor plural form; they generally precede a noun or follow a linking verb.

I heard a **fascinating** lecture. She seems **disturbed** and **unhappy**.

COMMON WAYS OF FORMING ADJECTIVES

Suffixes (-y, -ive, -al, -ful, -less, -able, etc.)

windy, co-operative, practical, colourful

Present and past participles

-*ing* adjectives have an active meaning and describe the effect something has

The news was **shocking**.

-*ed* / past participle adjectives have a passive meaning and describe feelings or reactions

We went to see a **frightening** film last night.

We were **shocked** by his revelations.

We were **frightened** when we watched the film.

Compound adjectives

adjective / number + noun + -ed

grey-haired, one-sided

number + **singular** count noun

five-page, ten-day-old

past participle + adverb

torn-down, cast-off

adjective / adverb / noun + present / past participle

good-looking, freshly baked, back-breaking

Nouns used as adjectives

to describe a typical or well-known type of something

the car door, football player, surprise announcement,

The first noun is usually singular.

the morning mist, corner shop, bedroom curtains, trouser pocket

Notes

1. Some verbs are commonly followed by adjectives (be, seem, appear, look, sound, taste, feel, become, get, etc.) Some of these verbs are used to talk about change or absence of change (become, get, grow, go, turn, stay, remain, keep, etc.)

She **looked calm**.

It was **turning dark** outside yet it **remained warm** and **sultry**.

Some of these verbs can be followed by an adverb if an action is being described. Compare:

She looked calm. (*adjective "calm" describes the pronoun "she"*)

She looked **calmly** at the police officer. (*adverb "calmly" describes how she looked at the officer*)

Other verbs that can be followed by adjectives when describing the subject and not the action of the verb include: *lie, sit, stand, fall*.

2. Some adjectives can only be used after a verb (e.g., many adjectives beginning with *a-* (*afloat, afraid, alight, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake*) or adjectives describing health and feelings (*ill, [un]well, content, fine, glad, sorry, [un]sure, upset, ready*).

The baby's **asleep**.

He was **afraid** of the spider.

The ship is still **afloat**.

He feels **ill / well**.

3. We use **the + adjective** to talk about groups of people.

They've just built a new access ramp for **the handicapped**.

There are some formal fixed phrases where **the + adjective** has a singular meaning: (*the accused, the deceased, the former, the latter*).

4. Some adjectives have different meanings depending on whether they come before the noun or immediately after it.

I've just moved again and my **present** address is 105 Chestnut Road. (= *my address now*)

All the people **present** agreed to sign the petition. (= *who were there*)

Concerned parents have been phoning the hot line to find out what they should do. (= *worried*)

The school outing was a huge success and we should thank the parents **concerned**. (= *involved*)

They are **responsible** children and will be back on time. (= *conscientious*)

The children **responsible** will be caught and punished. (= *who did the action*)

ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

While the order of adjectives can vary occasionally according to the intention of the speaker, we usually place **general** adjectives before **specific** ones, and adjectives expressing **opinion** before those conveying **fact**.

number / quantity	opinion	size / length / height	colour	origin	material	purpose	noun
a	beautiful	large	red	Chinese	wooden	jewellery	box

John bought me a **gorgeous, large, dark-brown, antique, mahogany** writing desk for my birthday.

In a sentence, adjectives are separated by commas, unless it is the last adjective before the noun or when one adjective modifies another.

ADVERBS

Adverbs are used to modify:

verbs She sang **well**.

adjectives It's **terribly** cold.

past participles The room was **badly** painted.

whole sentences **Unfortunately**, your application has been rejected.

other adverbs He is driving **extremely** fast.

There are several kinds of adverbs:

manner: *clumsily, gracefully, vividly, vigorously, distinctly, boldly, in a friendly fashion*

frequency: *seldom, constantly, often, never, always*

place and direction: *upstairs, downtown, overseas, outside, opposite, globally, downstream, homeward*

time: *soon, lately, since, so far, immediately, yet, already, yesterday*

degree: *very, extremely, quite, really, almost, too, completely, fairly, rather, totally*

ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS WITH SIMILAR FORMS

1. Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form. However, the meaning may differ. Examples include:

back	enough	hourly	left	low	upstairs
daily	far	ill	little	still	well
early	fast	kindly	long	straight	

I'm not very **well** today. I think I'll stay at home. (adj = *healthy*)

I really don't know Peter very **well**. (adv = *to a great extent*)

2. Some adverbs have one form similar to the adjective and another form ending in *-ly*. The meaning may differ.

Examples include:

deep – deeply	fine – finely	high – highly	near – nearly	short – shortly
direct – directly	flat – flatly	just – justly	pretty – prettily	sure – surely
easy – easily	free – freely	late – lately	right – rightly	wide – widely
fair – fairly	hard – hardly	most – mostly	sharp – sharply	

I gave her a **free** hand in the interior design. (adj = *without limits or controls*)

Pensioners travel **free** on buses. (adv = *without payment*)

She spoke **freely** about her past. (adv = *without inhibitions*)

GRADABLE AND UNGRADABLE ADJECTIVES

Adjectives can be categorised as gradable or ungradable according to their meaning. Most adjectives are **gradable**, which means that their meaning can be made weaker or stronger (e.g., *cold, boring, difficult* can be made weaker or stronger with adverbs such as *very, slightly, fairly, rather, a bit*). *very cold* *rather difficult*

Ungradable adjectives describe extreme or absolute qualities (e.g., *freezing, dead, impossible, enormous, free*). These adjectives can only be modified with words which suggest extremes (*absolutely free / necessary / freezing, utterly exhausted / impossible / clear*).

Note

The modifier *quite* has a different meaning depending on the kind of adjective it modifies.

The play was **quite** interesting. (with gradable adjectives = *fairly, rather*)

The play was **quite** fascinating. (with ungradable adjectives = *absolutely*)

COMPARISON (See Grammar Appendix for basic rules, page 218.)

Comparatives can be modified with words like *much, far, a lot, any, no, rather, a little, a bit, even, etc.*

far more dangerous, any greater, even better, much more effectively

Superlatives can be modified with words like *much, by far, quite, almost, easily, etc.*

by far the most complicated, almost the cheapest, easily the most talented

as + adjective + as (comparing similar qualities)

Listening to her is about **as interesting as** watching an egg boil!

She looked **as white as** a sheet!

as ... as can be modified with *just, every bit, nearly, almost, half, twice, three times, etc.*

In the end, going by ferry cost **almost as much as** it would to fly.

not as / so + adjective / adverb + as (to show a negative comparison)

This computer is **not as efficient as** the other one.
He didn't work **as carefully as** he should have.

not so much ... as

I'm **not so much angry as** disappointed.
(I'm more disappointed than angry.)

not half / quite / nearly / anything + as + adjective + as
nothing like as + adjective + as

He's **not half as energetic as** you are.
She's **nothing like as tall as** her brother.

negative verb + half / quite + as + / adjective / adverb + as
negative verb + anything like + as + adverb + as

You **don't seem quite as tired as** you were yesterday.
I **didn't do anything like as badly as** I expected.

like + noun / verb phrase

He runs **like the wind**.
He lay there on the sand **like a beached whale**.
It's hard to describe that feeling; it's a bit **like going to the dentist**.

the + comparative, the + comparative

(to show that a change in one thing causes a change in the other)

The more complicated the puzzle, **the longer** it takes to solve.
How many shall I invite? **The more, the merrier!**

comparative + and + comparative (to show gradual changes)

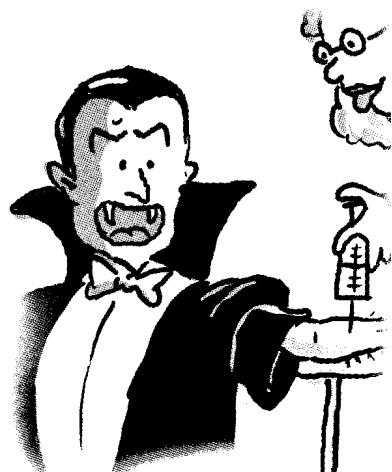
The days are getting **hotter and hotter**.
We work **harder and harder** as time goes by.

PRACTICE

A. Complete the sentences using the correct form of the adjectives or adverbs below.

cheap • far • straight • easy • silly • fine • highly paid • good-looking

1. I felt absolutely **fine** after giving blood.
2. The library will be closed until notice.
3. I completed the second assignment much more than the first.
4. Who would you say is the boy in your class?
5. Surely it's much to go on a package tour than to pay for your airline ticket and accommodation separately.
6. After supper, the children went to bed.
7. The first one was bad enough, but the second anecdote was even
8. Breakfast TV hosts are among the people on television.



B. Fill in compound adjectives. Use the words in the sentences.

1. The plan covers the next five years. It's a **five-year** plan.
2. Rescue workers planned the operation carefully. It was a rescue operation.
3. As a child I had curly hair. I was a child.
4. Linda works really hard. Linda is very
5. The charity appeal show will go on for 24 hours. It's a show.
6. The writing in the script is brilliant. It's a script.
7. The canteen here is subsidised in part. There is a canteen.
8. The sports centre was constructed last year so it's still new. There is a sports centre.

C. Complete the text using the phrases below.

well worth • just as • so large an • conveniently located • not so much • slightly more
a bit less • infinitely superior

Well, Mrs Griffiths, I've got a couple of splendid properties just on the market, which are (1) considering. There's 29 Grove Street, which is very reasonably priced and (2) And there's a more rural property, Daffodil Cottage, which is (3) expensive, but would require (4) renovation work. Actually, it's (5) a cottage as a family home. It's four-bedroomed, with a sizeable garden and a stunning view. But if it's convenience you're looking for, Grove Street is (6) A three-storey town house, it's (7) spacious inside as the cottage, but the garden doesn't cover (8) area. If either of these properties sounds as if it might interest you, I can arrange a viewing this week.

D. Circle the correct answer.

Driving in China

The number of cars in China is increasing by 25% a year, and billions are being invested in new roads. A (1) **far** / **quite** / **bit** more worrying statistic is the number of road accidents, which is growing at an alarming rate – one person dies every six minutes on Chinese roads. This is (2) **hardly** / **almost** / **nearly** surprising when one takes into account the fact that many drivers have never had a driving lesson in their lives. The proper procedure for obtaining a driving licence involves a six-week course but many drivers prefer a (3) **very** / **much** / **many** less time-consuming method – they arrange to buy one. With so many inexperienced drivers bribing their way onto the road, accident rates seem likely to get (4) **bit** / **quite** / **even** worse. Cars are becoming (5) **more** / **as** / **just** and more popular, particularly for weekend leisure trips, even though (6) **by far** / **most** / **rather** the best course of action would seem to be to stay away from the roads altogether. Despite the investment in the country's infrastructure, roads are primitive and (7) **incredibly** / **utterly** / **partly** hazardous, jammed with everything from pedestrians and animals to bicycles and huge container



trucks, which an expert driver would find (8) **just** / **like** / **every** as impossible to negotiate safely. The pace of change has (9) **absolutely** / **usually** / **clearly** caused problems, and the Chinese may well find that Westernisation is not (10) **so** / **the** / **any** much a blessing as a curse.

E. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. The new building will be than our present premises.
 - a. by far the most spacious
 - b. far more spacious
 - c. much more spaciously
 - d. not so much spacious
2. A business will rarely flourish.
 - a. poor managed
 - b. managed poor
 - c. poorly managed
 - d. managed poorly
3. "Did you enjoy the roller coaster ride?"
"No! It was experience of my life."
 - a. the most terrifying
 - b. far more terrifying
 - c. a more terrifying
 - d. as terrifying as
4. Pauline was a
 - a. cinema critic, well-respecting
 - b. respecting cinema critic
 - c. good-respected cinema critic
 - d. well-respected cinema critic
5. The mountaineers felt their way up the sheer rock face.
 - a. more cautious
 - b. cautiously
 - c. cautious
 - d. most cautious
6. "What did Carla wear to the reception?"
"The most dress."
 - a. red, gorgeous, silk
 - b. silk, red, gorgeous
 - c. red, silk, gorgeous
 - d. gorgeous, red, silk
7. A sandwich can be as a cooked meal.
 - a. as just nutritious
 - b. a bit nutritious
 - c. every bit as nutritious
 - d. even more nutritious
8. Please write your on the form.
 - a. presently address
 - b. address where you are present
 - c. address presently
 - d. present address
9. "When do you need the report?"
""
 - a. The better the sooner
 - b. The sooner the better
 - c. The soonest the best
 - d. Sooner, better
10. I didn't think the sequel was the first movie.
 - a. nothing as good as
 - b. much good as
 - c. half as good as
 - d. far better as

F. COHESION AND COHERENCE: linking words (See Unit 21.)

beforehand / afterwards

We use *beforehand* to mean *before this / that* and *afterwards* to mean *after this / that*.

If you've eaten a meal, you shouldn't go swimming for a couple of hours **afterwards**.

The minister dealt with the questions well because her advisors had briefed her **beforehand**.

otherwise / likewise

We use *otherwise* to show that if something doesn't happen or is not true, a different or opposite result will follow. *Likewise* means *in the same or similar way*.

It is important to protect all plant species. **Otherwise**, sources of new drugs or food might be destroyed before they are discovered.

When the moon passes in front of the sun, its shadow causes a solar eclipse. **Likewise**, when the earth's shadow falls on the moon, we witness a lunar eclipse.

the former / latter

When two things are mentioned separately, we can use *the former* to refer to the first one and *the latter* to refer to the second.

Only nine miles separate the islands of Sardinia and Corsica. **The former** belongs to Italy, while **the latter** is French.

thereby / therefore

We use *thereby* to mean *by doing this*. *Therefore* means *as a result of a reason that has just been mentioned*.

Working conditions and work ethics vary from country to country **thereby** making it impossible to generalize.

Energy conservation cannot be achieved without the cooperation of ordinary citizens. It is **therefore** essential that the public understands the need to reduce energy consumption.

1. Circle the correct word and explain what each correct answer refers to.

1. Surveillance cameras allow the police to keep constant watch, thereby / therefore reducing the need for so many policeman on the streets. **by allowing them to keep constant watch**
2. You'd better keep these papers in a safe place. Otherwise / Likewise you'll end up losing them.
3. Given the choice of an exotic tropical holiday or a skiing trip, I'd choose the former / the latter, as I don't like hot weather.
4. Most department stores are now open six days a week until late at night. Otherwise / Likewise, many smaller shops have extended their opening hours.
5. The park is home to several animal species and even more birds. Of the latter / the former, the most impressive is the golden eagle, whose wing span can reach two metres.
6. We made the journey very quickly, having worked out a route on the map beforehand / afterwards.

2. Complete the text with the words below.

otherwise • **thereby** • **the latter** • **despite** • **likewise** • **therefore** • **in other words**

As managers, we all face similar issues: budgets, deadlines and the pressure to perform. No matter what field you are in, your job is to manage people. (1) , our task is to help our staff do their jobs and to make the boss look good. I believe that if you do the former, (2) will follow. We can do this by sharing information and by attempting to ensure that our employees have job satisfaction (3) any difficulties they face. Determining what will motivate staff members requires good working relationships, and that basically means good communication. Pass on news from higher levels (where appropriate) (4) making staff feel involved in the big picture. (5) , share magazine articles or emails that may be of interest. Never forget that your employees are your colleagues and must (6) be treated with respect. Basic courtesy is of the utmost importance when assigning tasks, so make requests rather than barking orders. (7) staff will feel resentful and unwilling to cooperate.

EXAM PRACTICE

- A. OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

A BIT OF DIRT DOESN'T HURT

Children from extremely clean homes may be more (1) to develop asthma and hay fever than (2) who grow up on farms or in families that allow a bit of dirt in the house. (3) has been suggested that exposure to the bacteria present in dirt can make an infant more tolerant of irritants (4) the environment by helping the child's immune system to mature. The evidence supports the hypothesis that cleaner homes and technological advances, as well as a (5) range of drug-based treatments, (6) contributed to increases in allergies. The (7) recent study found that children growing up on farms were less prone to allergies and asthma than other children and that the more the children (8) exposed to a certain bacterial component, called endotoxin, the (9) likely they were to have allergies. But allergies are not (10) enough understood for scientists to make (11) useful recommendations yet. They cannot say, for example, that you should clean your house less (12) , or buy a dog if you want to lower the risks, as genetic factors also play a role. Given that the incidence of asthma rose (13) 75% in America between 1980 and 1994, (14) is an urgent need to develop treatment. Scientists are optimistic that the field is rapidly advancing and that current research may make (15) vaccine against allergies possible soon.

- B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. She says she's rarely been as happy as she was on the day she graduated. **DAYS**
She describes her graduation day of her life.
2. Julie seems to have slightly less confidence than she used to. **QUITE**
Julie doesn't used to.
3. The storage room isn't very attractive but it's functional. **NOT**
The storage room functional.
4. It hasn't snowed anywhere near as heavily this year as in previous years. **MUCH**
This year, there in previous years.
5. The reporter wants to interview the person who is organizing the award ceremony. **RESPONSIBLE**
The reporter wants to interview the award ceremony.
6. Everest was a far greater challenge than any other mountain she's climbed. **EASILY**
Everest was she's ever climbed.
7. Your coursework will probably increase in difficulty over time. **AND**
Your coursework is likely over time.
8. Everyone involved in the current situation is under a great deal of stress. **VERY**
The current situation is everyone concerned.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

- A. Read the extract from a website and choose the best meaning for each of the words that follow.



BROOKTON UNIVERSITY

PRIMARY TEACHER TRAINING



The Faculty of Education, housed in new buildings on the main campus, offers courses at undergraduate and postgraduate level. Our courses prepare you to teach at primary level by bringing together theory and practice. During the course you will focus on both academic and skills-based studies. You will gain an in-depth knowledge of the national curriculum and learn how to implement it.

Teaching methods include lectures, seminars, practical workshops and presentations. Courses consist of core modules, such as teaching literacy and numeracy, dealing with learning disabilities and the use of technology, as well as a choice of optional subjects. Modes of assessment include practical tasks, written assignments and examinations. To help with the demanding coursework, tutorial support is available and collaboration with peers is highly encouraged. Our students develop an insight into current educational issues and become life-long learners themselves. A high proportion of our students complete our courses successfully.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. faculty | 7. module |
| a. university department | a. a section of a course |
| b. academic subject | b. a teaching method |
| 2. campus | 8. optional |
| a. central part of a town | a. mandatory |
| b. university grounds and buildings | b. that can be chosen |
| 3. undergraduate | 9. assessment |
| a. for a first degree | a. testing and evaluating |
| b. having already completed a degree | b. improvement through practice |
| 4. curriculum | 10. assignment |
| a. subjects studied | a. task given as part of a class |
| b. handbook of guidelines for teachers | b. academic research |
| 5. lecture | 11. tutorial |
| a. talk delivered to large number of people | a. teaching through discussion with one or several students |
| b. books and published materials | b. psychological counselling |
| 6. workshop | 12. peers |
| a. experience in a real company or school | a. supervisors |
| b. meeting to improve skills through discussion and practical exercises | b. other students |

- B. Find words or phrases below that mean the following.

A-levels • GCSE • junior • kindergarten • primary school • tertiary education
 elementary school • graduation • junior high school • middle school • senior
 freshman • high school • Key Stage • nursery school • sophomore

1. school for students aged 11-14 in the US or
2. one of four levels in the British education system
3. first-year high school or college student in the US
4. second-year high school or college student in the US
5. third-year high school or college student in the US
6. last-year high school or college student in the US
7. school for the first six years of education or
8. ceremony for receiving a degree or qualification
9. examinations taken in Britain to qualify for university studies
10. examinations taken in Britain at age 16
11. secondary school
12. school for very young children or
13. higher education at a college or university

BOOK YOUR VOCABULARY

A. PREPOSITIONS

Match each sentence with the most appropriate ending.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Science shows that there is an exception | a. for original ideas and clear presentation. |
| 2. Val has a very relaxed attitude | b. for their teachers. |
| 3. Theoretical knowledge is no substitute | c. to every rule. |
| 4. Theo made no excuse | d. of his learning disability. |
| 5. Students are expected to show respect | e. in history and sociology. |
| 6. Assessment is based on a combination | f. to her work. |
| 7. Tests can reveal the extent | g. of coursework and exams. |
| 8. Extra tuition can have a great influence | h. for experience. |
| 9. Students will be given credit | i. on a student's final exam grades. |
| 10. Sharon is studying for a degree | j. for his being late. |

B. WORD FORMATION

Many prefixes have Greek or Latin roots. Knowing their meanings can help you to work out the meaning of words, particularly academic and scientific terms.

1. Read the sentences and choose the best explanation of the prefixes in colour from the words below.

many • against • after • two • opposite • between • outside
before • single • below • more than normal • half

1. Preschool children learn better through songs and activities than through formal lessons. **before**
2. Jack has difficulty sitting still in class – his teacher is worried that he might be hyperactive.
3. School inspectors said the quality of teaching at the inner-city school was substandard.
4. Dan spends every break alone – is there a reason for his antisocial behaviour?
5. Morden Comprehensive won the inter-school tennis tournament.
6. The children sat in a semicircle in front of the teacher for story time.
7. Children whose parents are of different nationalities are likely to be bilingual.
8. Dr Jenkins's lectures are always dull because his voice is so monotonous.
9. The education system needs to take into account the fact that we live in a multiracial society.
10. When I finish my degree, I want to go on to postgraduate work.
11. The school organizes a wide variety of extracurricular activities
12. We believe giving students more homework would be counterproductive.

2. Now use the prefixes in the sentences in Exercise 1 to form new words from those below.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1.way | 5.historic | 9.clockwise | 13.-finals |
| 2.-war | 6.annual | 10.sensitive | 14.national |
| 3.titles | 7.market | 11.climax | 15.ordinary |
| 4.conscious | 8.personal | 12.measure | 16.terrestrial |

3. Complete the sentences below with words you formed in Exercise 2.

1. Her dissertation was about **post-war** conditions in Europe after 1945.
2. The of the tournament are to be held on Friday.
3. Most foreign films have rather than being dubbed.
4. tests are held in June and December.
5. The tutor addressed each student in turn, moving around the circle in an direction.
6. Having studied business and two foreign languages, she easily found a job with a company.
7. Most astronomers are sceptical about the existence of life.
8. The first week of lectures and seminars was a bit of an after the excitement of the summer holidays.



C. RELATED WORDS positive and negative / advantages and disadvantages

1. Complete the sentences with the correct word below.

drawbacks • cons □ minuses curse weaknesses • buts

1. We need to consider the pros and before changing the assessment system.
2. A good teacher identifies each pupil's strengths and
3. We cannot yet tell whether a new curriculum will prove a blessing or a
4. Troy is the one who caused the explosion in the science laboratory, no ifs or about it.
5. I'm weighing up the pluses and of doing a degree by distance learning.
6. Like all schemes, this one has benefits and

2. Mark the following words and expressions + (making something better) or - (making something worse).

aid be conducive to detract from have an adverse effect ruin
ameliorate benefit (from) enhance impair spoil

D. ADVERBS Replace the phrases in colour in the text with the most suitable adverb below.

adversely • merely • effectively • academically • intensively • virtually • ideally • actually

Do Learners Need Exams?



effectively
Do learners need exams? Learning something (1) well requires a mixture of motivation, natural ability and good guidance or teaching. (2) In a perfect world, tests, if any, come at the end of this process, just to check what students have learnt, in which case they are (3) just a minor inconvenience. But in reality, exams tend to dominate the entire learning process, sometimes making it stressful and unpleasant. Everyone knows that it is possible to be intelligent and work hard, yet be terrible at exams, which (4) really only test the ability to cram information (5) in a short time and reproduce it under pressure. It is therefore unfair that bad exams results should (6) negatively affect a student's future. Assessment by coursework is one alternative, where students are given the chance to show what they can do by developing a piece of work in depth. Even those who are not gifted (7) when it comes to theoretical subjects can produce high-quality work if they are diligent. However, the availability of papers and projects on the Internet is making it (8) almost impossible to ensure that work submitted is a student's own. With parents and governments pressing for higher educational standards, exams are likely to stay on the curriculum.

E. MULTIPLE MEANINGS term mark degree grade

Use **term**, **mark**, **degree** or **grade** to complete the sentences. Make any necessary changes.

1. It's always a few **degrees** colder in the science lab.
2. Sean tried out for the college football team but he didn't make the
3. There has been a improvement in Simon's schoolwork this year.
4. We've always been on good with our next door neighbours.
5. Under the of the lease, we are not allowed to keep pets in the apartment.
6. I'm doing a modular course and, with 80 credits already, I'm at about the halfway
7. Your assignments will be on a scale of A-E.
8. There's always a of luck involved in passing an exam.
9. In of student numbers, the college has expanded significantly this year.
10. Julia uses multicoloured pens to the information she wants to remember.
11. Sally is trying to come to with the demands of her new timetable.
12. After 10 years as a head teacher, she's at the highest salary

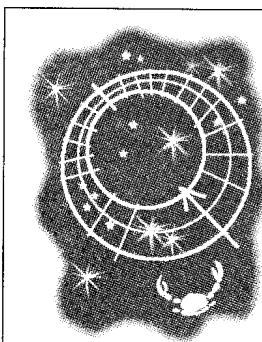
F. METAPHOR AND MEANING

We often talk about mental activity such as understanding or learning as **seeing** or **holding** something.

I can **see** your point. (= *I understand what you're saying.*)

He **picks up** new things easily. (= *He learns new things easily.*)

1. Read the horoscope below. Which of the expressions in colour refer to seeing (S) or holding (H)?



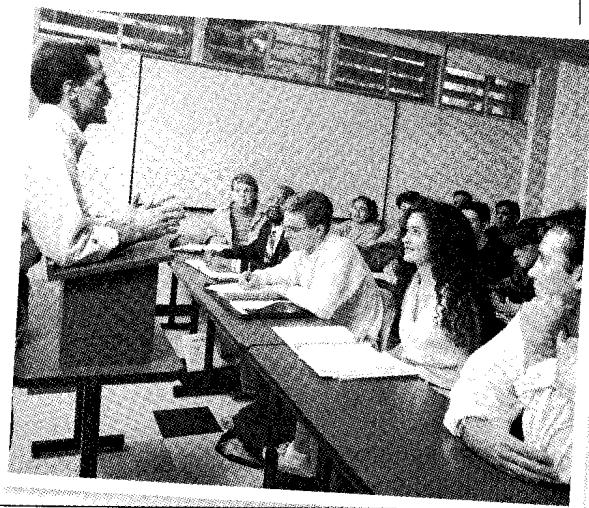
You've probably been wrestling with doubts over the past few weeks, but can't quite put your finger on what's bothering you. Well, a surprising event early next week will open your eyes. Suddenly your purpose on this earth will become quite transparent and you'll be under no illusions as to what you have to do to get it. But be careful around the time of the new moon not to get too carried away – your ability to handle your feelings will be the key to your success.

According to the horoscope, will the person have more or less understanding by the end of the following week?

2. Complete the tutor's description with the following words. Do the words and expressions refer to seeing (S) or holding (H)?

grips • insight • look • grasped • concepts • blind

“ Over the next twelve weeks, we shall be taking a closer (1) **look** at (.....) recent developments in literary criticism. I do not wish to (2) **hold** you with science (.....), so we shall proceed quite slowly. Once you have (3) **grasped** (.....) the basics, we shall be able to tackle postmodern thought and deconstructionism, which are slippery (4) **concepts** (.....), to say the least. However, you can get to (5) **insight** with (.....) these ideas if you do some careful background reading. In the last three sessions, I'll be discussing some key texts in the light of these theories, and showing you how much (6) **grips** (.....) they can give us. ”



G. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Answer the following questions.

1. If you feel that you were born to do a certain job, do you consider that job your **vocation** or vacation?
2. Do teachers evaluate or value their students' abilities through setting written assignments?
3. If a teacher does not believe in being strict with punishments, is she lenient or disciplined?
4. If you are studying online without supervision, do you need motivation, motive or motif to keep going until the end of the course?
5. If school pupils miss classes without permission, is that truancy or bullying?
6. If you have exams coming up, do you need to cram or read for them?
7. If a student comes from a wealthy background and is given every educational opportunity that money can buy, is that child gifted or privileged?
8. If students are required to take a certain subject, is that subject compulsory or obliged?
9. If you have to pay to attend a college of higher education, do you pay for tutorial, tutor or tuition?
10. If a teacher helps a student find simpler ways to learn, does the teacher facilitate, stimulate or simulate learning?

H. COLLOCATIONS Choose the noun that can combine with the adjectives below.

school * student * course * fees * education learning exam tutor * prodigy * research

- | | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. residential
intensive
refresher |  <u>course</u> | 6. private
university
course |  <u>course</u> |
| 2. higher
tertiary
further |  <u>course</u> | 7. school
exam
legal |  <u>course</u> |
| 3. entrance
mock
oral |  <u>course</u> | 8. academic
scientific
latest |  <u>course</u> |
| 4. boarding
single-sex
comprehensive |  <u>course</u> | 9. average
bright
gifted |  <u>course</u> |
| 5. distance
rote
computer-assisted |  <u>course</u> | 10. child
infant
musical |  <u>course</u> |

I. IN OTHER WORDS: phrasal verbs Replace the expressions in colour in the sentences below with the following phrasal verbs. Make any necessary changes.

suck up to * drop out of * pick up * drag on * dumb down * count towards
swot up * kick out * clamp down on * mess around

- I've got tests all next week – I've really got to revise hard.swot up....
- Todd stopped attending school at 16 because he considered schoolwork a waste of time.
- Does this term's test mark contribute to our final grade?
- Apparently, the headmaster is going to implement punishments more strictly for truancy.
- Just because Jilly cleaned the blackboard, it doesn't mean she's trying to make herself popular with the teacher.
- If you make too much noise in Mrs Skinner's class, she'll make you leave.
- I can't wait for the summer holidays – this term has seemed to last a long time.
- So many of the students lacked basic numeracy skills that the course has been made simpler and easier.
- I couldn't hear the teacher because the other kids were behaving badly.
- Surely if Hannah were dyslexic, it would have been noticed long before now.

EXAM PRACTICE

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- It's possible that Jacqueline's schoolwork will suffer if she gets a Saturday job. **ADVERSE**
 If Jacqueline gets a Saturday job, it her schoolwork.
- It has been difficult for the children to accept their parents' separation. **COME**
 The children are finding with their parents' separation.
- It's urgent that the new principal start to deal with the problems facing this school. **GRIPS**
 The new principal will have to the problems facing this school straightforwardly.
- We need to inspect further to discover how badly the building has been damaged. **EXTENT**
 Further inspection is the damage to the building.
- Far stricter measures have been introduced to combat drug dealing. **CLAMPING**
 The authorities are drug dealing.
- The jeweller examined the stones closely to see if they were genuine. **LOOK**
 The jeweller the stones to see if they were genuine.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

A DEGREE IN SURFING?

A few decades ago, entry to university meant studying a strictly (1) subject – a science, or perhaps literature, a foreign language or the classics. These days, (2) education establishments offer every conceivable subject from Chinese medicine to crime scene science. In Britain, this trend coincided with a dramatic increase in the (3) of universities and more relaxed entry requirements, (4) more students to experience tertiary education. Many feared these measures would result in a (5) down of degree-level courses and the press seized every opportunity to ridicule such courses. The creation in 1999 of a bachelor's degree in surfing studies was taken as the ultimate proof that universities were prepared to give (6) in anything in an attempt to attract young people, thereby (7) Britain's academic reputation. In reality, the course, run by Plymouth University in South-West England, is highly scientific, and the curriculum is (8) , including oceanography, meteorology, materials technology and business management. Students on this course and other seemingly more practical courses have (9) performed better in tests than those doing straight science degrees. Far from having an adverse effect on higher education, these new disciplines (10) students and aid learning by offering the opportunity to (11) theoretical knowledge directly. Many of today's (12) have a broad base of knowledge and are well placed to enter the job market.



- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. A average | B intensive | C superior | D academic |
| 2. A higher | B primary | C special | D greater |
| 3. A amount | B number | C size | D quantity |
| 4. A enhancing | B benefiting | C ameliorating | D allowing |
| 5. A lowering | B dumbing | C detracting | D clamping |
| 6. A exams | B research | C degrees | D terms |
| 7. A messing around | B dragging on | C ruining | D cramming |
| 8. A forthcoming | B definite | C conducive | D demanding |
| 9. A virtually | B actually | C ideally | D merely |
| 10. A lighten | B motivate | C count towards | D grasp |
| 11. A apply | B wrestle | C consume | D indulge |
| 12. A credits | B courses | C campuses | D graduates |

C. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

THE RIGHT TO PLAY

The Right to Play (J. Roberts, hardback £18.99) goes right to the heart of current debate over education. With more and more parents turning to private (1) and children as young as seven taking national standard attainment tests, this book is a timely reminder that (2) should be, for the most part, a time of discovery and fun, free from the pressure of continuous (3) and the consequent threat of (4) In the first section, Ms Roberts examines how fashions in (5) have changed over the last century, reaching the (6) that parents should not be fooled into thinking that the most current ideology is (7) correct, as the chances are that it will swiftly be replaced by a new trend. The second section builds on this (8) by offering (9) advice for parents who feel that doing well (10) is not the most important thing in a child's early years.

TUTOR

CHILD

ASSESS

FAIL

EDUCATE

CONCLUDE

NECESSARY

SEE

CONSTRUCT

ACADEMY

A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

PRODIGIES AND PARENTAL PRESSURE

A prodigy is defined as a person with a great natural ability which shows itself (1) an early age; they may become expert musicians or be (2) of doing complex mathematics. Some youngsters develop (3) remarkable abilities that they attract the attention of the media, (4) Arran Fernandez, a five-year old who became (5) youngest person to pass a GCSE, an exam for school leavers. He had obviously benefited intellectually (6) being taught at home by his parents, who said that their son was still a happy and normal child (7) never having been to any form of school. Arran could add up at the age of two and a half, so he obviously had a natural gift, but without a great deal of effort (8) the part of his parents, it's unlikely that he would have applied (9) to serious study. The role parents (10) in such cases is highly controversial. Many people believe that the (11) you push young children, the greater the chances are that the child will have social and emotional problems (12) in life. The story of another young person, Sufiah Yusof, who entered university at the age of 13, is often quoted as proof of this. She (13) out of her studies at Oxford two years later, claiming that her parents attitude (14) her constituted emotional abuse. It seems that being a prodigy is (15) substitute for a normal childhood.

B. GAPPED SENTENCES Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

1. My mobile phone is broken – I it as I was getting out of the car.
Frank has plenty of hints that he would like to be our best man – why don't we ask him?
Teresa out of university in her second year because she wanted to travel the world.
2. Please visit our website if you require information about any of our products.
After leaving school, Jason went on to study tourism at a education college.
Is it only 12 miles to the coast from your house? I thought it was away.
3. There's something strange about the new worker but I can't my finger on it.
You deserve a good mark for your dissertation because you've in so many hours of hard work.
The amateur dramatic society have decided to on a production of *My Fair Lady* this winter.
4. In of number of hours spent at lectures and seminars, arts subjects are often less demanding than the sciences.
It's highly unlikely Sandra and Philip would go on holiday together as they haven't been on speaking since their big fight.
There is nothing to be done about the reduction in our funding so we'll just have to come to with it.
5. The Christmas meal was a real feast – each was more delicious than the previous one.
I haven't driven for years so I'm thinking of taking a refresher before I get behind the wheel again.
The captain informed us that the ship was on and that we would reach our destination in two days' time.
6. Managing a small hotel will be a challenge but I'm sure we can make a of it.
I've never been windsurfing before but I'd like to have a one day.
With exams coming up, and doing extra training for the basketball finals, it's all for me at the moment.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "How are you managing at work, Shelly?"
"It's hard to combine work with looking after a"
 - a. three-months old baby
 - b. three month's old baby
 - c. three-month-old baby
 - d. third month old baby
2. The air turned as night fell.
 - a. coldly
 - b. coldest
 - c. as cold
 - d. cold
3. Derek was wearing at the party.
 - a. the most ridiculous wide, yellow, silk tie
 - b. a very ridiculous yellow, wide, silk tie
 - c. a tie, yellow, wide and ridiculous,
 - d. a yellow, silk ridiculous tie
4. Make sure that the memo is sent to
 - a. all the involved people
 - b. all of people involved
 - c. all the people involved
 - d. all who are involved people
5. A Korean model is if you're looking for a family car.
 - a. the easily more economical choice
 - b. quite the more economical
 - c. much more economically
 - d. by far the most economical choice
6. Johann isn't his elder brother Albert.
 - a. about as sociable as
 - b. quite as sociable as
 - c. so much sociable as
 - d. as sociable like
7. "Is there anything I need to know before I start?"
"Well, it's important that the onions are chopped."
 - a. fine
 - b. finer
 - c. finely
 - d. finest
8. a mix-up at the check-in desk, we ended up sitting separately on the plane.
 - a. Due to
 - b. Because
 - c. In order to
 - d. Owing
9. At the moment we're holding on to our shares but in value, we would probably sell them.
 - a. if they were rise
 - b. for them to rise
 - c. if only they rose
 - d. were they to rise
10. "What's all that noise?"
"The children next door to school today!"
 - a. can have not gone
 - b. must not have gone
 - c. won't be gone
 - d. ought not have gone

VOCABULARY

11. The new science teacher was popular because she was with her classes.
 - a. marked
 - b. adverse
 - c. lenient
 - d. visible
12. You must the school if your child has to leave early.
 - a. notify
 - b. imply
 - c. honour
 - d. stimulate
13. Most of the in the history department have been lecturing for decades.
 - a. crew
 - b. sophomores
 - c. scholarship
 - d. faculty
14. Despite all his Bill agreed to the plan in the end.
 - a. pluses and minuses
 - b. bits and pieces
 - c. pros and cons
 - d. ifs and buts
15. Having delegates register at the conference is a way to ascertain attendance figures.
 - a. virtually
 - b. merely
 - c. academically
 - d. immensely
16. The of Jennifer's name from the list for the graduation ceremony was an unfortunate mistake.
 - a. vocation
 - b. evolution
 - c. omission
 - d. infection
17. Traffic police designated an extra lane to the return of vacationers to the city.
 - a. facilitate
 - b. motivate
 - c. evaluate
 - d. ameliorate
18. The patient is typically during this kind of operation.
 - a. counterclockwise
 - b. semiconscious
 - c. multiracial
 - d. biannual
19. A comfortable bed is to a good night's sleep.
 - a. conclusive
 - b. co-operative
 - c. conservative
 - d. conducive
20. Many people are unable to the rules of complicated card games.
 - a. suck
 - b. grasp
 - c. spoil
 - d. stir

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

Many educators believe that it is better for students to attend school all year round than to have a long summer vacation. Ideally, the summer can be (1) bit as productive as time (2) in a classroom. The vacation should be a carefree time, spent outdoors or with family but, (3) that most parents work, it is all (4) often the case that children are left unsupervised.

All students forget a certain (5) of what they have learned so teachers are (6) to spend time at the beginning of the year reviewing parts of the (7) from the previous grade. Studies have shown that children from low-income families fall (8) behind during the summer than children from (9) backgrounds. One study found that (10) middle-class children slightly improved their reading skills over the summer months, their (11) from low-income families (12) more than two months in reading achievement.

(13) solve the problem, some school districts have (14) a year-round schedule with a series of shorter breaks instead of a three-month summer vacation. A national study carried out by the Ohio State University found, however, that year round schools had no significant impact (15) how much children learn. They found that children learned about (16) much in year-round schools as they did in schools using a nine-month calendar. And while poorer students at the (17) did suffer "learning loss" during the summer months, (18) at the year-round schools also did (19) during the shorter breaks. The author of the study suggested that poor children need to attend more days of school, (20) they will fall behind.

1. a. every
b. almost
c. nearly
d. any
2. a. attending
b. spent
c. is
d. passes
3. a. when
b. besides
c. consequently
d. given
4. a. very
b. more
c. too
d. quite
5. a. minority
b. touch
c. amount
d. number
6. a. going
b. mandatory
c. obliged
d. compulsory
7. a. vacation
b. curriculum
c. campus
d. literacy
8. a. much
b. further
c. even
d. lot
9. a. lowly
b. wealthier
c. similar
d. those
10. a. while
b. yet
c. fewer
d. rather
11. a. students
b. peers
c. assignments
d. courses
12. a. aided
b. rose
c. impaired
d. lost
13. a. Hence
b. Seeing that
c. In order to
d. On account of
14. a. adopted
b. covered
c. opted
d. required
15. a. to
b. with
c. on
d. towards
16. a. reading
b. as
c. fairly
d. not
17. a. others
b. latter
c. beginning
d. study
18. a. those
b. all
c. former
d. they
19. a. likely
b. so
c. this
d. such
20. a. after
b. therefore
c. otherwise
d. unless

Countable and Uncountable Nouns, Articles, Quantifiers

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

A. Circle the correct answer.

1. My aunt never drives at more than 60 kilometres a / an / the hour.
2. A / The / – young don't have much free time to enjoy their childhood nowadays.
3. James is looking for a / the / – work at the moment.
4. George has a / the / – great fear of spiders.
5. They've just bought a new house in the / a / any country.
6. Unfortunately, less / fewer / not many people came to the festival than last year.
7. Tim was so exhausted he slept the all / whole / most day.
8. Neither / Neither of / Neither the student has passed the test.
9. It is generally believed that the / an / a university education will lead to a well-paid job.
10. What great / a great / the great progress the children have made in English this year!
11. Diabetes are / The diabetes is / Diabetes is becoming more and more common in children.
12. Plenty / A great deal / Much of the artist's works have already been sold.
13. How many hours of the / – a sunshine does this region enjoy every day?
14. I'm not sure you have a / much / the talent to make it as an actor.
15. Thanks Kelly! That was any / some / enough meal!

B. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning to the first one.

1. It was a most interesting lecture.
 - a. The lecture was very interesting.
 - b. The lecture was more interesting than any of the others.
2. There's little demand for the product.
 - a. Some people want to buy the product.
 - b. Not many people want to buy the product.
3. Could you pass me the paper?
 - a. I want you to give me a piece of paper.
 - b. I want you to give me the newspaper.
4. Any of the films would be suitable for teenagers.
 - a. None of the films suit teenagers.
 - b. All of the films suit teenagers.
5. Helen has made quite a few friends since moving to Athens.
 - a. Helen doesn't have very many friends in Athens.
 - b. Helen has a number of friends in Athens.

Score: / 20

RULES

A noun may refer to a person, place, thing or an abstract idea. Nouns which describe things we can count are known as countable or count nouns, and have singular and plural forms. Nouns which describe substances or ideas which cannot be counted are called uncountable or non-count nouns.

PROBLEMS WITH PLURALS

Some nouns have irregular plural forms.

woman – women, person – people

Some nouns remain unchanged in the plural.

aircraft, fish, sheep

Some nouns are always plural and take a plural verb.

cattle, police, earnings, premises, surroundings, savings, valuables, thanks, congratulations, odds, oats, clothes

These are often things with two parts including:

- clothing
- tools and equipment

trousers, jeans, shorts, tights, glasses
scissors, scales, binoculars, pliers

Some nouns end in -s but are singular. These include:

- diseases
- games
- subjects of study and activities

mumps, measles, diabetes
cards, draughts, billiards, dominoes
physics, mathematics, statistics, politics, gymnastics

Compound nouns are made plural by adding -s to the main noun.

address books, credit cards, men drivers, passers-by, runners-up, sisters-in-law

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

Uncountable nouns are singular, have no plural form, and are followed by a singular verb. They include:

- groups made up of similar items
- substances: liquids, solids, gases and materials
- languages and fields of study
- sports, hobbies and recreation
- general activities (usually gerunds)
- natural phenomena
- abstract nouns

furniture, clothing, equipment, fruit, money, luggage, rubbish / garbage, traffic, make-up
water, blood, soup; butter, gold, earth; air, steam, oxygen; wool, cotton, plastic
English, French, Greek, chemistry, history, architecture
tennis, football, golf, bridge, basketball
sleeping, driving, playing, walking, reading
weather, rain, snow, fog, hail, thunder, lightning, darkness, sunshine, gravity, electricity, humidity
life, nature, education, happiness, violence, news, work, advice, anger, hunger, proof, evidence, luck

Notes

1. Some uncountable nouns also exist as countable nouns but with a different meaning.

Coffee grows in Brazil (*uncountable noun*)

Do you want a **coffee**? (= *a drink, countable noun*)

Other examples include:

The ornament was made of **glass**.

I was so thirsty I drank two **glasses** of water.

He is having **difficulty** finding a job.

I have come up against a **difficulty**.

Wood is a durable material.

The children like to play in the **woods**.

Hurry up or you'll be late for **work**.

Crime and Punishment is my favourite of Dostoyevsky's **works**.

The blast caused extensive **damage** to the house. The court awarded **damages** of €20,000 to the victim.

2. Nouns which refer to a group of people can be followed by either a singular or plural verb. This may depend on whether the group is seen as acting as one, or as separate individuals.

The government **has** / **have** introduced a new property tax.

The team **is** / **are** playing well today.

3. We use specific nouns to itemise uncountable nouns.

a **piece** of advice

a **piece** / **sheet** of paper

a **slice** / **loaf** of bread

a **grain** of rice / sugar / salt

INDEFINITE ARTICLE (*a / an*), DEFINITE ARTICLE (*the*), ZERO ARTICLE (-)

***a, an* are used with singular nouns**

- when the nouns have not been mentioned before or are non-specific
- with jobs, professions, nationalities
- in certain numbers and expressions of quantity, price
- frequency and speed (*a / an* means one)
- to refer to one example of a class or species
- in exclamations with singular, countable nouns
- introducing something not known to the reader / hearer
- with some abstract nouns in a particular sense: *horror / dislike / love / hatred / fear / knowledge / awareness*
- with a proper name when we don't know him / her personally

***the* is used with count and non-count nouns**

- for something specific or known to the listener
- for things, activities or people associated with everyday life
- with plural groups / collective nouns
- with singular nouns to talk about a whole class of objects, people, animals when describing their typical behaviour or characteristics
- with an adjective to refer to a group of people
- titles, place names, other names
- rivers, seas, mountain ranges, groups of islands, deserts, collective or plural countries, points of the compass
- to show that you have enough of something
- unique objects (*sun, moon, sky, earth*)
- with *first, last, next, only, same, right, wrong*
- with superlatives
- to refer to musical instruments and dances
- for emphasis (pronounced *thee*)
- to specify which person we are talking about

zero article (or no article) is used with:

- languages, fields of study
- countries, continents, towns, mountains, lakes, islands, shops
- illnesses and diseases
- methods of transport
- meals, sports, games, hobbies, colours
- abstract nouns
- unique institutions / place names / place names that include another name
- names and titles that include names
- with *work, home, school, college, university, church, prison, bed, hospital* when we imply the function of the place and not just the specific place itself
But: *the cinema, the office, the theatre*
AmE: *in / to the hospital* is used rather than *in / to hospital*.
- plural nouns referring to a group or class in general

I ate **a bowl** of cereal for breakfast.

My daughter is **an architect**.

a hundred, a thousand, a couple, a metre, a pair, a dozen, a lot of, a great many, a quarter, half a pound, a few, a little, a great deal of, 90p a kilo

twice a day, 60 miles an hour

A blue whale can weigh up to 135 tons.

Such a **silly remark!** What a **pretty hat!**

There's a **great Indian restaurant** in that street.

He has a **dislike / horror / love / hatred** of alcoholic drinks.
He has a **fair knowledge** of biology.

A Mrs Jackson called and left you a message.

The room we were given was very comfortable.

He boiled **the water** for the potatoes.

I'm going to **the dentist**.

The press has a responsibility to publish the truth.

The car has changed our perception of distance.
(= Cars have changed ...)

The elderly often suffer from neglect.

My cousin took part in **the London Marathon**.

Paris is **on the Seine**.

We went sailing in **the Aegean**.

I live in **the United Kingdom / the Netherlands**.

The sun sets in **the east**.

She has **the money** to buy a new flat.

There are thousands of stars in **the sky**.

He looks **the same** to me. When was **the last time** you saw him?

It was simply **the greatest** show I'd ever seen.

She plays **the flute**.

Selby's is **the restaurant** in town.

The Stephen King I know can barely write a letter, let alone a novel.

She speaks **Spanish**.

He's studying **electronics**.

Pakistan is in **Asia**.

We visited **Hydra**.

John had **measles** as a kid.

Should we go on **foot** or by **train**?

Let's play **football** later. It's time for **lunch**.

Education is one way to fight **violence**.

Parliament will decide today.

We lived in **Athens**.

She ate at **Dean's Restaurant**.

David Beckham, Captain Cook, President Kennedy

He's in **prison**. (as a **prisoner**)

The prison was built in 1856. (the **building**)

I met him at **college**. (we were **students**)

We met at **the college**. (that was our **meeting place**)

She's in **the hospital** having an operation.

Tourists flock to the islands every summer.

Notes

1. *The* is used to talk generally about common concepts (*the weather, the past, the wind, the environment, etc.*). If we are referring to one example / kind of these concepts, *a / an* may be possible.
We are working for a **cleaner environment**. Imagine a **future** where nobody is ill.
2. To refer to a class (of people, animals, etc.) or to one individual, we can use either *a / an* or *the*.
A / The car contributes to air pollution.

QUANTIFIERS

The following table shows which quantifiers are typically used with which kind of nouns.

singular nouns	plural nouns	uncountable nouns	both countable and uncountable nouns
each, every, another, either, neither, the whole, the entire	many, (a) few, both, several, most, more, a couple of, all, each of, either of, neither of	much, more, (a) little, a bit of, a great deal of, too much / little	some, any, no, a lot of, lots of, most, half, plenty of, enough

Notes

1. We normally use **some** in positive sentences and **any** in questions and negative sentences. **Some** can be used in questions when a positive answer is expected, or in suggestions, offers or requests.

Have you got **some** time to help me this evening?

Why don't you take **some** vitamins?

Isn't there **some** way we can help?

2. **Each / every** = two or more, **every** = three or more. Only **each** can be used when there are only two things. If there are more than two there is no difference in meaning between **each** and **every**.

The teacher gave a gift to **each / every** student.

Each may suggest that the speaker is thinking of people as individuals, whereas **every** suggests all. The phrase **each and every** emphasises every single one.

She counted **each and every** piece of silver to be sure nothing had been lost.

3. **Little / few** have a negative connotation.

We have **little time** left. (*probably not enough*)

Few people volunteered. (*a disappointing number*)

A little / a few have a positive connotation.

Let's grab a coffee. We have **a little time** to spare. (*enough for a coffee*)

When we asked for volunteers, **a few people** said they'd help. (*a good number*)

The expression **quite a few** means a large number.

This new diet already has **quite a few** followers.

4. **Some** can be used for emphasis.

Wow! That was **some** performance.

Some 300 people turned up for the talk.

5. **Any** can be used in positive sentences to mean *it doesn't matter which*.

Any university student will tell you that you have to study hard to pass your exams.

6. Quantifiers can be used as the subject of a clause, sometimes in place of a noun where the meaning is clear.

Little is known about her past. (= *little information*)

Few chose the archaeology course. (= *few students*)

7. Choice of quantifier often depends on the level of formality. **Few / little** and **no** are generally more formal. **Not many, (not) much, (not) a lot, lots** are more informal.

Few people are aware of the local residents' committee's activities. (*formal*)

Not a lot of people know about the local residents' committee's activities. (*informal*)

8. Using *the* makes the meaning specific, not general.

Most fifteen-year-olds would like more free time. (*in general*)

Most **of the** fifteen-year-olds would like more free time. (*refers to a specific group of fifteen-year-olds, obvious in context*)

PRACTICE

A. Do the verbs in colour agree with the nouns they belong to? Write ✓ or ✗ and correct them where necessary.

- 1. The jury hasn't announced a decision yet.
- 2. None of the people who attend such seminars enjoys them.
- 3. A few people who are taking the course wants to sit the exam this December.
- 4. The police is on the way.
- 5. The advice we were given wasn't very helpful.
- 6. Twenty dollars a day is a very low salary.

B. ARTICLES Complete the sentences below using a, an, the or -.

- 1. My uncle is managing director of company that makes plastic goods like buckets and bowls.
- 2. director held party for cast after performance on the first night.
- 3. On Saturday nights, village square in Arahova is packed with skiers looking for nightlife after day on slopes.
- 4. dentist I go to has really good way of making you forget pain.
- 5. It is custom here to paint Easter eggs in bright colours.
- 6. Receiving honorary degree is one of greatest awards someone can receive.
- 7. In past, education was free only at schools run by church.
- 8. I left school when I was 16, but most of my class stayed on to take more exams.

C. The following encyclopaedia entry is about an animal. All of the articles have been removed. Replace them where necessary.

The Iguana is unusual kind of lizard. Most species live in deserts, but few live in tropical rainforests. Green iguanas are found in Mexico and South America, and they are often captured for pet trade. As result, iguanas are in danger of extinction in many areas. Although they live in trees, they remain near water, where they hide when attacked by enemy. Green iguanas eat fruit, flowers and leaves, unlike other lizards, which eat insects. Most unusual species, marine iguana, found only in Galapagos Islands, is only lizard that lives in sea.



D. Complete each sentence with one suitable word.

- 1. I don't want to interfere but can I give you a of advice?
- 2. We have read and every competition entry carefully.
- 3. There have been quite a burglaries round here lately.
- 4. A great of time and effort went into constructing the website.
- 5. Could you get me half kilo of cheddar cheese from the delicatessen?
- 6. You can choose French or German as your second foreign language.
- 7. I've nearly finished. Just give me a of minutes to do the paperwork.
- 8. mother can tell you that looking after a baby is a full-time job.
- 9. We spent little time in Paris to see all the sights.
- 10. Jane found the novel so absorbing that she read the book in a weekend.
- 11. Do you know how to dance samba?
- 12. Harry doesn't have commitment it takes to reach the top.

E. Choose the correct answer to complete the extracts.



1. TELEPHONE CONVERSATION

“You don’t have to worry about bringing (1) **any / a bit of** supplies because we’ll have (2) **a little / little** time for planning and shopping before we set off. Quite (3) **few / a few** of my friends have camped there before and they say there are (4) **a / –** couple of snack bars where we can eat cheaply if we don’t want to cook (5) **whole / the whole** time.”



2. LECTURE ON GENETICS

“The human genome consists of some 100,000 genes, (1) **much / many** of which are thought to affect our health. Although the (2) **most / majority** of human genes remain uninvestigated, scientists have recently succeeded in cataloguing the (3) **all / entire** sequence.”



3. OFFICE MEMO

“It has been noted that (1) **several / a great deal of** members of staff have been spending (2) **a lot of / plenty of** time making personal calls during working hours. Although management recognizes that (3) **few / some** calls may be necessary, please note that lunch breaks should afford enough time for dealing with (4) **– / the** personal matters.”

F. Complete the sentences with the correct nouns below. Each noun should be used twice. Decide if an article is necessary or not, and put the verb given into the correct form.

travel • business • experience • damage • nature

1. **Business** is (be) bad all over the country with small, privately run companies suffering more than any other.
2. Human activity has long been harmful to the planet and some people believe that (get) its revenge now.
3. I believe we have when we are growing up (shape) the kind of adult we later become.
4. A lot of (do) to our property by the hurricane and we need to come up with the money for the repairs.
5. of a crime usually (determine) the kind of punishment given.
6. John spent last year visiting various parts of Asia; his in the east (be) the subject of his new book.
7. (award) by the court to all the factory workers injured in the explosion.
8. Most people would agree that (broaden) the mind as you get to see so many different ways of life.
9. working with animals (require) for the job at the vet’s surgery.
10. The majority of small (face) some kind of financial problems at the current time.

EXAM PRACTICE

- A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

Nicholas Flamel

There can be (1) under-twenties who have not read one of the *Harry Potter* books, seen one of the films or played the video game. The characters and places created (2) J.K. Rowling, from Hogwarts School for Wizards (3) Dumbledore, the wizard headmaster, are now household names. But not many people realise that the author used real historical figures and places (4) source material for her stories.

The key figure (5) the end of the first book (*Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*), Nicholas Flamel, is based on a rich and famous alchemist of the (6) name, who lived in Paris in the Middle Ages. In Rowling's book, written in 1995, the philosopher is 665 years old. (7) real life, Flamel, a successful scribe and bookseller, was born in 1330. He was (8) student of alchemy and, according to (9) diary, he succeeded in transforming base metals into gold in 1382. The philosopher's stone kept at Hogwarts can not only create gold, but it has the power to make men immortal, (10) explains Flamel's age.

The real Flamel was (11) a well-known philanthropist (12) created housing for (13) poor, founded free hospitals and endowed churches. (14) of the hostels Flamel and his wife opened for the poor people of Paris (15) stands today and operates as a restaurant.

- B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. It wasn't at all easy for us to find somewhere to stay. **GREAT**

It was eventually found somewhere to stay.

2. Harry complained about the weather throughout the holiday. **ENTIRE**

Harry about the weather.

3. Strict punishments for littering have recently been introduced by the police. **CLAMPING**

Nowadays, the police littering.

4. Anne's work has hardly got any better at all this term. **LITTLE**

There Anne's work this term.

5. The extracurricular computer lessons have been beneficial to all the students. **FROM**

Every the extracurricular computer lessons.

6. It's by doing gymnastics that I stay fit. **WHAT**

Gymnastics shape.

7. I wasn't brave enough to enter the burning building again. **COURAGE**

I didn't back into the burning building.

8. Violent films do not appeal to Otto at all. **DISLIKE**

Otto violent films.

TOPIC VOCABULARY

A. Read the advertisement and answer the questions that follow.

HALLIWELL'S BANK

Starting a course as a full-time student? You need a bank account now! Come and check out what Halliwell's Bank can do for you!

We offer a range of services for students including interest-bearing savings accounts and current accounts which offer instant access, a Vista card for withdrawals and payments at our ATMs, and your own chequebook, indispensable for paying your academic fees and everyday expenses. Our friendly student banking advisors are available to deal with individual enquiries and offer personalized advice on budgeting your income. We also offer free overdrafts to cover your needs, as we know how hard it is to manage on a grant, and we have loans at favourable rates.

With over 50 on-campus branches, there's bound to be one near where you are studying. A simple visit is all it takes to open your account – and with every new student account we're giving away a £30 voucher that can be redeemed at all major record shops.



Find words that mean:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. account designed to manage your daily finances | 5. ability to borrow money by taking more out of your account than you have |
| 2. taking money from your account | 6. money given to a student as support while studying |
| 3. planning your spending so you don't spend too much | 7. money that is lent |
| 4. money you earn or receive | 8. coupon which can be used instead of money |
| | 9. use to pay for something |

B. SHOPS AND SELLING What are these people referring to? Use the words below to complete the sentences.

bargain hunting • incentive scheme • junk mail • retail therapy
 brand loyalty • inflation rate • mail order • vending machine
 chain store • interest-free credit • market research • window shopping

- “ 1. So for every pound you spend, you get a point, and when you've got over a hundred, you can redeem them for gifts or money-off vouchers.
2. Enter the code for the item you want, then insert coins equalling the price shown. No change can be given.
3. The cash price for this cooker is £720. But we're offering 12 monthly instalments of £60.
4. I don't care what anyone says. I use Whitey washing powder and wouldn't change it for any other.
5. We have a branch in most towns, and goods can be exchanged in any one of our outlets within 15 days.
6. I was really fed up, so I hit the high street! I got some boots and a skirt, neither of which I really needed. I spent a fortune but it really cheered me up.
7. I'm not going to buy anything – I haven't got any cash on me anyway. But it's fun to have a look!
8. This woman stopped me in the street and asked me all sorts of questions about how often I buy soft drinks and what brands I prefer.
9. I often spend hours scouring the Sunday street market. It's a great place to track down bits and pieces to add to my ever-expanding wardrobe – without spending a fortune of course.
10. It really bugs me when stores and banks send you personalized letters offering you special deals and huge loans you don't want. I just chuck the envelopes in the bin without reading them.
11. Choose any item from our 500-page catalogue and have it delivered to your door within 48 hours.
12. According to government figures, it has risen to 4% this month, mostly because of rising food prices and the cost of gas. ”

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY

A. Circle the odd one out. Justify your choice.

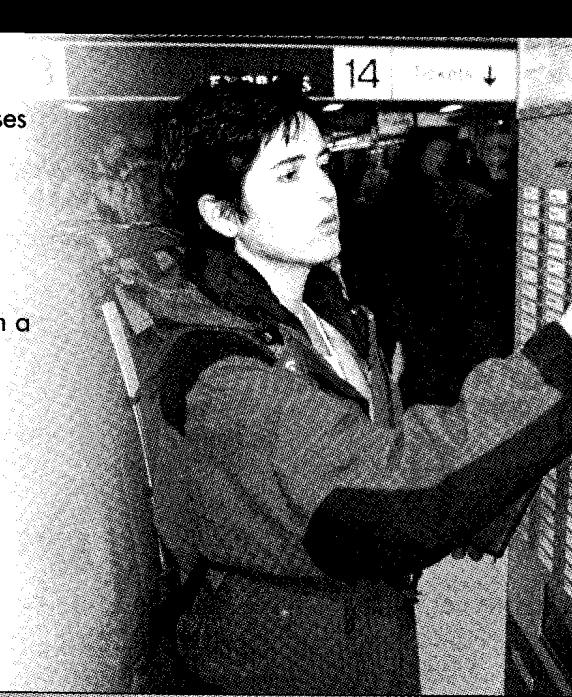
1. <input type="checkbox"/> pricey	<input type="checkbox"/> astronomical	<input type="checkbox"/> exorbitant	<input type="checkbox"/> reasonable
2. <input type="checkbox"/> prosperous	<input type="checkbox"/> hard up	<input type="checkbox"/> impoverished	<input type="checkbox"/> bankrupt
3. <input type="checkbox"/> takings	<input type="checkbox"/> income	<input type="checkbox"/> proceeds	<input type="checkbox"/> expenditure
4. <input type="checkbox"/> capital	<input type="checkbox"/> funds	<input type="checkbox"/> resources	<input type="checkbox"/> instalments
5. <input type="checkbox"/> mortgage	<input type="checkbox"/> currency	<input type="checkbox"/> loan	<input type="checkbox"/> overdraft
6. <input type="checkbox"/> shares	<input type="checkbox"/> merchandise	<input type="checkbox"/> goods	<input type="checkbox"/> stock

B. PREPOSITIONS Complete the text with the most suitable prepositions.

FOR YOUR INFORMATION

Once you have turned 16, you can get around London (1) the underground and London Transport buses (2) reduced rates with youth tickets. Seven-day and monthly tickets are (3) sale, at a cost (4) 30% less than the equivalent adult-rate Travelcard. Youth tickets can be purchased (5) production of a 16-17 Photocard. To obtain a photocard simply take your passport and a recent passport-sized photograph to any Tube station, avoiding peak times if possible.

You must have your photocard (6) you when purchasing your ticket to qualify (7) the saving. Passengers must carry both ticket and photocard on all journeys and these must be produced (8) request.



C. PHRASAL VERBS off

Circle the correct answer.

1. “ Well, it all started when I was (1) made / laid off from the engineering firm where I worked. It wasn't much of a surprise – orders had been (2) tailing / ending off for a long time, and though the directors tried to raise some capital by (3) selling / buying off some stock, that plan didn't (4) come / work off and soon everyone was out of a job. That's when I decided to start up on my own. I took out a small business loan. Money was really tight at first but once I'd (5) taken / paid the loan off, I started to turn a profit and it's been really fulfilling. ”
2. “ I (6) came / set off first thing in the morning and spent all day bargain hunting. By about 4.00, I'd had enough, so I decided to (7) send / round the day off with a coffee in one of those upmarket places. Well, the coffee was dreadful – and expensive. They really (8) tear / rip people off up there! Anyway, I went into the bathroom to freshen up, and while I was washing my hands, a girl came in, snatched my handbag and (9) made / put off with it. I ran out after her but she'd (10) left / taken off by the time I got outside. I thought about reporting it to the police but in the end, I just (11) paid / wrote it off to experience. But it's really (12) put / set me off shopping in town. I think I'll stick to my local high street in future. ”

D. RELATED WORDS getting and keeping things

Replace the words or phrases in colour using the correct form of the most suitable verb below. There are more words than you need.

acquire ◉ house ◉ retain ◉ contain ◉ receive ◉ seize
store ◉ secure ◉ absorb ◉ purchase ◉ obtain

1. Frozen meat can be safely kept in a deep freeze for 12 months. **stored**
 2. The new wing of the museum will be the home of the Victorian collection.
 3. When you're tired, it is difficult to take in and remember what you read.
 4. Customs officers took by force five tons of smuggled cigarettes in Dover last week.
 5. The books were sent off yesterday, so you should get them some time next week.
 6. As long as you live, you never stop gaining knowledge.
 7. British citizens intending to visit Mexico need to get a visa from the embassy.
 8. The government managed to get a huge loan from an international bank.
 9. The new chairman bought 51% of the company's shares.

E. WORD FORMATION

1. Complete the chart with verbs formed from the words below. One word can be used twice.

<u>authority</u>	diverse	false	identity	moral	publicity	subsidy
category	drama	global	intense	mystery	simple	symbol
character	economy	grateful	internal	neutral	special	typical
<u>clear</u>	equal	horror	local	personal	specific	
commercial	example	human	memory	popular	stable	

-ise

authorise

clarify

-ify

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Complete the sentences below with verbs you formed in Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

- 

1. To pass the history exam, we need to **memorise** dozens of dates and names.

2. After qualifying as a doctor, she decided to in paediatrics.

3. A trip like that is a huge expense but if we , we'll be able to afford it.

4. The writer appeared on several chat shows to her new novel.

5. His arguments are confusing – he needs to his thoughts.

6. The system for loan approval is very complicated – it needs to be

7. Please the size and colour of the garment you want.

8. The government says it will its efforts to bring down inflation.

9. Payments must be by the office manager.

10. Originally the company made only garden tools, but then they into a wide range of metal products.



F. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED Answer the following questions

1. If you say something is priceless, is it also worthless?
 2. If somebody's help was invaluable, did they help you a lot or not much?
 3. If you get 10% off, do you get a discount or a deduction?
 4. If times are hard, are people having economic, economical or finance problems?
 5. Is the money a student gets from the government a grant, a bonus or a subsidy?
 6. If you owe money, are you in debit, in debt or in credit?
 7. If you are making a profit, is your business lucrative, bankrupt or well off?
 8. If you are extravagant, do you splash out or economise?

G. METAPHOR AND MEANING moral accounting

Expressions to do with money and debt are often used to talk about **moral obligation**.

Choose the best reply to the following remarks.

1. Do you think the train robber should be released from jail?
 - a. How can we ever repay him?
 - b. Yes, he has paid his debt to society.
2. I'll help you move your furniture – we can use my van.
 - a. Thanks, I owe you one.
 - b. Thanks, I'll hold you accountable.
3. Why did you buy Joan those flowers?
 - a. I'm paying her back for what she did.
 - b. I'm indebted to her.
4. Pat was unlucky not to win a medal!
 - a. He deserves credit for his efforts.
 - b. He took it into account.
5. Why did you start doing voluntary work?
 - a. I wanted to give something back.
 - b. I think I've earned it.

H. MULTIPLE MEANINGS Choose the word from the list below which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

figure • bank • charge • credit
branch • capital • commission • brand

1. The cat sat on a watching the bird's every move.
The company has decided to out into other markets.
These goods need to be sent to our in Oxford.
2. He was arrested on a of falsifying company accounts.
There is no for delivery within a 20-mile radius.
Our department is in of mortgage applications.
3. The office will be closed on Monday as it is a holiday.
The town grew along the northern of the River Tyne.
..... charges on unauthorised overdrafts can be astronomical.
4. The statue is a of a woman with her arms outstretched.
Inflation used to be 15%, whereas today the is around 4%.
Darwin is an important in science.
5. You have to give Rob for trying, even if things didn't work out for him.
Smith's is offering 36 months interest-free on all electrical goods.
When you open a savings account, we will you with £20 as an introductory gift.
6. A freelance journalist, Bill is currently working on a for *National Geographic* magazine.
As an encyclopaedia salesman, I didn't earn a regular salary, I worked on
The government set up an independent to investigate Internet trading.
7. Milan is often called the fashion of Europe.
Many object to punishment on the grounds that it is immoral to take another person's life.
There's no way we can raise the to buy our own office.
8. Lucky Todd. He got a –new car as an 18th birthday present.
Which of coffee do you usually buy, or don't you have a preference?
It's all too easy to someone a liar before you really know the facts.



I. IN OTHER WORDS: expressions with *take* and *make*

Complete the following sentences with the expression below that means the same as the words in colour at the end of the line. Make any necessary changes.

takings • take my time • take out a loan • take account of • take it lying down

take (one's) custom elsewhere • make a fortune • make do • make ends meet • make the most of

1. I like to take my time browsing around the shops before I decide. do something at your leisure
2. Although I shop here regularly, I shall if you refuse to exchange this item. not go to the shop again
3. When calculating the amount you may borrow, both partners' earnings are considered
4. It is the shop manager's job to count up the day's earnings in a shop
5. Hugh to cover the cost of renovating his house. borrowed money
6. Fiona claims to have on the stock market. become rich
7. They are well off for the first time in their lives, so they're it. get the maximum enjoyment from a situation
8. Inflation is high these days so it's getting harder to have enough money to buy what you need
9. We can't afford new cases, so we'll just have to with the luggage we have. manage with what is available
10. A rival company has been spreading untrue rumours, but we're not going to accept attack without trying to defend yourself

EXAM PRACTICE

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space.

Big Brother Is Watching You Shop

In the past, if retailers wanted to know shoppers' opinions of store displays and layout, they would conduct (1) research and ask people their opinions. Now, they are (2) the most of new technology to learn about consumer behaviour. Electronic sensors can count the number of shoppers in a particular part of a store, thus enabling managers to send staff immediately to that area. Information like this is also useful for planning floor space and (3) the effectiveness of displays. Scanning (4) record customers' eye movements when looking at shelves, providing concrete evidence about what we are attracted to as we (5) around a store. In some more upmarket clothes stores, the merchandise itself is being used to (6) shopper behaviour. In the New York (7) of Prada, for example, each garment carries a tiny electronic chip, which not only (8) data such as its price, it also (9) its place of origin and transmits information about its movements. When a customer takes something into the dressing room, a signal from the garment causes details to appear on a computer screen with information about the item of clothing. Retailers are (10) to find this technology invaluable in their quest to (11) sales. Consumers, however, may be (12) by stores that watch their every move.



- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A market | B direct | C retail | D credit |
| 2. A taking | B getting | C buying | D making |
| 3. A interesting | B specialising | C figuring | D evaluating |
| 4. A debits | B devices | C laboratories | D novices |
| 5. A watch | B gaze | C browse | D observe |
| 6. A involve | B focus | C monitor | D absorb |
| 7. A share | B branch | C brand | D fund |
| 8. A acquires | B houses | C retains | D contains |
| 9. A identifies | B simplifies | C authorises | D publicises |
| 10. A bound | B conceivable | C owing | D doubtless |
| 11. A boost | B seize | C expand | D strengthen |
| 12. A ripped off | B put off | C bought off | D taken off |

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Big companies spend a lot of money creating an original (1) for their product. Many factors play a part in (2) a product – the brand name, the overall look, and the slogan used in any (3) to name a few. Look-alike products, often produced by unknown companies, mimic a well-known brand name and shoppers, often (4) , go for the (5) instead of the real thing. According to research, 40% of (6) don't expect there to be any difference in quality between the two. Marketing is now so (7) that large corporations are (8) their efforts to prevent others from copying their ideas. Copycats may find themselves in court being sued for (9) another company's logo or product. Copycat products are also often sold by street (10) who make a living selling things like handbags and perfumes illegally. Consumers should realise that it is against the law to purchase these items too.

IDENTIFY
POPULAR
ADVERTISE

INTENTION
IMITATE
CONSUME
COMPETE
INTENSE
FALSE

VEND

C. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. They will give you a ticket when you show your ID card. **PRODUCTION**
A ticket will be of your ID card.
2. Poor service is the reason that clients have given for not doing business with us anymore. **CUSTOM**
Clients say that they have of our poor service.
3. They are putting the coin collection in the main gallery for the time being. **HOUSED**
The coin collection is in the main gallery.
4. If you have a membership card, you get a discount in our shop. **RATES**
You can if you have a membership card.
5. You cannot sign on the manager's behalf without her permission. **AUTHORISATION**
The manager's for you to be able to sign on her behalf.

A. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

LEARNING TO MANAGE MONEY

It is generally agreed that education should prepare young people to be responsible and productive members of the society (1) which they live. When reformists talk about making education more relevant, they often focus on the need for work-related skills like computer literacy or careers guidance. But (2) young people enter "the big wide world", many may find (3) entirely ignorant of an area which they will probably spend (4) hours thinking or worrying (5) : their finances.

School leavers, whether they go (6) to further study or get a job, will suddenly be required to handle a bank account, tax obligations and offers of credit. Until now, there has been (7) or no financial education in schools. It is (8) wonder that so many young people get into debt, when there (9) not enough impartial financial information available.

A recent survey of 15- and 16-year-olds in Britain showed just (10) unaware the younger generation is when it comes (11) the cost (12) living. While most of them knew how much a computer game costs, (13) had any idea of the costs of obligations like rent, heating and electricity. There is clearly (14) need for practical financial education in schools to equip (15) next generation for a complex and competitive world.

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word given in capitals at the end of some lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

LONGLIFE INSURANCE

Are you concerned about your income once you reach (1) ?

RETIRE

Are you (2) by banks talking about ISA and TESSA

MYSTERY

(3) schemes? We at Longlife Insurance can offer you clear and easy-to-understand advice that will (4) the whole process and will ensure you a comfortable standard of (5) as a pensioner.

SAVE

SIMPLE

LIFE

All you have to do is call our number, or fill in the coupon below, (6) your current income and the level of income you would like to have, and we will send you details of the pension scheme or life insurance policy that best suits your needs. You'll find our guides an (7) source of information on the (8) that are open to you, and we are confident that our deals offer the best chances of financial (9) in the years to come.

SPECIFIC

VALUE

OPT

SECURE

In today's uncertain (10) climate, the sooner you start planning, the better!

ECONOMY

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The publicist claims that of the CD have already been sold.
 - a. some 30,000 copies
 - b. many the 30,000 copies
 - c. a few of 30,000 copies
 - d. a lot of 30,000 copies
2. companies have announced economic losses recently.
 - a. Much of the
 - b. A several of
 - c. A large number of
 - d. Plenty of the
3. The same DNA is present in cell of our bodies.
 - a. either
 - b. all of the
 - c. each and every
 - d. a lot of
4. "I am terrified of flying."
"..... the same way."
 - a. Lots of people feel
 - b. Many of the people feel
 - c. A lot of people feels
 - d. Most of the people feels
5. Are the colors of the American flag the British flag?
 - a. same with
 - b. the same as
 - c. both the same and
 - d. as much as
6. It's important that legislation protect
 - a. the disadvantaged
 - b. all disadvantaged
 - c. people disadvantaged
 - d. a disadvantaged
7. "What are you looking for?"
"Do you know where kept?"
 - a. the binocular is
 - b. are the binocular kept
 - c. a binoculars are
 - d. the binoculars are
8. The competition officials have not yet announced
 - a. who are the judges going to be
 - b. the judges shall be who
 - c. who are the judges
 - d. who the judges will be
9. "I should have listened to you."
"Well, it's no use that now!"
 - a. you say
 - b. saying
 - c. for you to say
 - d. to say
10. The new school complex cost the city council had budgeted for.
 - a. just twice as much as
 - b. twice more by far than
 - c. twice much more than
 - d. almost twice as much as

VOCABULARY

11. You can buy drinks from the machine.
 - a. shopping
 - b. retail
 - c. vending
 - d. junk
12. The government has agreed to health care for all citizens over 60 years of age.
 - a. commercialize
 - b. stabilize
 - c. characterize
 - d. subsidize
13. The building has been carefully restored so that its original character would be
 - a. retained
 - b. repaid
 - c. recruited
 - d. rewound
14. Environmentalists claim that the local bird population would be affected by the new road.
 - a. intensively
 - b. audibly
 - c. adversely
 - d. defectively
15. How on earth does Grace make ends on such a meager salary?
 - a. do
 - b. pay
 - c. hold
 - d. meet
16. My uncle's hobby turned into business when he started leasing boats.
 - a. an exorbitant
 - b. a lucrative
 - c. an extravagant
 - d. an impoverished
17. Tracey was upset when her plan didn't
 - a. come off
 - b. work off
 - c. pick up
 - d. go with
18. The marketing department feels that a large discount would be the best for customers.
 - a. inflation
 - b. isolation
 - c. installment
 - d. incentive
19. We decided to buy the couple a gift certificate that they could in a store near where they live.
 - a. qualify
 - b. diversify
 - c. implement
 - d. redeem
20. The fisherman sat patiently on the river , waiting for the fish to bite.
 - a. bank
 - b. branch
 - c. side
 - d. field

D. CLOZE Read the passage, then select the word or phrase that best fills the blank in both meaning and grammar.

The food industry is causing excessive pollution by shipping food to other countries for processing or consumption. (1) transport networks make it practical to bring food from (2) locations quickly and cheaply before the food spoils. Goods from farms in Africa, for instance, can be on (3) in European stores within four days. These are not only (4) cheaper than home-grown produce, but also allow stores to satisfy consumer (5). Customers these days want (6) variety and low prices and expect to be able to (7) ingredients whenever they (8) them, not just when they would naturally be in (9).

Food manufacturers also make larger (10) by sending food abroad for processing (11) low cost in developing countries. (12), fish caught in Norway may be shipped to China to be turned into fillets and then sent back to Norway for sale. (13) this transportation uses fuel and results in the release of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere, (14) contributing to global warming. New measures are being considered to (15) companies that transport food to reduce the impact they are having on the environment. (16), one reason that it is cost-effective to ship food long distances is that tax is not (17) on fuel used for sending goods internationally, either by sea or air. This may soon change in an effort to make (18) food industry take into (19) the environmental cost of its actions, not just the (20) aspect.

1. a. Optional
b. Brand
 2. a. far-flung
b. astronomical
 3. a. store
b. credit
 4. a. as
b. far
 5. a. demand
b. order
 6. a. most
b. both
 7. a. deserve
b. seize
 8. a. crave
b. value
 9. a. stock
b. season
 10. a. funds
b. profits
 11. a. with
b. on
 12. a. Unlike
b. Such as
 13. a. Because
b. All
 14. a. and
b. despite
 15. a. let
b. force
 16. a. Beforehand
b. Currently
 17. a. earned
b. charged
 18. a. enough
b. the
 19. a. production
b. time
 20. a. financial
b. economical
- c. Global
d. Chain
 - c. multinational
d. overboard
 - c. sale
d. market
 - c. more
d. quite
 - c. request
d. research
 - c. either
d. each
 - c. purchase
d. qualify
 - c. redeem
d. retain
 - c. mood
d. offer
 - c. fees
d. fortune
 - c. through
d. at
 - c. Thus
d. Lest
 - c. So
d. For
 - c. by
d. thereby
 - c. reduce
d. have
 - c. Mostly
d. Shortly
 - c. detracted
d. made
 - c. either
d. a
 - c. account
d. income
 - c. capital
d. invaluable

Grammar Appendix

STATIC VERBS (Unit 1, page 8)

Stative verbs are verbs that are not normally used in the continuous tense. These verbs relate to senses, mental state, appearance, possession, emotion and amount. Look at the list below.

adore	contain	envy	have	mean	prefer	suit
appeal	cost	equal	hear	measure	realise	suppose
appear	depend	exist	include	mind	recognise	suspect
appreciate	deserve	expect	involve	need	resemble	taste
be	desire	fear	lack	notice	satisfy	trust
belong	despise	feel	like	owe	see	want
concern	detest	fit	look	own	seem	weigh
consider	dislike	forgive	love	pity	smell	wish
consist	doubt	hate	matter	possess	sound	

Some of these verbs may be used in the continuous form with a different meaning.

The house **appears** to be empty. (*stative: appear = seem*)

The group **is appearing** at the London Arena all this week. (*action: appear = perform*)

How many CDs **do you have** now? (= *own*)

Are we **having dinner** at 6.00 as usual? (= *eating*)

I **think** the new reality show on TV is outrageous. (= *believe*)

Dana **is thinking** of moving to the suburbs. (= *considering*)

My luggage **weighed** exactly 20 kilos.

I **was weighing** the sugar for the cake when she walked in. (= *action of weighing*)

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES (Unit 7, page 57)

Verbs followed by a gerund

admit	consider	dread	finish	(not) mind	recollect	suggest
adore	delay	endure	imagine	miss	recommend	tolerate
advise	deny	enjoy	involve	postpone	resent	understand
appreciate	detest	excuse	justify	practise	resist	
avoid	discuss	face	keep	quit	risk	
commence	dislike	fancy	mention	recall	save	

Alice and Jim **dislike shopping** at the new supermarket.

Expressions followed by a gerund

burst out	have a good time / a hard time / a difficult time	(it's) no good
can't help	have fun / trouble / difficulty	(it's) no use
catch + pronoun / noun	it's (not) worth	spend / waste time
feel like	leave + pronoun / noun	spend / waste money
find + pronoun / noun	look forward to	

They **caught the thief going through** my desk.

I **found Peter waiting** in my office.

We **had a hard time explaining** why we were late.

We **had fun trying out** the new software.

I **had trouble finding** the correct files.

Leslie **spends most of the time chatting** at work.

Verbs followed by an infinitive

afford	beg	demand	hope	neglect	refuse	volunteer
agree	care	deserve	intend	offer	seem	vow
aim	choose	expect	learn	plan	struggle	wait
appear	claim	fail	long	prepare	swear	want
arrange	consent	happen	manage	pretend	tend	wish
ask	decide	hesitate	mean	promise	threaten	would like

I can't **afford to buy** a new car right now.

Verbs followed by object (pronoun) + infinitive

advise	cause	enable	force	need	remind	urge
allow	challenge	encourage	hire	order	require	want
ask	convince	expect	instruct	permit	teach	warn
beg	dare	forbid	invite	persuade	tell	would like

Ann advised **me** to leave.

Adjectives followed by an infinitive

afraid	content	eager	glad	lucky	proud	sensible	upset
amazed	dangerous	easy	happy	motivated	ready	shocked	willing
anxious	delighted	essential	hard	only fair	relieved	silly	
ashamed	determined	foolish	hesitant	only right	reluctant	sorry	
astonished	difficult	fortunate	important	pleased	ridiculous	stunned	
clever	disappointed	funny	impossible	prepared	sad	surprised	

We were **sorry to hear** that the concert had been cancelled.

Nouns followed by an infinitive

ability	decision	determination	failure	promise	scheme
ambition	demand	eagerness	offer	refusal	willingness
attempt	desire	effort	plan	request	wish

The programmer **promised to come up** with more user-friendly software.

Verb + infinitive / gerund with little or no difference in meaning

begin	can't bear	cease	continue	intend	love	prefer
bother	can't stand	commence	hate	like	permit	start

PASSIVE VERB FORMS (Unit 9, page 73)

Present Simple: *am / is / are + past participle*

Visitors **are taken** to the museum.

Past Simple: *was / were + past participle*

Visitors **were taken** to the museum.

Present Continuous: *am / is / are + being + past participle*

Visitors **are being taken** to the museum.

Past Continuous: *was / were + being + past participle*

Visitors **were being taken** to the museum.

Present Perfect: *has / have + been + past participle*

Visitors **have been taken** to the museum.

Past Perfect: *had + been + past participle*

Visitors **had been taken** to the museum.

Future Simple: *will + be + past participle*

Visitors **will be taken** to the museum.

be going to + be + past participle

The visitors **are going to be taken** to the museum.

Future Perfect: *will + have + been + past participle*

By noon, the visitors **will have been taken** to the museum.

Modal and semi-modal: *modal / semi-modal + be + past participle*

Visitors **must / should / could be taken** to the museum.

Modal Perfect: *modal + have been + past participle*

Visitors **have to be taken** to the museum.

Visitors **must / should / could have been taken** to the museum.

REPORTED SPEECH (Unit 11, page 89)

tomorrow → the next day, the following day, the day after

next week / month / year → **the following week / month / year**; a week / month / year **later**

last week / month / year → **the day / week / month / year before**; **the previous day / week / month / year**

a week / month / year ago → **the week / month / year before**

REPORTING VERBS (for examples see Unit 11, page 89)

Verb + infinitive

agree	demand	guarantee	prefer	propose	threaten	vow
decide	expect	offer	promise	refuse	volunteer	

Verb + *that* + clause

add	believe	confirm	estimate	insist	promise	reveal	think
admit	claim	consider	expect	mean	reassure	say	threaten
agree	comment	declare	explain	mention	remark	shout	understand
announce	complain	decide	feel	observe	repeat	state	vow
answer	conclude	deny	hope	point out	reply	suggest	warn
argue	confess	doubt	imply	predict	report	swear	whisper

Verb + object + infinitive

advise	beg	encourage	force	order	remind	urge
allow	challenge	expect	instruct	permit	teach	want
ask	command	forbid	invite	persuade	tell	warn

Verb + gerund

admit	mention	recommend	report
deny	propose	regret	suggest

MAKING COMPARISONS WITH ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS (Unit 23, page 186)**Adjectives**

one syllable	thinner than
adjectives ending in -er , -y , or -ly	cleverer than funnier than
adjectives ending in -ful more than two syllables	more / less doubtful than more / less attractive than

Comparative (two things)

thinner than
cleverer than
funnier than
more / less doubtful than
more / less attractive than

Superlative (three or more)

the thinnest
the cleverest
the funniest
the most / least doubtful
the most / least attractive

Compound adjectives

long-lasting	longer lasting than
good-looking	better looking than
highly priced	more highly priced than

the longest lasting
the best looking
the most highly priced

Adverbs

one syllable	harder than
two or more syllables	more successfully than

the hardest
the most successfully

Irregular adjectives / adverbs

good / well	better than
bad / badly	worse than
many / much	more than
little	less than
far	farther / further than
old	older than / elder

the best
the worst
the most
the least
the farthest / furthest
the oldest / eldest

Notes

1. **Farther / farthest** and **further / furthest** are used as adjectives and adverbs for distance.
The village is the **farthest point** on the map from Edinburgh. I can't go any **further**.
Further / furthest are used with abstract nouns such as **instruction**, **delay**, **discussion**, **enquiry**, **suggestion**, **point**, **thing**
Further discussion of the campaign would be pointless.
2. When we use superlative adjectives, **the** is sometimes replaced by a possessive.
This is **his latest** invention.
3. Superlative adjectives may be qualified by numbers.
I can't bear being **second best**. It's the **third largest** country in Europe.
4. **The + superlative + of** is used in formal language.
We've tried to provide **the best of** Europe's dishes and wines.
5. In addition to superlatives, **most** is also used to mean **extremely** in polite, more formal language.
You've been **most** helpful.

Spelling Appendix

ONE CONSONANT OR TWO? (Unit 3, page 27)

- In words of one syllable ending in **consonant + vowel + consonant**, we double the final consonant (*b, d, g, l, m, n, p, r, t*) before adding the suffixes **-ed, -er, -est, -ing, -able, -y**.

stop → stopped hug → hugged sad → sadder slim → slimming win → winnable star → starry
In words of more than one syllable, we only double the consonant in a stressed syllable.

cover → covering fulfil → fulfilled open → opening widen → widened
develop → developed happen → happening refer → referred

Exceptions to this rule are:

travel → travelling equal → equalled kidnap → kidnapped worship → worshipper

AmE In American English, the last letter "l" is not doubled if the stress is on the first syllable: **traveling, equalled, canceled, etc.**

- Double consonants are often formed by adding a prefix or a suffix.

legal → **illegally** mortal → **immortal** satisfied → **dissatisfied** mean → **meanness**
logical → **logically** real → **really** financial → **financially**

- Other common words follow no particular rules. You just have to learn to spell them correctly. For example: **personnel**.

accept address appreciate college committee happiness necessary **successful**
access apparently balloon commercial follow immediately possible suggestion

IE OR EI? (Unit 7, page 60)

- Remember the rule: *i* before *e* except after *c* when these two vowels are pronounced as *ee*. For example, **relieve, thief, receive** but **foreign** (not pronounced as *ee*).

Exceptions to this rule are: **Keith, seize**.

- This rule does not apply to words where the two vowels are pronounced separately.
science

SILENT LETTERS (Unit 11, page 92)

- Certain letters are not pronounced in some words, making it difficult to remember their spelling. Typical examples are:

B climb debt doubt dumb lamb plumber
C* descent scenery science
E different literature several vegetable
G design foreign resign sign
GH bright caught daughter eight high ought through weight
H ghost heir honest honourable hour
K knee knife knit knowledge
L calm half palm
N column condemn environment government
P* psychiatrist psychologist
T castle Christmas listen often whistle
U biscuit buy guess guitar league
W answer wrap wrestle wrinkle write wrong

*see Words with Greek origin below

- Other words cause spelling difficulties because their pronunciation seems unrelated to their written form.
enough island unique Wednesday
- Words ending in **-re** are pronounced as if the spelling were **er**: **theatre meagre fibre**

AmE These words are spelt **er** in American English: **theater meager fiber**

WORDS WITH GREEK ORIGIN (Unit 15, page 123)

The following letters / letter combinations may cause spelling problems because the words are Greek in origin.

Letters	Greek origin	Example
ps	Ψ	psychology psychiatry psychic
y (as vowel sound)	Υ	rhythm myth dysfunction cycle
ch	Χ	archive technique archaeology choreograph
ph	Φ	photograph phobia phantom amphitheatre philosophy
ae	ΑΙ	aesthetic paediatrician
eu	ΕΥ	euthanasia pneumonia pseudonym therapeutic

HOMOPHONES AND EASILY CONFUSED WORDS (Unit 19, page 156)

Homophones are words which sound the same, but are spelt differently. The following list gives examples of words which can easily be confused.

brake	break	pain	pane	sea	see	then	than
dear	deer	pair	pear	seen	scene	threw	through
desert	dessert	past	passed	sent	scent	too / to	two
fair	fare	peace	piece	serious	series	wait	weight
feat	feet	pray	prey	sight	site	warn	worn
flew	flu	raise	rays	sole	soul	waste	waist
heal	heel	right	write	stare	stair	way	weigh
hole	whole	role	roll	story	storey	weak	week
key	quay	sail	sale	tail	tale	wear	where
male	mail	sauce	source	their / there	they're	weather	whether

Punctuation Appendix

CAPITAL LETTERS (Unit 7, page 60)

- at the beginning of a sentence No one knew where the club was.
- names of days, months, public holidays Friday, August, New Year's Day
- names of people, places and people's titles Jackie, New York, Ms Smith
- nouns and adjectives for nationalities, languages, religions She's Catholic. I speak Greek.
- the first word of titles of books, plays, newspapers, and often other main words *Snow White and the Seven Dwarves*

FULL STOP (.) (Unit 11, page 92; Unit 19, page 156)

- at the end of a sentence As expected, the debate went on for hours.
- in numbers (read as *point*) 3.14 (three point one four)

QUESTION MARK (?) (Unit 19, page 156)

- after a direct question What do you propose we do?
- to show doubt William Shakespeare (b. 23rd April? 1564)

EXCLAMATION MARK (!) (Unit 19, page 156)

- at the end of a sentence to show surprise, shock or emphasis That's a ridiculous idea!
- to show a loud sound or spoken exclamation Bang! Help!

COMMA (,) (Unit 11, page 92)

- between items in a list, or between similar adjectives describing the same noun (not before the final item / adjective) The charity is collecting food, medicine, clothes and toys.
- between clauses (where a speaker would pause) and following a subordinate clause which comes at the beginning of the sentence. The price at the first hotel we called was exorbitant, but the second one gave us a really good deal for the weekend. If you like the outdoor life, you'll love the country park.
- around non-defining clauses Strawberries, which are in season at the moment, are rich in Vitamin C.
- to separate adverbs that apply to a whole sentence from the rest of the sentence The plan, however, did not work so well in practice. At that time, they were unaware of the danger.
- before a question tag They've changed the display, haven't they?
- between direct speech and the reporting expression And then Johann said, "I'll pay!"

THE APOSTROPHE (') (Unit 3, page 27)

- to show possession

Jane → Jane's

women → women's

girls → girls'

Nicholas → Nicholas' or Nicholas's

- to show that letters have been left out (contraction)

he's left (= *has*)

she's selling (= *is*)

shan't (= *shall not*)

let's (= *let us*)

we'd (= *would / had*)

who's (= *who is*)

- Words which do not usually have plurals, sometimes have an apostrophe when the plural form is written.

The plan sounds fine to me, but there are too many **if's**.

Her **n's** and **h's** look the same.

WATCH OUT!

it's / its

It's time to go. (= *it is*)

The dog ate its food. (= *the dog's*)

who's / whose

Who's there? (= *who is*)

Whose bag is it? (= *showing possession*)

COLON (:) (Unit 11, page 92)

- before an explanation The concert had to be cancelled: too few tickets had been sold.
- to introduce a list The following factors must be considered: cost, staff and publicity.
- to introduce a quotation or famous saying As Pope once said: "A little learning is a dangerous thing."

SEMI-COLON (;) (Unit 11, page 92)

- to separate two parts of a sentence (instead of using a full stop to make two sentences)

Students are required to pass all compulsory subjects; those who fail will be required to resit exams in September.

INVERTED COMMAS / QUOTATION MARKS (" ") (Unit 15, page 123)

- Single inverted commas (' ') are more common in British English; double inverted commas (" ") are more common in American English.
- to show direct speech / quotation "I just wanted to try it on," the customer protested.
- for titles The last film I saw was "Harry Potter and the Order of the Phoenix."
- for words used as labels Programmes like that are commonly referred to as 'reality shows'.

PARENTHESES / BRACKETS (()) (Unit 15, page 123)

- to add information which clarifies something You can speak to Duncan (my secretary).
- to give extra facts which are less important Guided tours €10 (€7.50 for students and the over 60s).

WATCH OUT!

Quotation marks and parentheses always come in pairs. Remember this rule when you write a composition.

HYPHEN (-)

- to join two words together to make a compound

two-part adjectives with *-ed* *-ing* blue-eyed high-flying

phrases used as adjectives out-of-work builder

with some prefixes non-smoker ex-boyfriend

Check a dictionary to see if a hyphen is needed in a specific example, as there are no simple rules and hyphens are often not used in very common compounds.

DASH (-) (Unit 11, page 92)

- in informal writing, to separate parts of a sentence as they would be spoken (like a colon, semi-colon or brackets)
I'd love to come and visit you – if I can afford it this summer, that is.
- meaning **to** the London – Paris rail link

Phrasal Verbs

act on ενεργώ σύμφωνα με (page 35)

back down υποχωρώ (page 97)

back out αποσύρομαι, εγκαταλείπω (page 82)

base on βασίζω (κάτι) σε (page 30)

blurt out ξεφουρνίζω, βγάζω στη φόρα (page 33)

boil down to καταλήγω σε (page 97)

branch out επεκτείνω, -ομαι (επαγγελματικά) (pages 35, 82, 210)

break down χαλάω (για μηχανήματα) (page 97)

break in εισβάλλω παράνομα (page 179)

bring in αποφέρω χρήματα (page 35)

brush up on φρεσκάρω (γνώσεις) (page 159)

burn out εξαντλούμαι, καταπονούμαι (page 82)

butt in διακόπτω (page 33)

buy off εξαγοράζω (page 208)

check in δηλώνω την άφιξή μου (ξενοδοχείο, αεροδρόμιο) (page 64)

clamp down (on) βάζω περιορισμό (page 195)

come across γίνομαι αντιληπτός (page 31)

come off πετυχαίνω (page 208)

come out αποβαίνω, καταλήγω (page 31)

come up with βρίσκω απάντηση, λύση (page 35)

cough up αναγκάζομαι να πληρώσω (page 178)

count toward(s) συνυπολογίζομαι (page 195)

cover up καλύπτω, αποκρύπτω (page 159)

crack down παίρνω μέτρα, καταστέλλω (page 97)

crack up ξεκαρδίζομαι (page 35)

dawn on αρχίζω να αντιλαμβάνομαι κάτι (page 34)

deal with αντιμετωπίζω (page 18)

dig around ψάχνω παντού (πληροφορίες) (page 81)

drag on παρατραβώ (σε διάρκεια) (page 195)

draw up συντάσσω (page 159)

drive at εννοώ, υποδηλώνω (page 67)

drop in επισκέπτομαι (απροειδοποίητα) (page 179)

drop out (of) εγκαταλείπω σπουδές (pages 82, 195)

dry up στεγνώνω, στερεύω (pages 146, 179)

dumb down (υπερ)απλουστεύω (page 195)

ease up (on) είμαι επιεικής (page 159)

eat into τρώω μεγάλο μερίδιο από κάτι (page 179)

eat up τελειώνω το φαγητό μου (page 177)

fall through αποτυγχάνω (page 17)

figure out καταλαβαίνω (page 127)

filter out φίλτράρω, διαχωρίζω (page 127)

find out ανακαλύπτω (page 100)

flood in κατακλύζω (page 179)

follow up συνεχίζω (έρευνα, προσπάθεια) (page 159)

get at προσπαθώ να πω (page 67)

get away δραπετεύω (page 64)

get into ενδιαφέρομαι για (page 35)

give back επιστρέφω (κάτι) (page 210)

give out εκπέμπω, παράγω (page 127)

go back ανατρέχω (page 31)

go down as καταγράφομαι, μένω (page 31)

go in for παίρνω μέρος (page 31)

go into ασχολούμαι με, αφιερώνω χρόνο σε κάτι (page 31)

go off χαλώ (για τροφή), παύω να ενδιαφέρομαι (page 179)

go on συνεχίζω, συμβαίνω (page 31)

go on to συνεχίζω (με κάτι διαφορετικό) (page 31)

go under (για επιχείρηση) αποτυγχάνω (pages 17, 178)

go with ταιριάζω με (page 162)

hand down μεταβιβάζω, κληροδοτώ (page 97)

hang up κλείνω το τηλέφωνο (page 159)

hold back κρύβω, διστάζω να μιλήσω (page 100)

hold out αντέχω (page 82)

hype up προωθώ προϊόν με παραπλανητική διαφήμιση (page 35)

jot down σημειώνω (page 97)

kick out αποβάλλω (page 195)

lay down θέτω, καθορίζω (page 97)

lay off απολύω (pages 14, 208)

laze around χαλαρώνω, τεμπελιάζω (page 35)

leave off διακόπτω (page 208)

let down απογοητεύω (page 64)

let up μειώνομαι (page 64)

light up φωτίζομαι (από χαρά) (page 162)

make off το σκάω, δραπετεύω (page 208)

make off with κλέβω, βουτάω (page 208)

make out διακρίνω (page 127)

make up αποτελώ (page 179)

make up for αναπληρώνω, αποζημιώνω (page 179)

mess around προκαλώ αναστάτωση (page 195)

mix up ανακατεύω, μπερδεύω (pages 64, 159)

narrow down περιορίζω (page 97)

pack it in τα παρατάω (page 179)

pay back εκδικούμαι (page 210)

pay off εξοφλώ χρέος, αποπληρώνω (page 208)

phase out αποσύρω σταδιακά (page 127)

pick up αντιλαμβάνομαι, βελτιώνομαι (pages 17, 159, 195)

pile up συσσωρεύομαι (page 64)

play down υποβαθμίζω, μειώνω τη σημασία (page 97)

play up δε λειτουργώ σωστά (page 35)

polish off τελειώνω γρήγορα (φαγητό) (page 174)
pour out εκφράζω, σερβίρω (ποτό κ.λπ.) (page 179)
psych out αποθαρρύνω (αντίπαλο) (page 82)
put in αφιερώνω (χρόνο) (page 14)
put off αποτρέπω (page 208)
put on ανεβάζω (παράσταση) (page 35)

read into παρερμηνεύω (page 99)
rip off χρεώνω υπερβολικά, κλέβω (page 208)
round off ολοκληρώνω (page 208)
rule out αποκλείω (page 99)
run down κακολογώ (page 97)
run out λήγω, δεν ισχύω (page 82)
run through επαναλαμβάνω, εξασκούμαι (page 35)

sell off ξεπουλώ (page 208)
send off αποστέλλω (page 208)
set off ξεκινώ ταξίδι (page 208)
set up στήνω, ιδρύω (επιχείρηση) (page 15)
single out ξεχωρίζω (pages 82, 127)
sink in αντιλαμβάνομαι πλήρως (page 179)
sort out ταξινομώ, τακτοποιώ (page 127)
spell (it) out εξηγώ (κάτι) λεπτομερώς (page 99)
splash out σπαταλώ χρήματα (page 209)
sponge off ζω εις βάρος κάποιου (page 178)
stamp out καταστέλλω (page 82)
stand down αποσύρομαι, παραιτούμαι (page 97)
stand in αντικαθιστώ, αναπληρώνω (page 179)
stir up προκαλώ (συναίσθημα, αναμνήσεις) (page 177)
stop over κάνω ενδιάμεση στάση (page 64)
suck up to κολακεύω, καλοπιάνω (page 195)
swot (up) μελετώ εντατικά (page 195)

tail off ελαττώνομαι, σβήνω (page 208)
take off ανεβαίνω σε επιτυχία ή δημοτικότητα, φεύγω βιαστικά (pages 17, 208)
take on προσλαμβάνω (page 14)
take out κάνω (συνδρομή, ασφάλεια κλπ.) (page 127)
tear down κατεδαφίζω, καταστρέφω (page 97)
tear off τραβώ και σκίζω (page 208)
tie in with συνδέομαι με (page 179)
touch down αγγίζω το έδαφος (κατά την προσγείωση) (page 64)
touch up ρετουσάρω, κάνω μικροδιορθώσεις (page 159)
trade in αγοράζω κάτι δίνοντας το παλιό ως τμήμα της αξίας (page 179)
try out δοκιμάζω (page 127)

wear out εξαντλώ (page 82)
wind up τελειώνω, κλείνω (page 159)
work off απαλλάσσομαι, ξεφορτώνομαι (με σωματική δραστηριότητα) (page 208)
work out γυμνάζομαι (page 82)
write off ξεγράφω (page 208)

Prepositional Phrases

across the board (page 67)

at all times (page 114)

at first glance (page 114)

at home (page 114)

at reduced rates (page 208)

at the forefront (page 32)

by and large (page 65)

by hand (page 51)

down-and-outs (page 17)

down the drain (page 179)

for good (page 32)

for instance (page 114)

for nothing (page 18)

in a position (page 18)

in a quandary (page 175)

in a sense (page 51)

in captivity (page 79)

in charge of (page 210)

in comparison with (page 32)

in conjunction with (page 32)

in earnest (page 51)

in fact (page 114)

in harmony with (page 114)

in many respects (page 32)

in no time (page 32)

in one's good books (page 100)

in other words (page 114)

in practice (page 18)

in pursuit of (page 79)

in search of (page 18)

in season (page 175)

in shape (page 162)

in terms of (page 193)

in the footsteps of (page 67)

in the mood (for) (page 175)

in the vicinity (page 67)

in the wild (page 79)

in this position (page 18)

in tune with (page 114)

in vain (page 51)

(take) into account (page 114)

off the beaten track (page 63)

on a large scale (page 32)

on a regular basis (page 130)

on deck (page 63)

on hand (page 51)

on impulse (page 51)

on location (page 30)

on offer (page 175)

on production (page 208)

on purpose (page 51)

on request (page 208)

on sale (page 208)

on the dole (page 14)

on the grounds (page 144)

on the lookout (page 145)

on the market (page 111)

on the part of (page 32)

on the right / wrong track (page 67)

on the threshold of (page 113)

on the underground (page 208)

out and about (page 65)

out of place (page 114)

out of the question (page 114)

out of work (page 18)

out-of-date (page 98)

over the hill (page 98)

to a great extent (page 114)

to go (page 162)

under (an) illusion (page 51)

under canvas (page 63)

up for sale (page 111)

up-and-coming (page 17)

up-to-date (page 98)

with difficulty (page 175)

within reach (of) (page 114)

Dependent Prepositions

- a ban on (page 79)
a rise in (page 18)
absent from (page 143)
access to (page 79)
according to (page 175)
account for (page 48)
amazed at (page 143)
appeal to (page 48)
approve of (page 48)
argue about (page 48)
as for (page 175)
associate with (page 48)
available for (page 143)
aversion to (page 79)
aware of (page 143)
- beneficial to (page 16)
(the) benefit of (page 48)
blame for (page 48)
blame on (page 48)
boast about (page 48)
(be) bound for (page 67)
brilliant at (page 143)
- capable of (pages 18, 143)
cast (an) eye over (page 35)
cast as (page 35)
cast doubt on (page 35)
catch in the act of (page 35)
cater for (page 67)
central to (page 175)
characteristic of (page 143)
combination of (pages 114, 192)
come to terms with (page 193)
compare to (page 175)
compatible with (page 143)
comply with (page 48)
concentrate on (page 48)
(be) conducive to (page 193)
confide in (page 48)
content with (page 143)
cost of (page 208)
crazy about (page 143)
credit for (page 192)
curious about (page 143)
cuts in (page 18)
- decline in (page 79)
deficient in (page 143)
degree in (page 192)
demand for (page 79)
derive from (page 48)
- devote to (page 48)
differ from (page 48)
different from (page 143)
discourage from (page 48)
distract from (page 48)
dozens of (page 178)
dream about (page 48)
(a) drop of (page 177)
- elaborate on (page 48)
emphasis on (page 175)
encounter with (page 79)
engrossed in (page 143)
excuse for (page 192)
experienced in (page 143)
expression of (page 79)
extent of (pages 79, 192)
- familiar with (page 143)
famous for (page 143)
fed up (page 177)
fill with (page 175)
flat out (page 114)
- get to grips with (page 194)
go on and on (page 162)
- habit of (page 79)
hail from (page 144)
harmful to (page 143)
have a word with (page 100)
have (my) work cut out for (me) (page 18)
- identify with (page 48)
immune to (page 143)
impact on (page 79)
in harmony with (page 114)
in search of (page 18)
indebted to (page 210)
indulge (in) (page 175)
insist on (page 48)
interested in (page 143)
involve in (page 48)
isolated from (page 143)
- (the) key to (page 113)
kind of (page 18)
- levels of (page 18)
loads of (page 177)
- make a go of (page 162)
make the most of (page 211)
melt in (my) mouth (page 175)

notify of (page 48)

obsessed with (page 143)

opt for (page 48)

optimistic about (page 143)

out of (work) (page 18)

present at (page 143)

prior to (page 67)

provide with (page 48)

put a stop to (page 82)

qualify for (page 208)

react to (page 48)

ready for (page 143)

remind of (page 48)

resign (myself) to (page 18)

respect for (page 192)

responsible for (page 143)

result in (page 18)

rich in (page 175)

risk of (page 79)

safe from (page 143)

serious about (page 143)

shed light on (page 34)

shower with (page 146)

similarity to (page 79)

snowed under (page 146)

specialise in (pages 48, 209)

stem from (page 81)

subject to (page 48)

succeed in (page 48)

superior to (page 143)

take a large bite out of (page 179)

take a look at (page 194)

take account of (page 211)

take issue with (page 100)

terrible at (page 143)

there is little prospect of (page 114)

thrive on (page 79)

tons of (page 177)

(a) touch of (page 177)

transform into (page 175)

typical of (page 143)

wade through (page 146)

wipe the floor with (page 114)

worry about (page 48)

wouldn't bet on (page 114)

wrestle with (page 194)

yearn for (page 48)

British and American English

BRITISH ENGLISH

aerial
aeroplane
angry
autumn
barrister, solicitor
bill (in a restaurant)
biscuit
break (school)
car park
caravan
chemist
chips
city centre
clever
cooker
cookery
crisps
crockery
crossroads
cupboard
cutlery
dialling code (telephone)
draught
dustbin, rubbish bin
engaged (phone)
estate agent
film
flat
fortnight, two weeks
garden
handbag
headmaster / headmistress
holiday(s)
interval
jumper
lay the table
lift
mad
main road, motorway
mark
mean (generous)
mobile phone
nappy
nasty
nought

AMERICAN ENGLISH

antenna
airplane
mad
fall, autumn
attorney, lawyer
check, bill
cookie
recess
parking lot
trailer
drugstore, pharmacy
French fries
downtown
smart
stove
cooking
(potato) chips
dishes
intersection
closet
silverware
area code
draft
garbage can, trash can
busy
realtor
movie, film
apartment
two weeks
yard
pocketbook, purse
principal
vacation
intermission
sweater
set the table
elevator
crazy
highway, freeway
grade
stingy
cell phone
diaper
mean
zero

BRITISH ENGLISH

pavement
petrol
post
postal code
public toilet
put through (telephone)
queue
railway
return (journey / ticket)
rise (in salary)
rubber
rubbish
shop
shop assistant
single (ticket)
smart
spanner
staff
sweets
tap
tin
torch
trousers
underground
van, lorry

AMERICAN ENGLISH

sidewalk
gas(oline)
mail
zip code
restroom
connect
line
railroad
round trip
raise
eraser
garbage, trash
store, shop
sales clerk
one-way (ticket)
fashionable
wrench
faculty
candy
faucet, tap
can
flashlight
pants, trousers, slacks
subway
truck

SPELLING

BRITISH ENGLISH

centre, theatre
colour, humour
licence, offence
catalogue, dialogue
criticise, realise
travelling, modelling
counsellor
programme
cheque
jewellery
practise (v)
pyjamas
encyclopaedia
gynaecologist
anaesthetic

AMERICAN ENGLISH

center, theater
color, humor
license, offense
catalog, dialog
criticize, realize
traveling, modeling
counselor
program
check
jewelry
practice (v)
pajamas
encyclopedia
gynecologist
anesthetic

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The draw took place yesterday but the competition winners
 - a. are yet to be announced
 - b. haven't been yet announced
 - c. yet are to be announced
 - d. haven't announced yet
2. At this rate, the builders the repairs by fall.
 - a. still won't have completed
 - b. won't still be completing
 - c. still won't be completed
 - d. haven't still have completed
3. Everyone to be enjoying the performance.
 - a. is seemed
 - b. has seemed
 - c. is seeming
 - d. seems
4. Billy must be really busy. He any of his friends in weeks.
 - a. hasn't contacted
 - b. doesn't contact
 - c. won't contact
 - d. isn't contacting
5. Eve can't take the pressure of her job and I think she resigning.
 - a. is about to
 - b. is due to
 - c. is on the verge of
 - d. is to
6. Wild animals sometimes come into the suburbs food.
 - a. searching of
 - b. in search of
 - c. they search
 - d. for searching
7. The minute the document , you must take it to the director's office.
 - a. is arriving
 - b. will arrive
 - c. arrived
 - d. arrives
8. I'm sure Katie will have recovered from her cold
 - a. nowadays
 - b. for long
 - c. by now
 - d. by the time
9. I think Liza completely unreasonable about not lending her sister the money.
 - a. will have been
 - b. is being
 - c. will be
 - d. being
10. The host city for the next World Championships next week.
 - a. is to be decided
 - b. will decide
 - c. will be deciding
 - d. has decided

VOCABULARY

11. Without ideas, the new business will not succeed.
 - a. capable
 - b. affectionate
 - c. vocational
 - d. innovative
12. You shouldn't have read that file; it contains information.
 - a. constructive
 - b. preferential
 - c. confidential
 - d. inclusive
13. Doctors in the private usually get higher salaries than those in public hospitals.
 - a. field
 - b. sector
 - c. domain
 - d. post
14. As one of the stars of the company, Susan will probably get the promotion.
 - a. flying
 - b. coming
 - c. rising
 - d. climbing
15. Let's get down to – we've got a lot to get through this afternoon.
 - a. workload
 - b. overtime
 - c. cooperation
 - d. business
16. Additional training would be the best way to your career.
 - a. further
 - b. expand
 - c. swell
 - d. enlarge
17. Discount rail travel is one of the of a job at the train station.
 - a. perks
 - b. skills
 - c. duties
 - d. deals
18. When the company closed down, hundreds of workers were made
 - a. additional
 - b. excessive
 - c. redundant
 - d. downsized
19. Unless you yourself to the task, you're bound to make mistakes.
 - a. resign
 - b. occupy
 - c. hold
 - d. apply
20. You should start working on the report if you want to Friday's deadline.
 - a. set
 - b. take
 - c. meet
 - d. reach

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- The tennis tournament held at the sports center but at the last minute the venue changed.
 - has been
 - would be
 - was going to be
 - is to be
- "Did the owner admit starting the fire herself?"
"In the end. The police her for some time."
 - had suspected
 - were suspected
 - were suspecting
 - would suspect
- I hadn't realized how important my career was to me I retired.
 - as soon as
 - whenever
 - by the time
 - until
- "I'm not that fond of animals."
"But I thought you once for a vet."
 - would work
 - been working
 - have worked
 - used to work
- "We decided to cancel our vacation."
"What a shame! You the trip for ages."
 - have planned
 - had been planning
 - are planning
 - were planned
- "Excuse me. I if I could audition for a part in the play."
 - had wondered
 - was wondering
 - was wondered
 - am wondering
- the songs on his first album, these are more philosophical.
 - For comparison
 - Compared
 - In comparison with
 - On a comparison to
- Last time I saw Liz, she her new job.
 - used to start
 - was about to start
 - is going to start
 - is starting
- Georgina Queen Elizabeth in the school show last year, but couldn't take part because she was ill.
 - cast as
 - was casting
 - was cast as if
 - was cast as
- When we were children, my parents us to tidy our rooms.
 - forever told
 - told always
 - were forever telling
 - always were telling

VOCABULARY

- The report doubts on the effectiveness of the new drug.
 - shed
 - based
 - alleged
 - cast
- The artist drew from her surroundings.
 - imagination
 - inspiration
 - creativity
 - masterpiece
- The basketball player fans with his agility and speed.
 - dawned
 - clouded
 - dazzled
 - flashed
- According to the , the new show is very popular.
 - spotlights
 - ratings
 - subtitles
 - auditions
- How quickly the product can be delivered depends on
 - attendance
 - credibility
 - existence
 - availability
- Simon is definitely guilty of copying – the teachers him in the act.
 - caught
 - saw
 - got
 - found
- The lecturer explained the theory with such that most people understood it.
 - clearance
 - complexity
 - clarity
 - curiosity
- I haven't the idea what it is like to be in the army.
 - dullest
 - lightest
 - dimmest
 - faintest
- If the computer hadn't been , I would have replied to your email.
 - playing up
 - acting on
 - running through
 - coming out
- John only asked you the time – there was no need to at him!
 - nag
 - snap
 - chat
 - blurt

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Did Maureen contact you?"
"No, but she have gotten my message yet."
a. must
b. could
c. won't
d. shall
2. From now on, the sales reports compiled before the weekly meeting.
a. must have been
b. will need being
c. had to have been
d. will have to have been
3. "I think Jason might have gone behind my back."
"I don't believe it. He"
a. couldn't have
b. shouldn't have gone
c. couldn't go
d. could have
4. "I see George didn't take the day off."
"No, but it him good."
a. would have done
b. should be doing
c. must have done
d. will do
5. "I just watered your plants."
"Oh, you really that! I'd watered them already."
a. couldn't do
b. mustn't have done
c. aren't able to do
d. shouldn't have done
6. "Last night I dreamed I was a millionaire."
"How strange you say that! I had a similar dream."
a. should
b. would
c. may
d. could
7. Could you turn the radio off? It's distracting my work.
a. from me
b. me from
c. me of
d. of
8. "Tony is at college all day, then works nights as a security guard."
"He can't enough sleep."
a. getting
b. be getting
c. have got
d. be got
9. We'd leave early in case there's a lot of traffic.
a. ought to
b. supposed to
c. better
d. have to
10. your phone for a moment, please? My battery has run out.
a. Could I have used
b. Might I use
c. May I be using
d. Can I be used

VOCABULARY

11. A barbecue in the rain is ridiculous idea.
a. a fully
b. a highly
c. an utterly
d. a deeply
12. All restaurant staff must with the hygiene regulations.
a. refer
b. comply
c. identify
d. respond
13. After being turned down for the role, the actor naturally felt
a. unjustified
b. apprehensive
c. imperfect
d. despondent
14. The doctor couldn't for the patient's unusual symptoms.
a. treat
b. account
c. specialize
d. alleviate
15. The comedian was that some people found his jokes offensive.
a. unaware
b. insensitive
c. unconscious
d. impolite
16. He really me in the back when he stole my job.
a. rubbed
b. stung
c. kicked
d. stabbed
17. I advise you to an attorney about your legal problems.
a. confide
b. conduct
c. conceive
d. consult
18. These drugs will help you but don't expect a miracle
a. cure
b. remedy
c. recovery
d. therapy
19. If you act on , you risk making mistakes.
a. purpose
b. sense
c. attitude
d. impulse
20. Being to so much publicity was an unpleasant experience.
a. involved
b. associated
c. subjected
d. objected

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. Most of the hotels were full and we had a hard time accommodations.
 - a. to find
 - b. having found
 - c. being found
 - d. finding
2. We thought an package tour would be more economical.
 - a. all-including
 - b. all-inclusive
 - c. included
 - d. inclusively
3. They arrived at the restaurant it was closed temporarily.
 - a. discovering only that
 - b. and only had discovered
 - c. only to discover
 - d. only discovering
4. His failure his mistake is a disappointment to many people.
 - a. in admitting
 - b. to admit
 - c. admitting
 - d. to be admitted
5. The email I sent was to thank so kind.
 - a. that she was
 - b. her to be
 - c. her for being
 - d. for her being
6. She pretended in the accident.
 - a. had been hurt
 - b. to have been hurt
 - c. to being hurt
 - d. have been hurt
7. The children stood at the puppets for ages.
 - a. to stare
 - b. and staring
 - c. staring
 - d. to be staring
8. I think Sheila regrets to art college.
 - a. not going
 - b. not to go
 - c. to not go
 - d. her not go
9. You won't on that ride – you're too short.
 - a. let to go
 - b. be let to go
 - c. be allowed to go
 - d. allow going
10. Surely Martha wouldn't be so stupid her savings in the house!
 - a. as to keep
 - b. keeping
 - c. enough to keep
 - d. being kept

VOCABULARY

11. We covered a lot of at today's meeting but we didn't discuss everything.
 - a. land
 - b. ground
 - c. terrain
 - d. track
12. The politician skillfully the conversation in a different direction.
 - a. drifted
 - b. steered
 - c. drove
 - d. followed
13. There have been a few complaints, but the restaurant has been a success.
 - a. far and wide
 - b. now and again
 - c. out and about
 - d. by and large
14. I wouldn't foot in that part of the city after dark.
 - a. put
 - b. set
 - c. take
 - d. leave
15. Despite the bad weather conditions, the pilot managed a smooth
 - a. letdown
 - b. getaway
 - c. touchdown
 - d. outset
16. Harvey was last seen getting on a train for Washington DC.
 - a. catering
 - b. connecting
 - c. embarked
 - d. bound
17. Make up your own mind; don't just follow the
 - a. footsteps
 - b. board
 - c. herd
 - d. swarm
18. The athlete the seriousness of his injury and continued running.
 - a. underestimated
 - b. undercharged
 - c. underdressed
 - d. undervalued
19. You'll find plenty of cheap hotels in the of the train station.
 - a. property
 - b. destination
 - c. vicinity
 - d. terminal
20. Few tourists visit the village with the result that the area is completely
 - a. unspoilt
 - b. far flung
 - c. oversimplified
 - d. hospitable

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. In the past six months, interest in the product
 - a. was declined
 - b. has declined
 - c. has been declined
 - d. was being declined
2. "The children don't seem very happy."
"Don't worry. I'll"
 - a. soon have had them laughed
 - b. soon have them laughing
 - c. have them soon to laugh
 - d. get them soon laughing
3. The pay cuts causing the workers to strike.
 - a. were blamed on
 - b. are blamed in
 - c. were blaming for
 - d. have been blamed for
4. "It's not my turn to do the dishes tonight."
"I hope Mom doesn't get"
 - a. them by me done
 - b. me doing
 - c. done by me
 - d. me to do them
5. There have been a few cases of Asian flu recently but there no cause for alarm.
 - a. feels to be
 - b. is felt to be
 - c. has been felt there is
 - d. was felt being
6. "Wasn't that a terrible storm!"
"Yes. It's lucky more houses damaged."
 - a. didn't get
 - b. weren't being
 - c. hadn't
 - d. weren't to be
7. The streets people celebrating the national team's victory.
 - a. had crammed by
 - b. were crammed by
 - c. crammed with
 - d. were crammed with
8. I don't enjoy the gym because I feel I to exercise.
 - a. am being made
 - b. get made
 - c. have made
 - d. have me made
9. Children under 8 years old alone at home.
 - a. mustn't leave
 - b. should not be leaving
 - c. shouldn't be left
 - d. mustn't have left
10. "Did you hear what happened to Charlotte?"
"Yeah – she"
 - a. had someone stealing
 - b. had her handbag stolen
 - c. had stolen her handbag
 - d. was stolen her handbag

VOCABULARY

11. The celebrity to appear in the new advertising campaign.
 - a. consented
 - b. permitted
 - c. endorsed
 - d. advocated
12. The therapist believes his psychological problems from his difficult childhood.
 - a. sow
 - b. branch
 - c. stamp
 - d. stem
13. Maria is a quiet child with a imagination.
 - a. docile
 - b. fruitful
 - c. fertile
 - d. restless
14. The cactus in hot, dry conditions.
 - a. nurtures
 - b. flourishes
 - c. conserves
 - d. cultivates
15. Two of the firefighters were out for a special award.
 - a. held
 - b. burnt
 - c. singled
 - d. worked
16. The investigator left no stone in her search for information.
 - a. preserved
 - b. forgotten
 - c. unearthed
 - d. unturned
17. As a general rule, zoologists prefer to observe animals in the
 - a. wild
 - b. captivity
 - c. habitat
 - d. nature
18. The building manager made the of the cockroaches a priority.
 - a. extinction
 - b. emigrating
 - c. evolution
 - d. exterminating
19. His theory is fundamentally and should not be taken seriously.
 - a. flawed
 - b. doubtful
 - c. condemned
 - d. thoughtless
20. While not a vegetarian, Kelly does have a strong to some kinds of meat.
 - a. dread
 - b. aversion
 - c. protest
 - d. demand

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Is Sophie still thinking of applying for that job?"
"She told me she"
 - a. already did
 - b. has yet
 - c. is still
 - d. has just done
2. We went to the tourist office to enquire in the area.
 - a. whether there was a campsite
 - b. whether was it a campsite
 - c. about if a campsite was
 - d. to know if a campsite was
3. This article recommends green tea after every meal to help weight loss.
 - a. being drunk
 - b. drinking
 - c. to drink
 - d. you to drink
4. Many people suspect that the vice president of the company has
 - a. a hiding agenda
 - b. a hidden agenda
 - c. an agenda to hide
 - d. an agenda hiding
5. The security guard said that we passes to be allowed into the building.
 - a. must have had
 - b. had to have
 - c. would have
 - d. were having
6. "I can't drive you to the airport tomorrow after all."
"But you promised"
 - a. to do
 - b. me it
 - c. you would
 - d. me you could have
7. It is vital that at this time.
 - a. should not be publicized these figures
 - b. to not be publicized these figures
 - c. not be publicized these figures
 - d. these figures not be publicized
8. Martin insisted that his secretary with him on the trip.
 - a. on coming
 - b. come
 - c. comes
 - d. will come
9. I asked the flight attendant until we landed.
 - a. how long will it be
 - b. when it was
 - c. how long it was
 - d. the time it would be
10. The lawyer advised to any journalists about the case.
 - a. to not talking
 - b. against talking
 - c. not talk
 - d. don't talk

VOCABULARY

11. With such directions, you'll have no trouble finding their apartment building.
 - a. outspoken
 - b. colloquial
 - c. implicit
 - d. explicit
12. A number of cars are on display at the transport museum.
 - a. veteran
 - b. archaic
 - c. outmoded
 - d. vintage
13. Rather than boast about winning, Colin chose to down his achievement.
 - a. play
 - b. tear
 - c. stand
 - d. back
14. The chief of police must that all officers know about the new law.
 - a. enact
 - b. enforce
 - c. ensure
 - d. enclose
15. I must renew my to *Newsworld* as it runs out next month.
 - a. subscription
 - b. issue
 - c. supplement
 - d. correspondence
16. The advertising agency came up with a to make the product more memorable.
 - a. slang
 - b. jargon
 - c. slogan
 - d. verse
17. The patient was administered medication to the pain.
 - a. withhold
 - b. deaden
 - c. underline
 - d. dominate
18. The author's new novel came in for a great deal of
 - a. attention
 - b. compliment
 - c. proofreading
 - d. criticism
19. My grandmother refuses to exactly how she makes her famous cookies.
 - a. convey
 - b. voice
 - c. disclose
 - d. notify
20. When asked for his opinion on the issue, the politician gave an reply.
 - a. ambiguous
 - b. illiterate
 - c. obsolete
 - d. illicit

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Do you want to go out Friday evening?"
"Sure, that I don't have to work."
a. in case
b. as long as
c. provided
d. unless
2. If it hadn't been for the clever advertising campaign, the product discontinued by now.
a. is being
b. would
c. had been
d. would have been
3. , I would never have joined the film society.
a. But for your insisting
b. Hadn't you insisted
c. Supposing you didn't insist
d. If you wouldn't insist
4. The meeting will continue until a decision
a. will be made
b. is made
c. would make
d. had been made
5. "Do you want anything at the bookstore?"
"If a copy of *The Island*, could you get it for me?"
a. you would see
b. you happen to see
c. you are seeing
d. were you to see
6. You will not be allowed to take part in gym a doctor's note.
a. if you aren't having
b. unless having
c. unless you have
d. if you shouldn't have
7. , the astronauts will become the first men to reach Mars.
a. If successful
b. If they will succeed
c. Would they be successful
d. Imagine they are successful
8. The team has to win the next game. they'll be out of the tournament.
a. If so
b. On condition
c. Otherwise
d. Then
9. If my application for a transfer turned down, I would be living in Miami now.
a. wasn't
b. hasn't been
c. wouldn't have been
d. hadn't been
10. "Do you think the factory will close?"
"..... of it remaining open."
a. There is little prospect
b. It is little prospect
c. If there is some prospect
d. Unless it is a prospect

VOCABULARY

11. The government has offered to consumers switching from electricity to natural gas.
a. renovations
b. subsidies
c. landlords
d. housewarming
12. There is only a chance I'll be able to join you tonight.
a. flat
b. little
c. distinct
d. slim
13. We found a buyer for our house the day it went on the
a. sale
b. estate
c. market
d. mortgage
14. The of the new school rules will be difficult.
a. incentive
b. conversion
c. implementation
d. opening
15. activities such as kayaking and hiking are very popular in this area.
a. Outdoor
b. Outward
c. Exterior
d. Rural
16. The house was in such a state of that it was uninhabitable.
a. restoration
b. congestion
c. disrepair
d. demolition
17. The chairperson invited the next speaker to the floor.
a. get
b. take
c. wipe
d. own
18. A river to the north of the farm forms a natural
a. threshold
b. boundary
c. hedge
d. property
19. Ann won a to do a Master's degree in comparative literature.
a. readership
b. scholarship
c. sponsorship
d. citizenship
20. The only people allowed on the are authorized members of staff.
a. outskirts
b. interiors
c. premises
d. corridors

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "We don't have a burglar alarm."
"Then it's about time"
 - a. for installing one
 - b. you install one
 - c. one was installing
 - d. to install one
2. I wish I to tonight's concert but I have to work.
 - a. can go
 - b. was going
 - c. would go
 - d. have gone
3. my parents had let me go on the trip!
 - a. If only
 - b. Only if
 - c. I'd prefer
 - d. I hope
4. "The meeting is going to be postponed till Friday."
"Oh, I'd prefer as I won't be able to attend."
 - a. if it isn't
 - b. for it not be
 - c. it if it weren't
 - d. it not being
5. I wish my sister before coming by so late in the evening.
 - a. was calling
 - b. calls
 - c. would call
 - d. to call
6. "Trudy sure did a good job of decorating your apartment."
"Yes, but I'd some of the work myself."
 - a. sooner have done
 - b. rather done
 - c. better have done
 - d. prefer having done
7. matter of time before a new manager is appointed.
 - a. It's just a
 - b. There is just a
 - c. It's nearly a
 - d. Just this
8. "I wish you live on the other side of town."
"Me too."
 - a. don't
 - b. couldn't
 - c. wouldn't
 - d. didn't
9. I'd rather tell George what I bought. I want to surprise him!
 - a. not to
 - b. you don't
 - c. it if you don't
 - d. you didn't
10. "Is Anna in charge?"
"No, but she's ordering people around"
 - a. though she were to
 - b. as if she were
 - c. as though was she
 - d. were she to

VOCABULARY

11. The lamp in the corner of the room wasn't out much light.
 - a. giving
 - b. phasing
 - c. emitting
 - d. taking
12. The system was too complicated so it has been slightly
 - a. tampered
 - b. singled
 - c. tightened
 - d. modified
13. With the economic crisis, I can't the company expanding in the near future.
 - a. oversee
 - b. view
 - c. monitor
 - d. envisage
14. have organized an anti-hunting march.
 - a. Animators
 - b. Vocalists
 - c. Campaigners
 - d. Consumers
15. The exam timetable is and could easily change.
 - a. invariable
 - b. provisional
 - c. occasional
 - d. defective
16. Unless both sides can reach a , the dispute will continue.
 - a. procedure
 - b. compromise
 - c. precaution
 - d. breakthrough
17. Teachers really need to home the importance of reviewing the material regularly.
 - a. screw
 - b. button
 - c. hammer
 - d. develop
18. It's of Liz to laugh when she feels nervous.
 - a. typical
 - b. ordinary
 - c. common
 - d. defective
19. Many people are reluctant to eat engineered produce.
 - a. artificially
 - b. unethically
 - c. synthetically
 - d. genetically
20. As a security measure, all luggage is before being allowed on the plane.
 - a. peered
 - b. compiled
 - c. screened
 - d. glimpsed

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. Only after they have carried out more tests, able to say what is wrong.
 - a. the doctor will be
 - b. the doctor is
 - c. is the doctor
 - d. will the doctor be
2. had I set off when I got a flat tire.
 - a. At no time
 - b. Scarcely
 - c. Sooner
 - d. Little
3. How is still under investigation.
 - a. the accident happened
 - b. was the accident happening
 - c. did the accident happen
 - d. happened the accident
4. They'd enjoy a visit to the museum, ?
 - a. hadn't they
 - b. should they
 - c. wouldn't they
 - d. did they?
5. I've asked Kelly again and again to tidy her room, but is sit and read.
 - a. she only does
 - b. what does she do
 - c. all she does
 - d. the only thing
6. when we moved in, not September.
 - a. It wasn't June
 - b. Wasn't June
 - c. It was June
 - d. When it was June
7. "I never expected the hotel to be so luxurious." "What the size of the swimming pool."
 - a. surprised me most was
 - b. I am surprised most was
 - c. was most of all surprising was
 - d. was most surprising
8. "I'm never going to shop there again!" "..... ! That assistant was so rude to us!"
 - a. Nor am I
 - b. Neither I am
 - c. So am I
 - d. As do I
9. that Colin's lips turned blue.
 - a. Bitter as the wind was
 - b. More bitter was the wind
 - c. So bitter was the wind
 - d. Such was the wind bitter
10. I thought I that you had to submit your essays by Friday.
 - a. made plain
 - b. had made plainly
 - c. made it plain
 - d. did make plain

VOCABULARY

11. Farmers in that region their fields using water from a nearby lake.
 - a. flow
 - b. soak
 - c. shower
 - d. irrigate
12. As the village is a summer resort, income from tourism up in the winter months.
 - a. dries
 - b. rises
 - c. loses
 - d. thaws
13. We could see snow-capped mountain far in the distance.
 - a. peaks
 - b. cliffs
 - c. dunes
 - d. dams
14. I could see the leaves moving gently in the
 - a. frost
 - b. gale
 - c. sleet
 - d. breeze
15. I can't see you this week as I'm under with work.
 - a. snowed
 - b. flooded
 - c. dropped
 - d. weighed
16. Jack's new apartment is very ; the only decoration is an antique vase.
 - a. choosy
 - b. austere
 - c. harsh
 - d. prosperous
17. The roads are in the winter so drive carefully.
 - a. cautious
 - b. deficient
 - c. perilous
 - d. rebellious
18. Over the years, the strong winds have caused soil in coastal areas.
 - a. erosion
 - b. landslide
 - c. avalanche
 - d. eruption
19. Why live in that old apartment when you can afford something better?
 - a. arid
 - b. mild
 - c. damp
 - d. humid
20. Having through the report, I was ready for a rest.
 - a. tiptoed
 - b. stepped
 - c. strolled
 - d. plodded

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. Anyone serious financial problems should get advice.
 - a. that is faced
 - b. who is being faced
 - c. is facing
 - d. facing
2. "Have you finished your course yet?"
"No. There are still three weeks"
 - a. to go
 - b. which I go
 - c. that are to go
 - d. going
3. for *Vogue* for 20 years, Janice was an expert on fashion.
 - a. Being worked
 - b. Worked
 - c. Having worked
 - d. Having been to work
4. The city to host the championships must have excellent sports facilities.
 - a. choosing
 - b. chosen
 - c. where is chosen
 - d. which chooses
5. The movie didn't end until well after midnight, already asleep.
 - a. at this time Ron was
 - b. by which time Ron was
 - c. when was Ron
 - d. which time was Ron
6. "John Mack is teaching our creative writing class."
"Surely you don't mean the author books always make the bestseller list?"
 - a. who
 - b. of whose
 - c. who his
 - d. whose
7. The travel agent suggested either Corfu or Rhodes, we have been to before.
 - a. both of them
 - b. either of which
 - c. neither of which
 - d. where neither
8. We found plenty of wood, but we had nothing to light our campfire.
 - a. which with
 - b. with which
 - c. that for
 - d. for that
9. , the diners settled the bill and left the restaurant.
 - a. Having hunger satisfied
 - b. Their hunger satisfied
 - c. Hunger been satisfied
 - d. Satisfying their hunger
10. Louise stood gossiping about her supervisor, that she was standing right behind her.
 - a. who not realized
 - b. not realized
 - c. not realizing
 - d. which didn't realize

VOCABULARY

11. As the TV show was coming to an end, the host had to up the discussion.
 - a. hang
 - b. wind
 - c. brush
 - d. draw
12. The law is to all immigrants who have entered the country within the last year.
 - a. applicable
 - b. accessible
 - c. adorable
 - d. adaptable
13. Providing shelter for so many homeless people a problem for the authorities.
 - a. shows
 - b. bears
 - c. draws
 - d. poses
14. It has recently come to that the senator accepted a bribe.
 - a. attention
 - b. eye
 - c. mind
 - d. light
15. Without hard work they'll never a go of their guesthouse.
 - a. get
 - b. take
 - c. make
 - d. have
16. such as bowls and farming tools were found at the archaeological dig.
 - a. Ornaments
 - b. Artefacts
 - c. Murals
 - d. Sculptures
17. Amy doesn't trust lawyers. In fact, she's of them all.
 - a. conceivable
 - b. contemptuous
 - c. comprehensible
 - d. contemporary
18. It's best to write your essay in pencil so that you can easily any mistakes.
 - a. erase
 - b. cover
 - c. ease
 - d. renew
19. Visitors pass through a huge as they enter the castle.
 - a. curve
 - b. spiral
 - c. cone
 - d. arch
20. The poet's for his verse was the sights and sounds of Paris.
 - a. mission
 - b. snapshot
 - c. admiration
 - d. inspiration

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "You enjoy old movies, don't you?"
"....., I'd rather not stay up late to watch one tonight."
 a. On the other hand
 b. All the same
 c. Even though
 d. On the contrary
2. Everyone has to hand in their assignments by noon but Sam, I'll make an exception.
 a. in case of
 b. the case being
 c. in any case for
 d. in the case of
3. Improving public transportation the mayor's plans for the city.
 a. centrally of
 b. is central to
 c. is the center to
 d. so central that
4. "Bill is going through a difficult time."
"But in spite so many problems, he still remains cheerful."
 a. having
 b. of having
 c. that he has
 d. the fact he has
5. that no one on the committee supported it.
 a. So ridiculous proposal it was
 b. The proposal was such ridiculous
 c. Being such a ridiculous proposal
 d. So ridiculous was the proposal
6. The accident happened the bus not having been properly serviced.
 a. in consequence
 b. owing to
 c. on account
 d. because
7. Only students have their own cars – most use bicycles.
 a. a minority of
 b. minority
 c. of a minority
 d. the minority
8. "I'm afraid there's no coffee left."
"No problem. I'll have tea"
 a. rather
 b. as well
 c. instead
 d. still
9. Vicky goes, she takes her favorite bag with her.
 a. No matter where
 b. However
 c. Nevertheless
 d. Whereas
10. Anna has been deaf since birth, she has managed to learn to play the piano beautifully.
 a. despite but this
 b. but although
 c. but despite this
 d. although still

VOCABULARY

11. With so many affordable computers on the market, consumers are really for choice.
 a. rich
 b. offered
 c. spoilt
 d. opted
12. The police officer described the crime without a of emotion in his voice.
 a. pinch
 b. grain
 c. trace
 d. speck
13. The teacher praised the boy's to tidy up the classroom.
 a. eagerness
 b. effectiveness
 c. appetite
 d. likeness
14. This pizza would taste better if you used fresh rather than cheese.
 a. conservative
 b. developed
 c. processed
 d. meagre
15. Sarah \$2,000 in a new computer company.
 a. ingested
 b. invested
 c. involved
 d. indulged
16. the fish with salt before you put in it the oven.
 a. Spread
 b. Squeeze
 c. Slice
 d. Sprinkle
17. The city zoo is and houses thousands of animals.
 a. minute
 b. immense
 c. countless
 d. abundant
18. In his first session with the therapist, Bill out his feelings.
 a. flooded
 b. poured
 c. broke
 d. stirred
19. There was a wonderful of summer fruits at the local market.
 a. portion
 b. crop
 c. handful
 d. array
20. From the way she's at that sandwich, I'd say she doesn't like it.
 a. nibbling
 b. consuming
 c. chewing
 d. devouring

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The issue of cloning has been
 - a. wide debating recently
 - b. recently widely debating
 - c. widely debated recently
 - d. recently debated wider
2. "I've been invited to meet the president." "In my opinion, that's honor there is."
 - a. by far the greatest
 - b. every bit as great
 - c. far greater
 - d. as great as an
3. I was so full from lunch I could eat any dinner.
 - a. almost
 - b. hardly
 - c. just
 - d. nearly
4. The tennis player practiced she could improve her game before the tournament.
 - a. harder so
 - b. as hard as
 - c. harder than
 - d. so hard that
5. "I hear Paul has a job at a restaurant." "Well, it's a restaurant as a café really."
 - a. much more
 - b. nothing like
 - c. far more of
 - d. not so much
6. "Do you need me to iron anything for you?" "Could you do my shirt?"
 - a. short-sleeved beige cotton
 - b. beige shortly sleeved cotton
 - c. cotton beige short-sleeved
 - d. beige cotton short sleeves
7. The new vocational qualifications are aimed at
 - a. less academic
 - b. less academically students
 - c. the less academic students
 - d. least academic students
8. It was a warm day but it turned in the evening.
 - a. coldly
 - b. cold
 - c. more coldly
 - d. far colder than
9. She believes that the bigger your house, you are.
 - a. so more important
 - b. more importantly
 - c. the more important
 - d. as important as
10. With my new Internet connection I can download files than before.
 - a. far quickly
 - b. by far quicker
 - c. much more quickly
 - d. quite more quickly

VOCABULARY

11. The photograph was using computer technology.
 - a. benefited
 - b. enhanced
 - c. disciplined
 - d. implemented
12. Fast food is no for home cooked meals.
 - a. motive
 - b. exception
 - c. simulation
 - d. substitute
13. Noise pollution affects the health by damaging the hearing.
 - a. intensively
 - b. merely
 - c. virtually
 - d. adversely
14. A tour of the laboratory will give you greater into the kind of research being done here.
 - a. evaluation
 - b. insight
 - c. influence
 - d. concept
15. Local authorities are really down on people who drop litter.
 - a. dragging
 - b. kicking
 - c. dumbing
 - d. clamping
16. After with the decision for a while, Emma finally decided to resign.
 - a. handling
 - b. grasping
 - c. wrestling
 - d. gripping
17. While attendance at the lecture is not , it is recommended.
 - a. lenient
 - b. obliged
 - c. optional
 - d. compulsory
18. The school is proud of its wide range of activities.
 - a. antisocial
 - b. tertiary
 - c. hyperactive
 - d. extracurricular
19. You'll really have to work hard if you want to make the as a journalist.
 - a. grade
 - b. term
 - c. mark
 - d. degree
20. All that graffiti certainly from the city's charms.
 - a. ruins
 - b. detracts
 - c. spoils
 - d. impairs

Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. The music teacher made sure that child had a chance to sing a solo.
 - a. every and each
 - b. each of all
 - c. each and every
 - d. all and every
2. Can you imagine without crime?
 - a. world
 - b. a world
 - c. some world
 - d. world's
3. "Did your parents go to college?"
"No. There were opportunities back then."
 - a. little
 - b. a little
 - c. few
 - d. a few
4. "Have you been to New York?"
"I've stayed there times."
 - a. much
 - b. enough
 - c. plenty
 - d. several
5. My therapist gave me yesterday.
 - a. great advices
 - b. some great piece of advice
 - c. a great piece of advice
 - d. the great advice
6. Hugh wrote a book about his of Africa.
 - a. travel in north
 - b. traveling in north
 - c. travels in the north
 - d. travels a north
7. Three days to find a new place to live.
 - a. isn't a long time
 - b. aren't long time
 - c. aren't a long
 - d. isn't the long time
8. Why don't you put in a pot on the balcony?
 - a. any flower
 - b. any of the flowers
 - c. some of flowers
 - d. some flowers
9. We can't afford any new sports equipment so we'll have to with what we have.
 - a. make it do
 - b. make doing
 - c. make do
 - d. making to do
10. Judy is paid at the pizza parlour.
 - a. ten dollar per each hour
 - b. ten dollars an hour
 - c. a hour ten dollars
 - d. each hour ten dollars

VOCABULARY

11. Joe is from England but he an American accent while living in California.
 - a. acquired
 - b. received
 - c. secured
 - d. obtained
12. The service in the restaurant was so slow that we took our elsewhere.
 - a. income
 - b. custom
 - c. capital
 - d. fortune
13. The store will deliver the furniture for a small
 - a. charge
 - b. debit
 - c. subsidy
 - d. grant
14. The smell from the factory could be by the use of special filters.
 - a. retained
 - b. humanized
 - c. neutralized
 - d. equalized
15. You really deserve for the volunteer work you do.
 - a. credit
 - b. bonus
 - c. account
 - d. commission
16. George claims he's too to afford tickets to the baseball game.
 - a. hard-up
 - b. pricey
 - c. indebted
 - d. bankrupt
17. We could probably afford to stay at a hotel provided the rates are
 - a. impoverished
 - b. economic
 - c. priceless
 - d. reasonable
18. After arguing with James, I went for a long run to off my anger.
 - a. make
 - b. splash
 - c. work
 - d. tail
19. You are not to access the company files.
 - a. internalized
 - b. authorized
 - c. specified
 - d. typified
20. If the store could attract more customers, its would definitely increase.
 - a. proceeds
 - b. resources
 - c. funds
 - d. takings

ANSWER KEY – TESTS

TEST 1

GRAMMAR

1. a
2. a
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. b
7. d
8. c
9. b
10. a

VOCABULARY

11. d
12. c
13. b
14. c
15. d
16. a
17. a
18. c
19. d
20. c

TEST 5

GRAMMAR

1. b
2. b
3. d
4. d
5. b
6. a
7. d
8. a
9. c
10. b

VOCABULARY

11. a
12. d
13. c
14. b
15. c
16. d
17. a
18. d
19. a
20. b

TEST 2

GRAMMAR

1. c
2. a
3. d
4. d
5. b
6. b
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. c

VOCABULARY

11. d
12. b
13. c
14. b
15. d
16. a
17. c
18. d
19. a
20. b

TEST 6

GRAMMAR

1. a
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. b
6. c
7. d
8. b
9. c
10. b

VOCABULARY

11. d
12. d
13. a
14. c
15. a
16. c
17. b
18. d
19. c
20. a

TEST 3

GRAMMAR

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. a
5. d
6. a
7. b
8. b
9. c
10. b

VOCABULARY

11. c
12. b
13. d
14. b
15. a
16. d
17. d
18. a
19. d
20. c

TEST 7

GRAMMAR

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. b
5. b
6. c
7. a
8. c
9. d
10. a

VOCABULARY

11. b
12. d
13. c
14. c
15. a
16. c
17. b
18. b
19. b
20. c

TEST 4

GRAMMAR

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. b
5. c
6. b
7. c
8. a
9. c
10. a

VOCABULARY

11. b
12. b
13. d
14. b
15. c
16. d
17. c
18. a
19. c
20. a

TEST 8

GRAMMAR

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. c
6. a
7. a
8. d
9. d
10. b

VOCABULARY

11. a
12. d
13. d
14. c
15. b
16. b
17. c
18. a
19. d
20. c

TEST 9

GRAMMAR

1. d
 2. b
 3. a
 4. c
 5. c
 6. c
 7. a
 8. a
 9. c
 10. c
11. d
 12. a
 13. a
 14. d
 15. a
 16. b
 17. c
 18. a
 19. c
 20. d

VOCABULARY

TEST 13

GRAMMAR

1. c
 2. b
 3. c
 4. d
 5. c
 6. c
 7. a
 8. d
 9. c
 10. b
11. a
 12. b
 13. a
 14. c
 15. a
 16. a
 17. d
 18. c
 19. b
 20. d

VOCABULARY

TEST 10

GRAMMAR

1. d
 2. a
 3. c
 4. b
 5. b
 6. d
 7. c
 8. b
 9. b
 10. c
11. b
 12. a
 13. d
 14. d
 15. c
 16. b
 17. b
 18. a
 19. d
 20. d

VOCABULARY

TEST 11

GRAMMAR

1. b
 2. d
 3. b
 4. b
 5. d
 6. b
 7. a
 8. c
 9. a
 10. c
11. c
 12. c
 13. a
 14. c
 15. b
 16. d
 17. b
 18. b
 19. d
 20. a

VOCABULARY

TEST 12

GRAMMAR

1. c
 2. a
 3. b
 4. a
 5. d
 6. a
 7. c
 8. b
 9. c
 10. c
11. b
 12. d
 13. d
 14. b
 15. d
 16. c
 17. d
 18. d
 19. a
 20. b

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY**A. Use the word in capitals at the end of the line to form one word that fits in the space.**

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. The office manager is responsible for all matters.
2. Senior staff are attending a one-week course to improve their management skills.
3. A new product needs to be tested before it can go on sale.
4. The road is far too narrow at points, but there are plans to it.
5. More than 50 wrote in about the vacancy.
6. Artists often praise the of the light on Greek islands.
7. The business plan is interesting but you have not taken into account the recent of the economy.
8. We were all impressed by the of the scheme.
9. Usually I'm quite good at coming up with short poems but I don't seem to have any today.
10. at the free concert was estimated at over 30,000 people.

ADMINISTER**RESIDE****EXTEND****WIDTH****APPLY****CLEAR****EXPAND****SIMPLE****INSPIRE****ATTEND****B. 1. Match the words to form phrases.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. cast | a. to business |
| 2. set | b. more staff |
| 3. cloud | c. a secret |
| 4. run through | d. extra money |
| 5. reach | e. doubt on |
| 6. get down | f. the script |
| 7. take on | g. the top |
| 8. boost | h. a date |
| 9. blurt out | i. his judgement |
| 10. bring in | j. confidence |

2. Complete the sentences below with phrases from Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. Time is running short, so we really should now.
2. The coach's positive remarks really among the team.
3. You need ambition and determination to in such a competitive business.
4. I didn't realise you hadn't told anyone the news – I didn't mean to
5. I think the director's personal feelings for Julia have as she's completely unsuitable for the role he has cast her in.
6. If Alan can do some overtime, that will to pay for our holiday.
7. It is rumoured that Jennifer Lopez will perform in this country but the promoters haven't for the concert yet.
8. The store is much busier at Christmas, so it usually on temporary contracts.
9. At the first rehearsal we are just going to to get an idea of the play as a whole.
10. The young scientist the theory developed by the other scientists at the institute.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. It's admirable that Jennifer does work for charity in her spare time.
 - a. voluntary
 - b. renowned
 - c. credible
 - d. affectionate
2. Producers are considering cancelling the show because its popularity has taken a in recent weeks.
 - a. dive
 - b. cast
 - c. perk
 - d. hype
3. Journalists are reporting that the bank robber is still protesting his innocence.
 - a. censored
 - b. alleged
 - c. intentional
 - d. freelance
4. Are the cartoons on that channel dubbed into Greek or do they have ?
 - a. credits
 - b. deadlines
 - c. contracts
 - d. subtitles
5. The assistant at the reception desk was rude when I asked for help.
 - a. highlight
 - b. outright
 - c. downright
 - d. upright
6. When I saw the fire truck, it suddenly on me that I'd left the oven on when I went out.
 - a. dawnd
 - b. appealed
 - c. cracked
 - d. fell
7. Many people believe that the government should make unemployment its
 - a. perspective
 - b. prospect
 - c. pretense
 - d. priority
8. It was hard to tell what the speaker was saying as she was
 - a. nagging
 - b. mumbling
 - c. shrinking
 - d. drafting
9. The for the next conference hasn't been announced yet, but it's likely to be somewhere in France.
 - a. set
 - b. asset
 - c. venue
 - d. board
10. The construction company will if they have to finish the hotel by next summer.
 - a. have their work cut out for them
 - b. resign themselves
 - c. be high flying
 - d. be set in their ways

GRAMMAR

D. Complete the sentences with the words below.

(10 x 2 = 20)

by the time * ever since * whenever * forever * later that day
 soon afterwards * the first time * all afternoon * shortly * this time next year

1. She was taken on in 1988, and she's been working in the marketing department
2. Dad used to get really angry my sister came home late.
3. I found the journey quite stressful because it was I had ever driven on mountain roads.
4. We'll have eaten all the salad the waiter finally brings the main courses!
5. David had been trying to fix the printer , without success.
6. I wonder what my classmates and I will be doing ?
7. Rita went to the hairdresser's early because she was going to a job interview
8. My neighbour is asking to borrow our tools.
9. She appeared in a TV commercial and was offered a part in a sitcom.
10. Passengers are asked to collect their belongings as this train will be arriving at Glasgow Central, where it will terminate.

E. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. (10 x 2 = 20)

- By the end of his round-the-world trip, which should be early next year, Brian (travel) for 18 months, and he (cover) more than 10,000 kilometres.
- The first thing we (notice) on arriving at the port was how much the town (change) since our previous visit.
- Since Frank (promote) he (tell) everybody else what to do. We've all had enough of it.
- Before the season (begin), only the team's most loyal supporters believed that they (reach) the finals.
- This introductory booklet (prepare) to help you make the most of your first term. It (consist) of helpful information and advice suggested by previous students.
- Due to the current economic climate, more and more factories (close down) these days and it is unlikely that their employees (offer) jobs elsewhere.
- This time tomorrow, organisers (put) the finishing touches to the set for tomorrow night's outdoor charity concert. The event (hold) last month but had to be cancelled because of the weather.
- Ian was disappointed not to be able to take part in the World Championship as he (train) for months. Now he (hope) he will be fit for the winter season.
- I (wonder) if you could help me. I know this store used to (stock) spare parts for record players. Is that still the case?
- Nigel always (laze around) when he should be doing his homework. I don't know how he (expect) to pass his exams next month.

F. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- Goods cannot be dispatched payment details have been confirmed.
 - while
 - by the time
 - until
 - no sooner
- Once the bridge , the journey will be much shorter.
 - will be building
 - has been building
 - is going to be built
 - has been built
- I your kindness and generosity. I don't know what I'd do without you.
 - am really appreciating
 - will really have appreciated
 - really appreciate
 - have been really appreciating
- "Where did the kids go?"
"They went into the garden leaves for a school project."
 - to search of
 - in search of
 - for search for
 - to search about
- The principal announced that any student who is late would be punished.
 - from now on
 - since now
 - ever since
 - by now
- Apparently, Jackson his resignation for some time before he finally left.
 - was considered
 - had been considering
 - used to consider
 - has considered
- Leslie used to get upset whenever she a stray animal in the street.
 - had seen
 - was seeing
 - was going to see
 - saw
- "Did the teacher mention anything about a test in last week's class?"
"I don't know – I had to leave early because I to the dentist."
 - was going
 - have gone
 - am going
 - would go
- "Did you visit the Louvre while you were in Paris?"
"We to but it was closed when we got there."
 - used to hope
 - were to hope
 - had hoped
 - had been hoped
- Great Britain the next Olympic Games.
 - has hosted
 - is to host
 - is about hosting
 - would host

VOCABULARY

- A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.** (10 x 1 = 10)
1. There are not enough social for young people in this area.
 - a. destinations
 - b. ailments
 - c. prescriptions
 - d. amenities
 2. The college expanded rapidly and facilities are now for so many students.
 - a. inconsistent
 - b. indiscreet
 - c. intuitive
 - d. inadequate
 3. Until Ben's success in a Broadway play, most critics his acting ability.
 - a. overcharged
 - b. underrated
 - c. confided
 - d. outstayed
 4. A bunch of flowers is a acceptable gift for a first date.
 - a. deeply
 - b. downright
 - c. perfectly
 - d. fully
 5. We could tell he disapproved by the look on his face.
 - a. irritated
 - b. unspoiled
 - c. immortal
 - d. hospitable
 6. I wasn't feeling energetic enough to to the top of the next hill.
 - a. steer
 - b. wonder
 - c. cover
 - d. trek
 7. Until I read the article, it had never my mind that I could start my own business.
 - a. crossed
 - b. followed
 - c. born
 - d. perceived
 8. The cruise ship stopped at Lisbon, where more passengers
 - a. drifted
 - b. landed
 - c. bound
 - d. embarked
 9. Rock fans came in to the festival.
 - a. pack
 - b. droves
 - c. herd
 - d. boards
 10. Grace couldn't help feeling about missing the championships because of her injury.
 - a. dehydrated
 - b. despondent
 - c. devoted
 - d. disobedient

- B. Complete each sentence with the correct word or phrase. Make any necessary changes.** (12 x 2 = 24)
There are more words than you need.

outweigh * incensed * in earnest * retain * yearn for
 opt for * predecessor * outset * fracture * consult * descendant
 contagious * pile-up * jet lag * elaborate * letdown

1. Travellers who cross the Atlantic from New York to London often suffer from for a few days.
2. Doctors felt that the benefits the risks involved in the operation.
3. A(n) on the M4 motorway caused extensive delays for motorists this morning.
4. The virus is so that all suspected cases are kept in isolation.
5. After making her statement, the finance minister refused to further on what she had said.
6. We enjoyed our camping holiday, but by the end we our own comfortable beds.
7. The new administrator will have his work cut out for him sorting out the mistakes of his
8. Surely Terry can't be when he talks about emigrating to Alaska!
9. The travel agent suggested several different packages and we a seven-day tour of Italy.
10. Many of the fans were at the referee's decision to award a penalty.
11. At first, doctors feared that he had his skull, but it turned out that nothing was broken.
12. Although I knew very little about yoga at the , I learned a lot during the course.

C. Match each sentence with the most suitable ending.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. Alice overslept this morning a. as she's a bit apprehensive.
 2. Could hypnotherapy really help? b. there's no let-up.
 3. Any decent hotel will do c. so all our planning was in vain.
 4. The review was very critical; d. so they arrived ahead of schedule.
 5. I'm going to the doctor's with Jo tonight e. I'm sceptical about such things.
 6. There was very little traffic f. it wounded my pride a bit.
 7. The reservation was made g. as long as it's in the vicinity of the racetrack.
 8. The event was cancelled h. but they're safe and sound now.
 9. Our tutors give us new assignments every week; i. so she missed her appointment.
 10. The journey home was hazardous j. at least a week prior to departure.

GRAMMAR**D. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. I only discovered I could paint late life.
 2. You should always have a first aid kit hand when travelling.
 3. The villa offers quiet and solitude because it is the beaten track.
 4. The harbour was swarming tourists waiting for ferries.
 5. Clive blames his sister not doing enough to help their aged parents.
 6. Farmers must comply European regulations controlling food storage.
 7. Dad started lecturing me about my future yesterday, but I couldn't see what he was driving
 8. I'm sure Ruth didn't tear the book purpose.
 9. Management have voted to give staff a 5% pay rise the board.
 10. Paul's parents tried to discourage him buying a motorcycle.

E. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.

(12 x 2 = 24)

You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1. When we arrived at the theatre, we discovered that the performance had been cancelled. **ONLY**
 We arrived at the theatre that the performance had been cancelled.
 2. When people tell my sister that she looks like me, she doesn't like it. **TOLD**
 My sister that she looks like me.
 3. We didn't take a first aid kit, which was foolish. **TAKEN**
 It was foolish of us a first aid kit.
 4. The thief got into the building through the bathroom window but nobody saw him. **ENTER**
 Nobody noticed through the bathroom window.
 5. We work through our lunch break so we can leave early, and the supervisor doesn't object. **WORKING**
 The supervisor through our lunch break so we can leave early.
 6. You really ought to repair the roof this month, before it rains. **BETTER**
 The repair work on the roof this month, before it rains.
 7. Amelia had the vaccination unnecessarily – she'd already had it the year before. **VACCINATED**
 Amelia as she'd already had it the year before.
 8. There is a slight possibility of Janet's attending the lecture. **ABLE**
 Janet the lecture, but it's unlikely.
 9. There's no reason why we shouldn't go home now – there's nothing else we can do here. **WELL**
 We now; there's nothing else we can do here.
 10. Judging from her notes, Sharon wasn't concentrating very hard in the lesson. **CAN'T**
 Sharon in the lesson as her notes are incomplete.
 11. With exams on Monday, I probably should spend the weekend studying. **SUPPOSED**
 I this weekend because I have exams on Monday.
 12. Once Julie has decided to do something, she never changes her mind. **CHANGING**
 There Julie's mind once she's decided to do something.

F. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(12 x 1 = 12)

1. The senator the monument but he was called away urgently.
 a. to be unveiling
 b. not unveiling
 c. was to have unveiled
 d. was being unveiled
2. "Why don't you put the dog in a kennel while you're away?"
 "I that to a puppy!"
 a. ought to not do
 b. couldn't do
 c. needn't do
 d. shall not do
3. The results by now – let's check the website.
 a. will come out
 b. supposed to come out
 c. can have come out
 d. will have come out
4. Canceling the trip now would mean our deposit.
 a. to lose
 b. losing
 c. us to lose
 d. our having lost
5. Can Jones run for the final?
 a. fast enough to qualify
 b. enough fast to qualify
 c. enough fast that he qualifies
 d. fast enough for qualifying
6. "I got these flowers for you as a thank you."
 "Oh, you"
 a. can't have
 b. won't have to
 c. shouldn't have
 d. needn't have got
7. "Ryan hasn't come home yet."
 "He over to Martin's to study."
 a. may have gone
 b. might be gone
 c. will have been going
 d. should go
8. "Did you enjoy the movie?"
 "No. I home."
 a. would rather to have stayed
 b. had better stay
 c. had rather be staying
 d. would sooner have stayed
9. The campaign was a huge success – the response better.
 a. wouldn't be
 b. couldn't have been
 c. didn't have to be
 d. mustn't have been
10. Some students have a hard time at college.
 a. to fit in
 b. to have fitted in
 c. being fitted in
 d. fitting in
11. Bruce wouldn't dare his brother's car without asking.
 a. be borrowed
 b. borrowing
 c. borrow
 d. his borrowing
12. Of the 600 questioned in the survey, were in favor of the new law.
 a. over half
 b. the half
 c. just half of
 d. this half

VOCABULARY**A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. With over 30 years' experience, John is the channel's reporter.
 - a. antique
 - b. primitive
 - c. veteran
 - d. novice
2. Investigators have not yet the possibility that he was being blackmailed.
 - a. dug around
 - b. ruled out
 - c. boiled down to
 - d. thrived on
3. Johann a joke to relieve the tension.
 - a. cracked
 - b. struck
 - c. broke
 - d. laid
4. Her reaction led me to that she intended to support our proposal.
 - a. imply
 - b. infer
 - c. issue
 - d. inquire
5. The on the back cover made me think it was a historical novel.
 - a. lyrics
 - b. slang
 - c. volume
 - d. blurb
6. A rabbit would be an ideal pet for a young child because it is
 - a. reptile
 - b. fertile
 - c. docile
 - d. juvenile
7. Female animals often guard their aggressively.
 - a. offspring
 - b. outlines
 - c. predators
 - d. downpours
8. In return for the company's sportswear, the tennis player received free supplies.
 - a. encountering
 - b. entrusting
 - c. enforcing
 - d. endorsing
9. Cellphones have changed the way we communicate with others.
 - a. dreadfully
 - b. genuinely
 - c. fundamentally
 - d. colloquially
10. Spring is typically the best time for gardeners to seeds.
 - a. cease
 - b. croak
 - c. coat
 - d. sow

B. Complete each sentence with the correct word or phrase. Make any necessary changes.

(10 x 2 = 20)

There are more words than you need.

indigenous • extent of • tactful • drop out • come in for
 pursuit of • abolish • aversion • illiterate
 jot down • over the hill • consent • migration • deep-rooted

1. He used to play professional football, but at 55, he's now.
2. As I didn't have my address book with me, I her number on my newspaper.
3. The coach a lot of criticism for not selecting the star player for the match.
4. In the past it was traditional for a man to ask for the father's before making a proposal of marriage.
5. Education is a priority in developing countries where many people are
6. One of the symptoms of the disease is a(n) to bright light.
7. More research is needed to determine the the danger of eating genetically modified foods.
8. Alligators are to Florida.
9. Many people believe that the government should tax relief for rich landowners.
10. My father's prejudice against foreigners is so that there's no way he could ever live abroad.

C. Use the word in capitals at the end of the line to form one word that fits in the space.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. Unfortunately, all our efforts to stop them demolishing the old house proved **FRUIT**
2. I think it's unfair to keep wild animals in **CAPTIVE**
3. Is that species of snake ? **VENOM**
4. These ancient stones are covered in in an archaic language. **INSCRIBE**
5. Exposure to the sun and chlorine in swimming pools has my hair. **LIGHT**
6. I don't know if I would describe the day as fun, but it was certainly **EVENT**
7. I think doing experiments on animals is completely and should be banned. **JUSTIFY**
8. That's a beautiful photograph – you should have it and put it in a frame. **LARGE**
9. Dawn has applied to study at a university in Wales. **LINGUAL**
10. My father's attitude to women and work is totally **MODE**

GRAMMAR**D. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. "I got the job as summer camp counselor."
"You were lucky from so many candidates."
 - a. having been chosen
 - b. getting them to choose
 - c. to have been chosen
 - d. to have chosen you
2. thousands of undiscovered planets in space.
 - a. There is said that there are
 - b. There are said to be
 - c. It is said there to be
 - d. It is said to be
3. "What do you suggest we do about our dog barking?"
"All I ask is that inside at night."
 - a. it be kept
 - b. you will keep it
 - c. to keep it
 - d. keeping him
4. The last major earthquake in 1953.
 - a. was happened
 - b. had been happened
 - c. was to have happened
 - d. happened
5. The phone company threatened if we didn't pay the bill immediately.
 - a. us being cut off
 - b. us to cut us off
 - c. to cut us off
 - d. that we would cut off
6. Nicholas complained after midnight.
 - a. against being not allowed out
 - b. that he didn't allow out
 - c. not to be allowed out
 - d. about not being allowed out
7. "What did they tell you at the passport office?"
"They said I more documentation."
 - a. will have provided
 - b. shall provide
 - c. would have to provide
 - d. must have provided
8. "What did Leo call about?"
"He wanted to know where our new barbecue."
 - a. did we buy
 - b. we bought
 - c. to have bought
 - d. if we had bought
9. Each party bag gifts and chocolates.
 - a. was filled with
 - b. is filling with
 - c. is filled by
 - d. had been filled
10. The science teacher as a homework assignment.
 - a. had diagrams of the skeleton making
 - b. got diagrams of the skeleton to make
 - c. had them made diagrams of the skeleton
 - d. got them to make diagrams of the skeleton

E. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given. (10 x 2 = 20)

1. "The accused does not have the right to leave the country," the judge said. **LEAVE**
The judge ordered that the country.
2. "This essay is very similar to one I read on the Internet," said Jenny. **SIMILARITY**
Jenny pointed one on the Internet.
3. The car door accidentally shut on Lucy's fingers. **GOT**
Lucy in the car door.
4. When we kept chickens, foxes used to come into our garden all the time. **HAD**
We our garden all the time when we kept chickens.
5. Peter recommended that we start the project over again from the beginning to get it perfect. **SCRATCH**
It was Peter's recommendation that the project to ensure perfection.
6. "I promise I'll keep the manuscript safe," said Fay. **WORD**
Fay she would keep the manuscript safe.
7. We have recently noticed that you have not been attending staff training sessions. **ATTENTION**
It has that you have not been attending staff training sessions.
8. "Do I have to book a place in advance?" Jane asked me. **NECESSARY**
Jane wanted to book a place in advance.
9. I'll never forget my parents taking me to the zoo for the first time. **TAKEN**
I will always for the first time by my parents.
10. "Why don't we start designing clothes for children as well?" said the marketing manager. **BRANCHING**
The marketing manager into the design of children's clothing.

F. Circle the correct answer.

(10 x 2 = 20)

Many people suffer from a bad back, and in Britain alone 180 million working days (1) **are losing / lose / are lost** because of it. Apparently, nowadays children are also developing back problems which would normally only (2) **being seen / be seen / have seen** in middle-aged people. Back specialists believe the situation is so serious that children should have routine back check-ups, in the same way as they (3) **get checked their teeth / have their teeth checked / are checked their teeth**. Dr Matthew Bennet, a member of the British Chiropractic Association, who (4) **said / told / asked** that the phenomenon was definitely on the increase, blamed the problem on sedentary lifestyles and on children (5) **being made to carry / are made to carry / to be made to carry** heavy schoolbags around. He advises (6) **not to sit / to not sitting / against sitting** in front of the television or a computer screen for a long time. He said that if joints aren't used, they stiffen, making muscle damage more likely. (7) **There is also estimated / It also estimates / It is also estimated** that a third of adult patients had problems which began in childhood and which (8) **could prevent / could have been prevented / could have it prevented** if they (9) **had been received proper treatment / had the proper treatment received / had received the proper treatment** then. It is vital that back problems (10) **be taken / is to take / is taking** seriously, as a joint injury may lead to osteoarthritis if left untreated.

VOCABULARY**A. 1. Match the words that go together.**

(8 x 1 = 8)

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. flat | a. breakthrough |
| 2. provisional | b. agent |
| 3. foregone | c. system |
| 4. slim | d. pots |
| 5. major | e. arrangement |
| 6. earthenware | f. rate |
| 7. one-way | g. conclusion |
| 8. estate | h. chance |

2. Complete the sentences with phrases from Exercise 1.

(8 x 1 = 8)

1. You cannot turn into the high street from here because of the
2. His exam results were not very good so there's only a he'll get a place at college.
3. Her balcony is covered with attractive flowering plants in
4. The plumber charges a of £50 per visit, regardless of how long the job takes.
5. Scientists consider their discovery of the virus a in the fight against disease.
6. The political party is so popular that many people consider the election result a
7. We are thinking of moving and the thinks we might get £300,000 for this house.
8. You won't be sharing an office permanently – this is just a

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. The judges said that Morpeth was an example of an exceptionally clean and tidy town. **SINGLED**
The judges an exceptionally clean and tidy town.
2. It is important to service the air conditioning regularly to ensure that it works efficiently. **BASIS**
The air conditioning needs to ensure that it works efficiently.
3. She should stay because she could become very successful in this firm. **REACH**
If she were top in this firm.
4. It's very common for teenagers to ignore their parents' advice. **TENDENCY**
Teenagers ignore their parents' advice.
5. The new administrator has managed to get the department working efficiently. **CLOCKWORK**
The department since the new administrator took over.
6. They are still unsure of exactly what caused the fire. **CONCLUSIONS**
The investigators have not yet of the fire.
7. The parents' association held a bazaar to collect funds for the school. **RAISED**
The parents' association holding a bazaar.
8. The team are so unfit that there is no chance they will win the cup. **STAND**
The team do the cup because they are so unfit.
9. It would be impossible for us to redecorate the house at the moment because we don't have enough money.
QUESTION
Redecorating the house is at the moment because we don't have enough money.
10. They are gradually replacing the old buses with new ecologically friendly ones. **PHASED**
The old buses and replaced by new ecologically friendly ones.

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. Len was caught through the keyhole into the principal's office.
 - a. glancing
 - b. peering
 - c. viewing
 - d. gazing
2. The steak knives are made of pure
 - a. steel
 - b. concrete
 - c. marble
 - d. brick
3. I'm not a big fan of Chinese food, but I don't mind it
 - a. over and over
 - b. once in a while
 - c. bit by bit
 - d. one at a time
4. The professor's book succeeded in mathematical theory.
 - a. observing
 - b. comprising
 - c. socializing
 - d. popularizing
5. The government intends to on businesses that try to avoid paying taxes.
 - a. take the floor
 - b. wipe the floor
 - c. tighten the screws
 - d. get into gear
6. The private park is surrounded by a high
 - a. lawn
 - b. shed
 - c. slum
 - d. hedge
7. The company has expanded rapidly and is now looking for larger
 - a. premises
 - b. infrastructure
 - c. threshold
 - d. household
8. We put up a between our balcony and our neighbour's balcony so we could have some privacy.
 - a. border
 - b. screen
 - c. solid
 - d. boundary
9. Energy from the wind and the waves can be used to electricity.
 - a. filter
 - b. generate
 - c. tamper
 - d. compile
10. Despite weeks of negotiations, the two countries were unable to a compromise.
 - a. reach
 - b. run
 - c. take
 - d. figure

GRAMMAR

D. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer best fits each space. (12 x 2 = 24)

Internet Safety

The benefits of the Internet are widely known: it offers access to all kinds of information imaginable and provides (1) to communicate with others around the world, to share opinions and play games. Parents recognise that it can (2) a world of learning and new experiences for their children, but because the Internet is (3) of millions of private sites which no one can control, (4) there are risks involved. It potentially exposes youngsters to offensive material and even dangerous situations, and crimes like abductions, which begin with seemingly harmless online introductions, are becoming (5) common. Recently, however, there have been efforts to (6) awareness of the dangers on the Internet. Parents should tell their children to remember at all (7) that in chatrooms, they are dealing with complete strangers and not giving out any personal information is the (8) to Internet safety. Specialised software can be (9) which filters out unsuitable sites. There are also safe sites for children where (10) is required. Such sites are constantly (11) to make sure that no one breaks the rules: no sharing of personal details, no requests for email addresses and no rudeness. The Internet is vast and ungovernable, but provided certain (12) are taken, young people can safely benefit from its riches.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A openings | B odds | C outskirts | D opportunities |
| 2. A transplant | B unlock | C enable | D explore |
| 3. A comprised | B developed | C consumed | D converted |
| 4. A totally | B greatly | C inevitably | D shortly |
| 5. A invariably | B occasionally | C gradually | D increasingly |
| 6. A rise | B raise | C reach | D make |
| 7. A times | B prospects | C instances | D expectations |
| 8. A flat | B distinct | C central | D key |
| 9. A injected | B inserted | C installed | D inhibited |
| 10. A readership | B membership | C sponsorship | D companionship |
| 11. A restored | B stared | C monitored | D witnessed |
| 12. A procedures | B modifications | C attempts | D precautions |

E. Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning stays the same, beginning as shown. (10 x 2 = 20)

- I'd like to see the film, but I can't because I have to study tonight.
If I
- The weather is quite bad, so we probably won't go to the coast.
If the weather were
- John got the job because he is fluent in Spanish.
If John wasn't
- We got out of the building safely only because the smoke alarms went off.
But for
- The antique train set was worth more because it had never been played with.
Had
- You must take the tablets as directed if you want the treatment to work.
As long
- I'm so jealous of Julia – she is spending the weekend at a luxury health spa!
I wish
- It was stupid of me to throw away the receipt!
If only
- Please don't speak about this to anyone else.
I'd rather
- The maths professor really should retire!
It's high

F. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- "Can I leave my bicycle here?"
"I'd"
 - wish you didn't
 - prefer it not
 - sooner you didn't
 - rather you not
- The dress Helen made looks it were made by a top designer.
 - as if
 - though
 - only if
 - if
- It's sensible to take out travel insurance your luggage is lost or damaged.
 - otherwise
 - in case
 - unless
 - as long as
- If only a swimming pool in our neighborhood.
 - it was
 - it could be
 - there were
 - there will be
- I've sent you a surprise. I hope the package in time for your birthday.
 - could arrive
 - would arrive
 - had arrived
 - arrives
- have any complaints or suggestions, please complete a feedback form.
 - Should you
 - Had you
 - If you happen
 - If you were
- If any of the exercises difficult, the trainer can help you.
 - you would find
 - finding
 - you are finding
 - you can find
- "We might be coming to New York next month."
" , give me a call."
 - If you do
 - If then
 - Happen to
 - In case of you do
- Provided that there are no delays, Rob here around 9 o'clock.
 - could have been
 - would be
 - supposed to be
 - should be
- I wish Martin me so late at night.
 - hadn't to phone
 - wouldn't phone
 - wouldn't be phoning
 - doesn't phone

VOCABULARY**A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. Books for young children are often beautifully in bright colors.
 - a. indicated
 - b. captured
 - c. illustrated
 - d. focused
2. Martha had just taken a course in relaxation techniques and advised me to do
 - a. likewise
 - b. likelihood
 - c. overboard
 - d. overcast
3. There is still a of hope that the rescuers will find survivors.
 - a. light
 - b. picture
 - c. ton
 - d. ray
4. We ate our picnic sheltering among the sand
 - a. domes
 - b. dunes
 - c. dams
 - d. draughts
5. A has destroyed large areas of farmland.
 - a. landslide
 - b. rainfall
 - c. windmill
 - d. waterfall
6. Forgetting to list her sources was a significant on Kelly's part.
 - a. commission
 - b. permission
 - c. omission
 - d. mission
7. Vincent had to through the pond to retrieve his hat.
 - a. thaw
 - b. wade
 - c. mount
 - d. plod
8. You're ! Why on earth did you go out without an umbrella?
 - a. humid
 - b. arid
 - c. foggy
 - d. soaking
9. Even with their eyes closed, most people can recognize silk from its
 - a. likeness
 - b. texture
 - c. twinkle
 - d. trickle
10. Professor Green is an expert on American art.
 - a. contemporary
 - b. cylindrical
 - c. compatible
 - d. conceivable

B. Complete each sentence with the correct word or phrase below. Make any necessary changes.

(10 x 2 = 20)

There are more words than you need.

descendant * vertical * brush up on * stroll * catch a glimpse of
 make light of * jagged * hail * go to show
 all go * torrent * audible * diversion * gloomy

1. I found the December weather really depressing.
2. Hundreds of the singer's fans queued for hours in the hope of their idol.
3. During the New Year's sales it's in the department store where I work.
4. It's difficult to know whether Janet needs help as she always her troubles.
5. Mario's voice was barely at the back of the concert hall.
6. Trevor joined an evening class to his French before his holiday.
7. The minister replied to the allegations with a of angry criticisms of the press.
8. Critics are her latest novel as a masterpiece.
9. There will be a in operation on the A34 near Burton because of roadworks.
10. The leaves of the birch and elm trees have edges.

C. Match each sentence with the sentence that best follows it.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tina is a very talented photographer. | a. But it's just a drop in the ocean. |
| 2. The meeting has gone on too late. | b. It's taking shape now. |
| 3. The sitcom has been successful for years. | c. She has a real flair for it. |
| 4. The renovations to the house are progressing well. | d. She stands out a mile. |
| 5. Jennifer has never forgiven them for not inviting her. | e. Let's wind it up. |
| 6. That coffee smells delicious. | f. Is it freshly ground? |
| 7. We raised \$500 for the new sports hall. | g. She bears a grudge. |
| 8. Shelley doesn't have time to take on any more work. | h. It weighs a ton. |
| 9. There's no way Katherine could carry that equipment. | i. She's snowed under. |
| 10. Andrea looks nothing like her classmates. | j. It's still going strong. |

GRAMMAR**D. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. You were completely mad to go out in the middle of a thunderstorm! **EARTH**
Why in the middle of a thunderstorm?
2. Entering the site without protective headgear is strictly forbidden. **ACCOUNT**
On the site without protective headgear.
3. The problem was caused because the equipment wasn't put in by a professional. **INSTALLED**
Had by a professional, there wouldn't have been a problem.
4. The yacht race was cancelled due to strong winds. **BECAUSE**
It the yacht race was cancelled.
5. It was such a complicated plot that few people understood the film's ending. **WAS**
So few people understood the film's ending.
6. Many of the 100 or so species at the zoo are endangered in the wild. **WHICH**
There are more than 100 species at the zoo, in the wild.
7. The eldest of Betty's three sons is a professional basketball player. **WHOM**
Betty has is a professional basketball player.
8. All the delegates had arrived by 10 o'clock, when the announcement was made. **TIME**
The announcement was made at 10 o'clock, all the delegates had arrived.
9. I didn't bother locking the car as I didn't intend staying more than a minute. **STAY**
Not more than a minute, I didn't bother locking the car.
10. The guide dog was assigned to a new master only after it had had full training. **TRAINED**
Having , the guide dog was assigned to a new master.

E. OPEN CLOZE Complete the following article by writing one word in each space.

(15 x 2 = 30)

Graffiti

Wherever you go in Britain, you'll see graffiti. Illegal though it (1) be, large numbers of young people, many of (2) are talented artists, make their mark on walls, phone boxes, bus shelters and train stations. Graffiti ranges from slogans and *tags*, (3) are decorated forms of the writers' signatures, to elaborate and impressive designs in a style characteristic (4) its artist. Nowhere (5) graffiti more evident than in urban areas, (6) it contributes to the run-down atmosphere. This poses a problem for the authorities, (7) are forced to spend millions of pounds a year cleaning it up. However, there are conflicting views on (8) to solve the problem. Government plans include a ban on the sale of spray paint to under 18s. This has been criticised (9) the grounds that stealing paint is already part of underground graffiti culture, and the only (10) this would do is increase crime, as there would be no other way (11) which youngsters could get hold of it. A different approach is to welcome graffiti into inner cities, not outlaw it, by setting up projects to encourage young artists to learn the techniques from more experienced (12) , and by establishing authorised graffiti walls. (13) schemes would allow people to express themselves freely without damaging public property. It would only partially solve the problem, however, as (14) makes graffiti art attractive to many is the fact (15) it is forbidden.

F. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. , the balcony chairs will be ruined in this weather.
 - a. Leaving uncovered
 - b. Having left uncovered
 - c. Left uncovered
 - d. Were left uncovered
2. , we cleared the table and washed the dishes.
 - a. Having the food eaten
 - b. Eating the food
 - c. Eaten the food
 - d. The food eaten
3. The contestant the most questions correctly wins the prize.
 - a. answering
 - b. which is answering
 - c. answered
 - d. who answering
4. Rarely in daylight hours.
 - a. foxes are seen
 - b. are foxes seen
 - c. that foxes see
 - d. be foxes seen
5. It's cold in here. Let's light a fire, ?
 - a. don't we
 - b. will we
 - c. aren't we
 - d. shall we
6. It's not known the portrait of King Henry.
 - a. who did paint
 - b. by whom was painted
 - c. who painted
 - d. did who paint
7. "Did you check your essay before submitting it?"
"Yes, "
 - a. I several times read it
 - b. several times did I read it
 - c. I read several times the essay
 - d. I read it several times
8. Denise gave me a book
 - a. I'd already read that
 - b. of which I'd already read
 - c. that I'd already read
 - d. what I'd already read
9. Do you know ?
 - a. who he bought the necklace for
 - b. for who he bought the necklace
 - c. that he bought the necklace for
 - d. whose he bought the necklace
10. is that fox-hunting is now illegal.
 - a. It is the new law that means
 - b. What the new law means
 - c. All that means the new law
 - d. Whatever means the new law

VOCABULARY**A. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

(10 x 1 = 10)

- After a week of wet weather, most of the kids at the camp were fed and ready to go home.
- The students' common room is far too noisy to be conducive serious revision.
- The untidy state of the grounds detracts the appearance of the mansion.
- The college offers a wide array degree courses at both bachelor and master's levels.
- There were so many excursions and activities available at the resort that we were spoilt choice.
- Spinach and other greens are rich iron.
- If you are earning less than the average national wage, then you may be eligible state benefits.
- Phil is studying for a degree French literature.
- terms of number of participants, this year's athletics championships were the biggest ever.
- Astrologists believe that the position of the stars at the time of your birth has an influence your personality.

B. WORD FORMATION Use the word in capitals at the end of the line to form one word

(10 x 1 = 10)

that fits in the space.

- The sales team went on a week's course to brush up their sales techniques.
- A fruit salad is much more than chocolate mousse.
- We regret to inform you that you do not satisfy the entrance for the course you have applied for.
- The politician tried to excuse his behaviour by saying it was just a moment of
- The documentary gave us a fascinating into the life of a professional dancer.
- Foreign languages are subjects for final-year students.
- A to work long hours is essential in this profession.
- The new education minister pledged to improve the teaching of in primary schools.
- Don't put any mayonnaise on my salad – it's really and I'm on a diet.
- The new drug cannot be given to patients until its has been scientifically proved.

RESIDE
NUTRIENT
REQUIRE
FOOL
SEE
OPT
WILL
NUMBER
FAT
EFFECT

C. 1. Match the words to form expressions.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- | | |
|------------|----------------------------|
| 1. get | a. your weight |
| 2. swallow | b. off an idea |
| 3. come | c. your appetite |
| 4. put | d. to grips with |
| 5. go | e. out your feelings |
| 6. make | f. your pride |
| 7. pour | g. the grade |
| 8. whet | h. to terms with |
| 9. watch | i. respect for |
| 10. show | j. your finger on |

2. Complete the sentences with expressions from Exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- The standards for entry to the national ballet school are very high and only a few candidates each year
- Pupils at this school are expected to their teachers by standing up when they enter the classroom.
- These brochures might for a holiday abroad.
- I'd love to try one of your cakes but I won't have one because I'm
- Mark was very enthusiastic about joining a gym at first but recently he seems to have
- I hate the idea of asking my parents for a loan, but I guess I'll have to as there's no other solution.
- Paul spent hours trying to the physics theory, but he found it almost incomprehensible.
- I wasn't convinced by the lead actor's performance but I can't quite why I feel that way.
- Gillian came round for coffee last night and as we were chatting, she about her boyfriend.
- It took John months to the end of his career as a professional tennis player.

D. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

1. The twins are so alike that it's impossible to tell them apart.
 - a. vastly
 - b. virtually
 - c. amply
 - d. merely
2. My aunt's house is spotlessly clean – not a of dust anywhere.
 - a. mark
 - b. spice
 - c. drop
 - d. speck
3. Basic subjects, such as math, are generally in school.
 - a. culinary
 - b. conservative
 - c. compulsory
 - d. comprehensive
4. The plan sounds too good to be true – surely there are some
 - a. drawbacks
 - b. substitutes
 - c. foolishness
 - d. curses
5. The principal is taking steps to solve the problem of at her school.
 - a. prodigy
 - b. truancy
 - c. numeracy
 - d. faculty
6. Janine is taking an advanced course to her prospects of promotion.
 - a. motivate
 - b. simmer
 - c. ingest
 - d. enhance
7. The hungry boys the cookies their mother had baked.
 - a. devoured
 - b. weaned
 - c. impaired
 - d. quenched
8. After years of erosion, the inscription on the statue was barely
 - a. lenient
 - b. literate
 - c. legible
 - d. edible
9. The lawyers hoped for a quick settlement but the case for months.
 - a. dropped out
 - b. coughed up
 - c. dried up
 - d. dragged on
10. My pen and the ink stain ruined my favorite shirt.
 - a. leaked
 - b. liquidated
 - c. sprinkled
 - d. poured

GRAMMAR

E. Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning stays the same. Begin as shown.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. There are both ballet and rhythmic gymnastic classes available at the club.
Besides
2. Air travel has become more expensive because oil prices have increased.
Owing
3. The noise level at the party was unbearable as the children showed such enthusiasm for the games.
The children were so
4. Laura looks stunning whatever she wears.
No
5. Evan is doing very well at school, especially if you consider that he's younger than the others in his class.
Given
6. No building in the village is as old as the church.
By far
7. My feelings are more of concern than of irritation.
I'm not so
8. The weather yesterday was slightly warmer than it is today.
Today the weather is not quite
9. The luxury model is twice the price of the basic model.
The basic model costs
10. A holiday in the Caribbean is much more exotic than a weekend in Blackpool.
A weekend in Blackpool is nothing

F. Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase below.

(10 x 2 = 20)

in short • on top of that • yet • as for • contrary to
 however • seeing that • though • so as • apart from

- what you might expect, a player who misses a penalty sometimes becomes more popular with fans because they sympathize with him.
- I was going to punish you, but, you have learned your lesson, I'll let you off this time.
- small the amount, taking money from another person is stealing.
- I have outlined many areas the company needs to invest in to remain competitive. , staff training, technological infrastructure and distribution will be key to our continuing success.
- The hotel and the resort were fantastic! the weather – it was glorious every day of our stay.
- The tutor set a 2000 word essay, and assigned us three plays to read by next week!
- The portions at that restaurant are small satisfying.
- learning useful survival skills, you'll also gain confidence by attending the camp.
- They planned the menu carefully not to offend their guests by serving anything they couldn't eat.
- Intelligent he may be, he sometimes makes the dimmest remarks.

G. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 1 = 10)

- "You're so lucky to be going abroad for a whole semester!"
 "..... , I'll miss my friends and family."
 - That is
 - On account of that
 - All the same
 - But despite
- having a full-time job in a bank, David works as a freelance web-designer.
 - Moreover
 - Also
 - Not only
 - As well as
- Anna is her sister.
 - every bit as intelligent as
 - just intelligent as
 - as intelligent like
 - rather as intelligent as
- Shop assistants are often very
 - paid poorly
 - poor-pay
 - poorly paid
 - poor paying
- , modeling is actually hard work.
 - Even it may seem glamorous
 - Yet it may seem glamorous
 - All the same glamorous it may seem
 - However glamorous it may seem
- It is the secretary's job to inform all
 - the concerned in the project people
 - the people concerned in the project
 - the concerned people in the project
 - the people in the project concerned
- I studied both history and literature at college but I
 - preferred latter more
 - more the latter preferred
 - much preferred the latter
 - the latter preferred very much
- Grandma put her favorite crystal glasses away the children would break them.
 - for fear that
 - hence
 - in order to
 - so as not
- This year it was that many of our flowering plants died.
 - so a dry summer
 - so dry a summer
 - a so dry a summer
 - such dry a summer
- The sky grew and the temperature fell.
 - black
 - blackly
 - blackest
 - blackening

VOCABULARY

- A. Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase below. Make any necessary changes. (10 x 2 = 20)**
There are more words than you need.

make do ● make the most of ● take account of ● pay your debt ● be held accountable
 round off ● splash out ● mail order ● junk mail ● brand loyalty
 stock market ● deserve credit for ● current account ● tail off

1. Have you seen this new catalogue? The clothes are great and they deliver within 48 hours!
2. The festival organisers the week's events with a huge firework display in the town square.
3. We really our time in London – we saw all the sights, shopped till we dropped and sampled the local nightlife.
4. Robert made a fortune by trading shares on the before the crash.
5. The judges awarded extra prizes because they felt some contestants their efforts.
6. The special offer on kitchens isn't really such a good deal when you how much they charge for installation.
7. After Len was made redundant, the family had to on one salary.
8. There was a huge demand for the new slimming product at first but then orders as customers found it had little effect.
9. My monthly salary is paid directly into my so I never deal with large amounts of cash.
10. Whoever signed the delivery form should for the missing goods.

- B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. Margaret was to learn that her students had done so well in their exams.
 - a. typified
 - b. gratified
 - c. clarified
 - d. diversified
2. Five men are being held on of forging bank notes.
 - a. debts
 - b. shares
 - c. charges
 - d. figures
3. Suzanne was determined to every cent of the loan herself.
 - a. pay off
 - b. write off
 - c. come off
 - d. branch out
4. Our consumer society encourages us to be , and we all own things we don't really need.
 - a. incentive
 - b. acquisitive
 - c. receptive
 - d. lucrative
5. I will always be to my tutor for his help.
 - a. invaluable
 - b. impoverished
 - c. indebted
 - d. priceless
6. As soon as we can raise the , we will expand the business.
 - a. subsidy
 - b. debit
 - c. currency
 - d. capital
7. The final bill for the building work was , so we refused to pay.
 - a. prosperous
 - b. hard up
 - c. bankrupt
 - d. exorbitant
8. The clothes in that store are always priced.
 - a. worthlessly
 - b. reasonably
 - c. lowly
 - d. financially
9. The new air freshener is supposed to unpleasant kitchen smells.
 - a. authorize
 - b. commercialize
 - c. neutralize
 - d. categorize
10. The zoo is building a new section to the larger mammals.
 - a. house
 - b. earn
 - c. seize
 - d. store

GRAMMAR

- C. Circle the correct answer.**

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. The typhoon caused a great deal of **damage / damages**.
2. Denise developed **a / the** fear of heights in her teens.
3. I only spent – / **a** couple of hours revising for the test.
4. The guests consumed **the entire / most** of the food.
5. **The young / Young** need guidance, not punishment.
6. I'll support **any / some** decision you make.
7. Ted was upset to see that he had made quite **few / a few** mistakes in his composition.
8. **Many / Many of the** people today have debts they find difficult to repay.
9. The news **was / were** very depressing last night.
10. The police **is / are** continuing their investigation into the incident.

D. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given. (10 x 2 = 20)

1. Unfortunately, the school does not have much money available for the repairs. **LITTLE**
There for repairs to the school.
2. There were just two or three people waiting in the reception area. **COUPLE**
Only in the reception area.
3. The bank lent us the money we needed to build an extension. **TOOK**
We in order to build an extension.
4. Levels of wealth have risen in most European countries in the last few decades. **BETTER**
People in most European countries they were a few decades ago.
5. You can take this voucher to any of our restaurants to receive a free meal. **REDEEMED**
This free meal voucher any of our restaurants.
6. I never want to go the dentist's again after my last visit! **PUT**
My last visit to the dentist for life!
7. When did you last go out to buy a new item of clothing? **TIME**
When clothes shopping?
8. Rich businessmen often commission artists to create original paintings. **WORKS**
Original by rich businessmen.
9. Jeremy became extremely rich by acting as the manager of a highly successful pop group. **FORTUNE**
Jeremy a highly successful pop group.
10. Single rooms are available but you have to pay £20 extra per night. **COST**
Single rooms are available £20 per night.

E. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

(10 x 2 = 20)

1. New tax cuts are designed to make life easier for
a. all of poor
b. most the poor
c. poor
d. the poor
2. Justin is such a careful programmer that he checks line of code he writes.
a. each and every
b. one and another
c. more than enough
d. either one
3. "There were more than 200 people at Dylan's beach house for his 21st birthday."
"Wow! That must have been!"
a. a quite party
b. great party
c. some party
d. most of a party
4. "Was it the first time you'd been rafting?"
"Yes, and it'll be!"
a. last time
b. a last time
c. a last
d. the last
5. "There's still so much to do before the deadline."
"Don't worry, we've got time."
a. much
b. plenty of
c. several
d. lots
6. The Metropolitan Museum is home to of art.
a. much work
b. the whole works
c. a great deal of work
d. many works
7. "How was the food at the Mexican restaurant?"
"Well, we ordered were nice, but one was inedible."
a. the most dishes
b. most of the dishes
c. few dishes
d. few of the dishes
8. The wedding was held in
a. a spectacular surrounding
b. the spectacular surrounding
c. spectacular surroundings
d. the most spectacular surrounding
9. The club organized a theater trip \$25 per person.
a. at a cost of
b. with the cost of
c. in cost
d. the cost was
10. It's not wise to spend too much at a time of uncertainty.
a. economy
b. economical
c. economic
d. economizing

ANSWER KEY – REVIEW TESTS

REVIEW TEST 1

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. administrative | 6. clarity |
| 2. residential | 7. expansion |
| 3. extensively | 8. simplicity |
| 4. widen | 9. inspiration |
| 5. applicants | 10. Attendance |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. 1. e | 6. a |
| 2. h | 7. b |
| 3. i | 8. j |
| 4. f | 9. c |
| 5. g | 10. d |
-
- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2. 1. get down to business | 6. bring in extra money |
| 2. boosted confidence | 7. set a date |
| 3. reach the top | 8. takes on more staff |
| 4. blurt out a / the secret | 9. run through the script |
| 5. clouded his judgement | 10. cast doubt on |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 6. a |
| 2. a | 7. d |
| 3. b | 8. b |
| 4. d | 9. c |
| 5. c | 10. a |

GRAMMAR

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ever since | 6. this time next year |
| 2. whenever | 7. later that day |
| 3. the first time | 8. forever |
| 4. by the time | 9. soon afterwards |
| 5. all afternoon | 10. shortly |

Exercise E

- | |
|---|
| 1. will have been travelling; will have covered |
| 2. noticed; had changed |
| 3. was promoted; has been telling |
| 4. began; would reach |
| 5. has been prepared; consists |
| 6. are closing down; will be offered |
| 7. will be putting; was to be held / was going to be held |
| 8. had been training; hopes |
| 9. was wondering; stock |
| 10. is lazing around; expects |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. b |
| 2. d | 7. d |
| 3. c | 8. a |
| 4. b | 9. c |
| 5. a | 10. b |

REVIEW TEST 2

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. d | 6. d |
| 2. d | 7. a |
| 3. b | 8. d |
| 4. c | 9. b |
| 5. a | 10. b |

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. jet lag | 7. predecessor |
| 2. outweighed | 8. in earnest |
| 3. pile-up | 9. opted for |
| 4. contagious | 10. incensed |
| 5. elaborate | 11. fractured |
| 6. yearned for | 12. outset |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. i | 6. d |
| 2. e | 7. j |
| 3. g | 8. c |
| 4. f | 9. b |
| 5. a | 10. h |

Exercise D

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. in | 6. with |
| 2. on | 7. at |
| 3. off | 8. on |
| 4. with | 9. across |
| 5. for | 10. from |

GRAMMAR

Exercise E

- | |
|--|
| 1. only to discover |
| 2. does not like being told |
| 3. not to have taken |
| 4. the thief enter (the building) |
| 5. doesn't object to our working |
| 6. had better begin / be done |
| 7. was vaccinated unnecessarily / did not need to be vaccinated / needn't have been vaccinated |
| 8. might be able to attend |
| 9. may as well go home |
| 10. can't have been concentrating |
| 11. am supposed to study |
| 12. is no changing |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 7. a |
| 2. b | 8. d |
| 3. d | 9. b |
| 4. b | 10. d |
| 5. a | 11. c |
| 6. c | 12. a |

REVIEW TEST 3

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. c |
| 2. b | 7. a |
| 3. a | 8. d |
| 4. b | 9. c |
| 5. d | 10. d |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. over the hill | 6. aversion |
| 2. jotted down | 7. extent of |
| 3. came in for | 8. indigenous |
| 4. consent | 9. abolish |
| 5. illiterate | 10. deep-rooted |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. fruitless | 6. eventful |
| 2. captivity | 7. unjustified / unjustifiable |
| 3. venomous | 8. enlarged |
| 4. inscriptions | 9. linguistics |
| 5. lightened | 10. outmoded |

GRAMMAR

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. d |
| 2. b | 7. c |
| 3. a | 8. b |
| 4. d | 9. a |
| 5. c | 10. d |

Exercise E

- the accused not leave
- out the essay's similarity to (the)
- got her fingers shut / caught
- had foxes come into
- be started from scratch
- gave (me / us) her word that
- come to our attention
- to know if it was necessary
- remember being taken to the zoo
- suggested branching out

Exercise F

- are lost
- be seen
- have their teeth checked
- said
- being made to carry
- against sitting
- It is also estimated
- could have been prevented
- had received the proper treatment
- be taken

REVIEW TEST 4

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 1. f | 5. a |
| 2. e | 6. d |
| 3. g | 7. c |
| 4. h | 8. b |
| 2. 1. one-way system | 5. major breakthrough |
| 2. slim chance | 6. foregone conclusion |
| 3. earthenware pots | 7. estate agent |
| 4. flat rate | 8. provisional arrangement |

Exercise B

- singled Morpeth out as
- servicing on a regular basis
- to stay she could reach the
- have a tendency to
- has been running like clockwork
- reached any conclusions about the cause
- raised funds / money for the school by
- not stand a chance of winning
- out of the question
- are (gradually) being phased out

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. b | 6. d |
| 2. a | 7. a |
| 3. b | 8. b |
| 4. d | 9. b |
| 5. c | 10. a |

GRAMMAR

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. A |
| 2. B | 8. D |
| 3. A | 9. C |
| 4. C | 10. B |
| 5. D | 11. C |
| 6. B | 12. D |

Exercise E

- didn't have to study tonight, I'd see the film
- better / not so bad, we would go to the coast
- fluent in Spanish he wouldn't have got the job
- the smoke alarms we wouldn't have got out of the building safely
- the antique train set been played with, it would have been worth less
- as you take the tablets as directed the treatment should / will work
- I could spend / was spending the weekend at a luxury health spa like Julia
- I hadn't thrown away the receipt
- you didn't speak about this to anyone else
- time the maths professor retired

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. a |
| 2. a | 7. c |
| 3. b | 8. a |
| 4. c | 9. d |
| 5. d | 10. b |

REVIEW TEST 5

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. c |
| 2. a | 7. b |
| 3. d | 8. d |
| 4. b | 9. b |
| 5. a | 10. a |

Exercise B

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1. gloomy | 6. brush up on |
| 2. catching a glimpse of | 7. torrent |
| 3. all go | 8. hailing |
| 4. makes light of | 9. diversion |
| 5. audible | 10. jagged |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. f |
| 2. e | 7. a |
| 3. j | 8. i |
| 4. b | 9. h |
| 5. g | 10. d |

GRAMMAR

Exercise D

1. on earth did you go out
2. no account may you enter
3. the equipment been installed
4. was because of strong winds that
5. complicated was the plot that
6. many of which are endangered
7. three sons, the eldest of whom
8. by which time
9. intending to stay
10. been fully trained

Exercise E

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. may | 9. on |
| 2. whom | 10. thing |
| 3. which | 11. in |
| 4. of | 12. ones |
| 5. is | 13. Such |
| 6. where | 14. what |
| 7. who | 15. that |
| 8. how | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 6. c |
| 2. d | 7. d |
| 3. a | 8. c |
| 4. b | 9. a |
| 5. d | 10. b |

REVIEW TEST 6

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. up | 5. for | 8. in |
| 2. to | 6. in | 9. In |
| 3. from | 7. for | 10. on |
| 4. of | | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. residential | 6. optional |
| 2. nutritious | 7. willingness |
| 3. requirements | 8. numeracy |
| 4. foolishness | 9. fattening |
| 5. insight | 10. effectiveness |

Exercise C

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. 1. d | 5. b | 8. c |
| 2. f | 6. g | 9. a |
| 3. h | 7. e | 10. i |
| 4. j | | |
| 2. 1. make the grade | 6. swallow my pride | |
| 2. show respect for | 7. get to grips with | |
| 3. whet your appetite | 8. put my finger on | |
| 4. watching my weight | 9. poured out her feelings | |
| 5. gone off the idea | 10. come to terms with | |

Exercise D

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 5. b | 8. c |
| 2. d | 6. d | 9. d |
| 3. c | 7. a | 10. a |
| 4. a | | |

GRAMMAR

Exercise E

1. ballet, rhythmic gymnastic classes are also available at the club
2. to increased oil prices, air travel has become more expensive
3. enthusiastic about the games that the noise level at the party was unbearable
4. matter what she wears, Laura looks stunning
5. that Evan is younger than the others in his class, he is doing very well at school
6. the oldest building in the village is the church.
7. much irritated as concerned
8. as warm as it was yesterday
9. half the price of / half as much as the luxury model
10. compared to a holiday in the Caribbean / like as exotic as a holiday in the Caribbean

Exercise F

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. Contrary to | 6. on top of that |
| 2. seeing that | 7. yet |
| 3. However | 8. Apart from |
| 4. In short, | 9. so as |
| 5. As for | 10. though |

Exercise G

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 5. d | 8. a |
| 2. d | 6. b | 9. b |
| 3. a | 7. c | 10. a |
| 4. c | | |

REVIEW TEST 7

VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. mail order | 6. take account of |
| 2. rounded off | 7. make do |
| 3. made the most of | 8. tailed off |
| 4. stock market | 9. current account |
| 5. deserved credit for | 10. be held accountable |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. b | 6. d |
| 2. c | 7. d |
| 3. a | 8. b |
| 4. b | 9. c |
| 5. c | 10. a |

GRAMMAR

Exercise C

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. damage | 6. any |
| 2. a | 7. a few |
| 3. a | 8. Many |
| 4. most | 9. was |
| 5. The young | 10. are |

Exercise D

1. is little money available
2. a couple of people were waiting
3. took a loan from the bank
4. are better off today
5. can be redeemed at
6. put me off going
7. was the last time you went
8. works of art are often commissioned
9. made a fortune by managing
10. at an additional cost of

Exercise E

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. d | 6. d |
| 2. a | 7. b |
| 3. c | 8. c |
| 4. d | 9. a |
| 5. b | 10. c |

UNIT 1 (page 7)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. sounds | 7. fit |
| 2. is being decorated | 8. is measuring |
| 3. you've received | 9. be staying |
| 4. are opening up | 10. don't consider |
| 5. won't have taken | 11. have been discussing |
| 6. is going to win | 12. am not having |

Exercise B

1. The show is about to start.
2. The taxi is here.
3. My brothers play chess sometimes.
4. It is a long time since John went to London.
5. Uncle Ron is spending a week here.
6. Trudy is behaving stubbornly at the moment.
7. I get messages from Jim all the time.
8. They will play the match at the stadium.

PRACTICE (page 10)

Exercise A

1. will be resting
2. has been published / is published, am going
3. Do you consider; am thinking
4. will be working; won't see
5. are being; will pay
6. have been reading; is delivered
7. is getting; will turn
8. Are you still planning; am going to study

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. currently | 5. lately |
| 2. all night | 6. by now |
| 3. from now on | 7. ever since |
| 4. forever | 8. shortly |

Exercise C

1. will have finished renovating the shop
2. been teaching for 15 years / been a teacher for 15 years
3. be announced (by the committee) tomorrow
4. verge / brink of splitting up
5. will have been working on his thesis for nine months
6. to see the doctor again / next?
7. you will know how difficult it is
8. always / constantly / forever forgetting her friends' birthdays

Exercise D

2. I'm on the point of resigning because of stress.
3. What time is the next train due to arrive?
4. The country is not yet on the point of declaring war.
5. I think the lecture is about to start.
6. You are not to touch any of the photographic equipment.
7. The committee is to announce its decision on Monday.

Exercise E

1. 2. will welcome / be welcoming
3. will hold / be holding
4. will have distributed
5. have not submitted

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 2. 1. have arranged | 4. will recognise |
| 2. get | 5. will drive |
| 3. will be waiting | 6. have taken |
| 3. 1. are considering | 5. grows / will grow |
| 2. appeals | 6. measures |
| 3. buy | 7. will you keep |
| 4. doesn't need | 8. do you realise |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. A |
| 2. D | 7. C |
| 3. A | 8. B |
| 4. C | 9. D |
| 5. D | 10. B |

Exercise G

- | | |
|----------|---------|
| 1. are | 6. do |
| 2. been | 7. is |
| 3. has | 8. be |
| 4. being | 9. have |
| 5. will | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 13)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 5. a |
| 2. c | 6. b |
| 3. d | 7. c |
| 4. d | 8. d |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. going | 9. costs / takes |
| 2. until / till | 10. time |
| 3. getting | 11. will |
| 4. there | 12. long / soon |
| 5. be | 13. Does |
| 6. a / per | 14. so |
| 7. already | 15. being |
| 8. been | |

UNIT 2 (page 14)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------|
| b. Alison | f. Bob |
| c. Bob | g. Bob |
| d. Alison / Tim | h. Alison |
| e. Tim | i. Jenny |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 1. duties | 4. further her career |
| 2. administration | 5. human resources manager |
| 3. colleagues | 6. firm |
| 2. 1. maternity leave | 4. CV |
| 2. short-term | 5. asset |
| 3. salary | |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 15)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 2. negotiate, demand | 5. hold, chair |
| 3. run, set up | 6. set, meet |
| 4. select, recruit | |

Exercise B

1. administer, cope
 2. occupation, vocation, line
 3. affectionate, efficient, effective
 4. aspects, field, domain
 5. permission, permit, leave
 6. outlook, perspective, prospects
 7. priority, significance, expertise

Exercise C

1. **-ive:** competitive, constructive, co-operative, effective, excessive, extensive, inclusive, innovative, instructive, inventive, selective, supportive
-al: departmental, educational, emotional, experimental, intentional, logical, occupational, organisational, personal, professional, vocational
ial: commercial, confidential, financial, influential, managerial, official, preferential, residential
 2. 1. innovative / competitive / effective / inventive
2. logical / co-operative / supportive / professional
3. financial / personal / professional
4. managerial / administrative / organisational
5. extensive / official / confidential

Exercise D

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. broaden + | expand + |
| contract - | extend + |
| deteriorate - | shrink - |
| diminish - | swell + |
| downsize - | widen + |
| enlarge + | |
| 2. 2. swell | 8. expand / broaden |
| 3. deteriorating | 9. downsize |
| 4. boost | 10. enlarge / expand |
| 5. expands, contracts | 11. widened |
| 6. extended | 12. diminished |
| 7. enlarge | |

Exercise E

- | | | |
|--|---------|--------|
| 1. bottom ↓ | under ↓ | fall ↓ |
| dive ↓ | fly ↑ | rise ↑ |
| 2. 2. c | 5. d | |
| 3. f | 6. a | |
| 4. b | | |
| 3. 2. likely to succeed / promising | | |
| 3. fell suddenly | | |
| 4. improve | | |
| 5. became successful | | |
| 6. in a low position | | |
| 7. person on the way to being successful | | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. e | 7. i |
| 3. a | 8. f |
| 4. k | 9. c |
| 5. j | 10. b |
| 6. d | 11. g |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 2. out | 7. for |
| 3. in | 8. in |
| 4. in / to | 9. of |
| 5. of | 10. in |
| 6. in | 11. of |

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. c | 6. d |
| 3. a | 7. b |
| 4. g | 8. f |
| 5. h | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 18)

Exercise A

2. capable of managing
 3. resigned himself to not / never becoming
 4. fell through over
 5. he couldn't cope with
 6. were made redundant (at / by the factory)
 7. is the most effective way to
 8. cut out for you

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. managerial / management | 6. effective |
| 2. applicants | 7. practical |
| 3. professional | 8. organisational |
| 4. employees | 9. personal |
| 5. recruitment | 10. competitive |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. B |
| 2. C | 8. D |
| 3. B | 9. B |
| 4. C | 10. C |
| 5. A | 11. B |
| 6. D | 12. D |

REVIEW 1 (page 20)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| 1. cut | 9. how |
| 2. are | 10. in |
| 3. to | 11. be |
| 4. work | 12. will |
| 5. by | 13. spend |
| 6. with | 14. have |
| 7. when / once / if | 15. between |
| 8. are | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. successfully | 6. professional |
| 2. financial | 7. stressful |
| 3. occupations | 8. emotionally |
| 4. influential | 9. achievements |
| 5. managerial | 10. competitive |

Exercise C

1. boost
 2. taken
 3. position
 4. rise

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 1. when | 9. been |
| 2. was | 10. were |
| 3. There | 11. this |
| 4. except | 12. for |
| 5. had | 13. never |
| 6. could | 14. being |
| 7. would / could | 15. later |
| 8. him | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 3. c |
| 2. d | 4. d |

UNIT 4 (page 30)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

Types of films / TV programmes: documentary, horror movie, thriller, trailer

People: broadcaster, cast, celebrity, co-star, crew, director, movie buff, presenter, producer, screenwriter, stuntman / woman

Places: backstage, box office, on location, set, stage, studio, venue

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 7. b |
| 2. b | 8. a |
| 3. a | 9. b |
| 4. a | 10. a |
| 5. a | 11. a |
| 6. b | 12. a |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. FORTHCOMING | 4. premiere |
| 2. censorship | 5. debut |
| 3. Auditions | 6. reviews |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 31)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. b. across | f. on |
| c. in for | g. down |
| d. back | h. on |
| e. into | |
| 2. 2. c | 6. d |
| 3. f | 7. g |
| 4. e | 8. a |
| 5. b | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. 1. in | 5. for |
| 2. in | 6. in |
| 3. on | 7. on |
| 4. in | 8. at |
| 2. 2. in conjunction with | 6. In many respects |
| 3. for good | 7. on a larger scale |
| 4. in no time | 8. on the part of |
| 5. at the forefront of | |

Exercise C

-ance / -ence: annoyance, attendance, clearance, existence, ignorance, insistence, interference, offence, (im)patience, pretence
-tion: concentration, dedication, destruction, devotion, distraction, dramatisation, imagination, imitation, inspiration
-ity: clarity, complexity, creativity, credibility, curiosity, generosity, (im)maturity, objectivity, (un)originality, (un)popularity, (in)sensitivity, (dis)similarity, simplicity

- | | |
|---|------|
| 2. 1. a | 4. b |
| 2. c | 5. a |
| 3. d | 6. a |
| 3. 1. inspiration / creativity / originality / imagination / clarity / simplicity | |
| 2. devotion / dedication / concentration | |
| 3. impatience / annoyance | |
| 4. dramatisation / adaptation | |
| 5. attendance | |
| 6. insistence | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. 2. j | 7. b |
| 3. h | 8. c |
| 4. g | 9. e |
| 5. i | 10. a |
| 6. d | |
| 2. A. 1 | C. 10 |
| B. 4 | D. 7 |

Exercise E

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. a. adept | 5. a. focused |
| b. adopt | b. featured |
| c. adapted | c. characterised |
| 2. a. unwind | 6. a. engrossed |
| b. wind | b. appealed |
| c. rewind | c. addicted |
| 3. a. highlight | 7. a. so-called |
| b. limelight | b. renowned |
| c. spotlight | c. alleged |
| 4. a. outright | 8. a. subtitles |
| b. downright | b. ratings |
| c. upright | c. credits |

Exercise F

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---|
| 1. L | L | D |
| D | L | D |
| D | L | L |
| 2. 1. b | 3. c | |
| 2. a | 4. d | |
| 3. 2. no idea | 5. a genius | |
| 3. stupid | 6. intelligent | |
| 4. influence you | | |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. e | 7. k |
| 2. g | 8. i |
| 3. d | 9. a |
| 4. l | 10. c |
| 5. b | 11. j |
| 6. f | 12. h |

Exercise H

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2. playing up | 7. got into |
| 3. puts on | 8. brings in |
| 4. run through | 9. cracks me up |
| 5. come up with | 10. hyped up |
| 6. branch out | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 35)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. adapt | 4. acted |
| 2. bright | 5. light |
| 3. set | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. D |
| 2. A | 8. C |
| 3. A | 9. C |
| 4. C | 10. B |
| 5. B | 11. D |
| 6. A | 12. A |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. following | 6. composition |
| 2. enjoyment | 7. attractive |
| 3. creativity | 8. distracting |
| 4. productions | 9. automatically |
| 5. extraordinary | 10. clarity |

REVIEW 2 (page 37)

Exercise A

1. on a larger scale
2. preparation goes into each scene before
3. based the film on
4. casting an eye over
5. have the faintest idea
6. none of your business
7. to put in long
8. set a date for their

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. most | 9. had |
| 2. ever | 10. order |
| 3. on | 11. those |
| 4. no | 12. was |
| 5. much | 13. across |
| 6. to | 14. who |
| 7. during | 15. anyone |
| 8. in | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 11. c |
| 2. d | 12. a |
| 3. d | 13. d |
| 4. c | 14. d |
| 5. a | 15. b |
| 6. b | 16. c |
| 7. a | 17. b |
| 8. c | 18. a |
| 9. d | 19. c |
| 10. b | 20. b |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. d |
| 2. b | 12. a |
| 3. a | 13. b |
| 4. b | 14. b |
| 5. c | 15. b |
| 6. b | 16. d |
| 7. a | 17. b |
| 8. b | 18. a |
| 9. d | 19. c |
| 10. c | 20. a |

UNIT 5 (page 40)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 7. a |
| 2. a | 8. b |
| 3. a | 9. b |
| 4. b | 10. b |
| 5. a | 11. a |
| 6. a | 12. a |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. had to | 5. had better |
| 2. won't be able to | 6. weren't supposed to |
| 3. used to | 7. didn't have to |
| 4. might as well | 8. ought to |

PRACTICE (page 44)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. might, shouldn't | 4. must, should |
| 2. could, can | 5. can't, would |
| 3. needn't could | 6. could, might |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. c | 6. e |
| 3. g | 7. d |
| 4. h | 8. f |
| 5. a | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. may as well | 5. aren't supposed to |
| 2. can't be | 6. would have been |
| 3. should be | 7. will be able |
| 4. couldn't have | 8. needn't have |

Exercise D

2. I would like to close the window.
3. May I have the salt?
4. Shall I do the washing-up?
5. Won't you have some more soup?
6. I wonder if you could move your seat over there. / Could you move your seat over there, please?

Exercise E

suggested answers

1. He might have put on somebody else's shirt.
He must have brought the wrong size.
2. The painting must have been stolen.
The museum might have lent the painting to another museum.
The painting could be being restored.

3. They must be celebrating a victory.
They might have won a tournament.
They must be feeling very proud of themselves.
4. He must have been shipwrecked.
His ship might have been sunk in a storm.
He could be taking part in a reality show like “Survivor”.
5. She must have been very naughty.
She might have been rude to her teacher.
She can't be feeling very happy.

Exercise F

suggested answers

1. They must have been amazed and very excited.
2. There could have been a mechanical problem or a computer error.
3. People must have told their friends immediately.
4. I don't think I would have. I might have thought about taking some money, but I wouldn't have done it.
5. No, they shouldn't have. They should have known it was stealing.
6. No, I think they should have just been forced to give back the money.
7. You are supposed to take it to the police station, but most people wouldn't.

EXAM PRACTICE (page 46)

Exercise A

1. is supposed to come
2. I ought not to have laughed
3. may / might be able to
4. must have finished
5. is doubtful the bank would lend
6. had better deal
7. might be putting / might decide to put
8. in case you should be

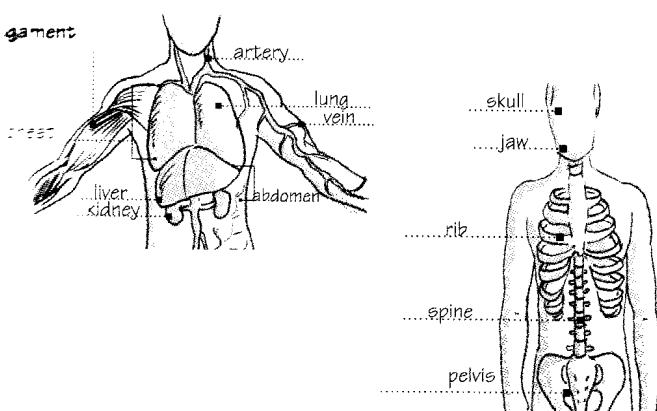
Exercise B

1. become
2. could / might
3. were
4. had
5. Their / The
6. when / if
7. must
8. should
9. than
10. need
11. to
12. are
13. able
14. of
15. have

UNIT 6 (page 47)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A



Exercise B

1. sling
2. stitches
3. stretcher
4. bruise
5. fracture

Exercise C

1. consult
2. vaccination
3. contagious
4. prescription
5. hygiene
6. dehydration

Exercise D

1. 1. Acupuncture
2. Chiropractic
3. Homeopathy
4. Reflexology
5. Yoga
2. 1. homeopathy
2. acupuncture
3. homeopathy
4. acupuncture
5. chiropractic, reflexology
6. chiropractic, reflexology
7. yoga

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 48)

Exercise A

1. 2. suffer
3. refer
4. confess
5. benefit
6. fail
7. respond
8. sympathise
2. 2. confide
3. associate
4. opted
5. reminds
6. derived
7. boasting / dreaming
8. react

Exercise B

1. cross - A
furious - A
overjoyed - H
cheerful - H
glad - H
displeased - A
upset - A / S
dejected - S
inconsolable - S
depressed - S
delighted - H
2. miserable - S
thrilled - H
ecstatic - H
despondent - S
irritated - A
apprehensive - F
incensed - A
terrified - F
petrified - F
scared - F

2. suggested answers

2. I'd be ecstatic because I could fulfil all my dreams.
3. I'd be upset, but I'd try not to get depressed as it's only money!
4. I'd be petrified because I'm scared of heights!
5. I'd be furious because she / he would have betrayed our friendship.

Exercise C

1. a. ancestors
b. predecessors
c. descendants
5. a. recall
b. remind
c. retain
2. a. perceived
b. conceive
c. achieve
6. a. imaginary
b. fantastic
c. imaginative
3. a. affects
b. effects
c. infect
7. a. sceptical
b. thoughtful
c. conscious
4. a. conduct
b. object
c. subjected
8. a. attitude
b. conscience
c. intuition

Exercise D

1. **in-**: inadequate, incapable, inconsistent, indecisive, indiscreet, ineffective, infallible, inflexible, insecure, insensitive, insufficient
 2. **im**: immature, immoral, immortal, impatient, imperfect, impolite, impossible, impractical, imprecise
 3. **un**: unaware, unconscious, unfaithful, unfamiliar, unintentional, unjustified, unlikely, unnatural, unscientific, unusual
 4. **dis**: disloyal, disobedient, dissimilar
- | | |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| 2. 2. unaware | 7. disobedient |
| 3. unlikely | 8. insensitive |
| 4. insecure | 9. unconscious / unintentional |
| 5. impatient | 10. infallible |
| 6. incapable | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 2. deeply | 6. fully |
| 3. bitterly | 7. utterly |
| 4. perfectly | 8. downright |
| 5. highly | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 1. sting - | stab - |
| recover + | scar - |
| cure + | kick - |
| ailing - | painful - |
| 2. 2. wounded my pride | 8. rub salt in the wound |
| 3. recovery | 9. stung |
| 4. scarred | 10. kick |
| 5. ailing | 11. cure |
| 6. stabbed | 12. healthy |
| 7. pains | |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. I – in a sense | 8. d – wouldn’t mind |
| 3. h – late in life | 9. f – time of my life |
| 4. b – bear it in mind | 10. a – sense of direction |
| 5. c – makes sense | 11. i – life |
| 6. g – sense | 12. e – mind |
| 7. k – life expectancy | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. h | 6. a |
| 3. f | 7. e |
| 4. d | 8. g |
| 5. c | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 52)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. C |
| 2. B | 8. D |
| 3. C | 9. A |
| 4. B | 10. C |
| 5. A | 11. D |
| 6. D | 12. A |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. recently | 6. insufficient |
| 2. expectancy | 7. greatly |
| 3. unscientific | 8. connection |
| 4. criticised | 9. distractions |
| 5. imprecise | 10. increasingly |

REVIEW 3 (page 53)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. while | 9. in |
| 2. would | 10. on |
| 3. one | 11. about |
| 4. past / last | 12. how |
| 5. been | 13. since |
| 6. have | 14. from |
| 7. to | 15. be |
| 8. able | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. stung | 4. hand |
| 2. healthy | 5. fully |
| 3. blame | 6. sense |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 11. d |
| 2. a | 12. a |
| 3. d | 13. c |
| 4. c | 14. b |
| 5. b | 15. a |
| 6. c | 16. c |
| 7. a | 17. a |
| 8. b | 18. c |
| 9. c | 19. d |
| 10. d | 20. b |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 11. c |
| 2. c | 12. c |
| 3. b | 13. a |
| 4. c | 14. b |
| 5. a | 15. b |
| 6. a | 16. b |
| 7. c | 17. c |
| 8. b | 18. a |
| 9. a | 19. c |
| 10. b | 20. b |

UNIT 7 (page 56)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. sitting | 8. to take |
| 2. live | 9. to work |
| 3. to clean | 10. playing |
| 4. putting | 11. to become |
| 5. waiting | 12. being built |
| 6. to run | 13. having |
| 7. to eat | 14. hand |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. b |
| 2. a | 5. b |
| 3. a | 6. b |

PRACTICE (page 59)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 2. to enter | 7. lend |
| 3. to have | 8. to offend |
| 4. to speak | 9. breaking |
| 5. to discover | 10. to buy |
| 6. reading | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 2. to be held | 6. to have been given |
| 3. spending / having spent | 7. confide |
| 4. to have spoken | 8. being taken |
| 5. being invited | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. mind, offer | |
| 2. demanded, made | |
| 3. persuaded, threatened | |
| 4. dare, fancy | |
| 5. considered, hesitate | |
| 6. recommended, encouraged | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------|---------|
| 2. no | 6. need |
| 3. only | 7. are |
| 4. have | 8. as |
| 5. being | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 2. achieving | 7. to contact |
| 3. to say | 8. attending |
| 4. to offer | 9. to be given |
| 5. to accept | 10. welcoming |
| 6. filling in | |

TEXT FEATURES (page 60)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| 2. appreciated, feedback | 6. deceive |
| 3. career, achievement | 7. courteous |
| 4. restaurant | 8. perceive |
| 5. interview | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Monday, national, Britain | |
| 2. Professor, Russia | |
| 3. Even, Harry Potter | |
| 4. Time, <i>Lord of the Rings</i> | |
| 5. heart disease | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1. 1. they – scientists | |
| 2. This – changed behaviour | |
| 3. In some cases – of behaviour change | |
| 4. these – reduced mobility, etc. | |
| 5. The findings – scientists' findings about ageing in animals | |
| 6. the project – research on military dogs | |
| 2. 2. the others | 6. this |
| 3. the dogs | 7. in this case |
| 4. Two | 8. this research |
| 5. one | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 62)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. didn't feel like going | |
| 2. don't hesitate to ask | |
| 3. needs finishing / to be finished before | |
| 4. no point (in) arguing about | |
| 5. not capable of memorising | |
| 6. clearly enough to be able | |
| 7. had better not have broken | |
| 8. went on to give us | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 5. c |
| 2. b | 6. d |
| 3. a | 7. b |
| 4. d | 8. a |

UNIT 8 (page 63)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

Todd 4; Doris 3; Beth 1; Simon 2

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Beth | 5. Doris |
| 2. Beth | 6. Doris |
| 3. Todd | 7. Simon |
| 4. Simon | 8. Todd |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 5. a |
| 2. b | 6. a |
| 3. a | 7. b |
| 4. b | 8. b |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 64)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 2. season | 4. trip |
| 3. operator | 5. board |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. washout | 6. outset |
| 2. mix-up | 7. getaway |
| 3. stopover | 8. check-in |
| 4. pile-up | 9. touchdown |
| 5. let-up | 10. letdown |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 2. flock | |
| 3. herd | |
| 4. pack | |
| 2. 1. large group of people | 4. in large numbers |
| 2. large number | 5. do as everyone else |
| 3. went in big numbers | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 2. wide | 7. pieces |
| 3. back | 8. sound |
| 4. about | 9. large |
| 5. cons | 10. again |
| 6. buts | |
| 2. 1. safe and sound | 5. bits and pieces |
| 2. out and about | 6. by and large |
| 3. far and wide | 7. now and again |
| 4. round and round | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 2. multilingual | |
| 3. overcook, undercook | |
| 4. multistorey | |
| 5. overbooked | |
| 6. outnumber | |
| 7. multipurpose | |
| 8. overstay / outstay | |
| 9. outsmart | |
| 10. overcharges, undercharges | |
| 11. understaffed, overstaffed | |
| 12. underestimate, overestimate | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. 1. private | 4. exotic |
| 2. unspoilt | 5. traditional |
| 3. remote | 6. rough |
| 2. 1. private bathrooms | 5. Private property |
| 2. rough sea | 6. exotic flowers |
| 3. remote village | 7. unspoilt countryside |
| 4. rough terrain | 8. traditional recipe |

Exercise G

possible answers

1. Liz steered the conversation towards her travels.
Liz brought the conversation round to her travels.
2. Ron often wanders off the topic.
Ron often goes off track.
3. I couldn't follow her train of thought.
I wondered what she was getting at.
4. The conversation took an unexpected turn.
The conversation moved in an unexpected direction.

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. i | 7. b |
| 3. a | 8. j |
| 4. h | 9. d |
| 5. c | 10. g |
| 6. e | |

Exercise I

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. e | 7. h |
| 3. i | 8. a |
| 4. c | 9. d |
| 5. f | 10. g |
| 6. b | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 68)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. B |
| 2. A | 8. C |
| 3. D | 9. A |
| 4. B | 10. C |
| 5. C | 11. B |
| 6. D | 12. B |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. operators | 6. unspoilt |
| 2. specially | 7. flung |
| 3. beaten | 8. travellers |
| 4. broaden | 9. inclusive |
| 5. fascinated | 10. competitive |

REVIEW 4 (page 69)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. either | 9. up |
| 2. being | 10. is |
| 3. of | 11. To |
| 4. spend | 12. in |
| 5. little / nothing | 13. little / less |
| 6. have | 14. out |
| 7. taking | 15. for |
| 8. that / which | |

Exercise B

1. landed a job
2. the pros and cons
3. left nothing to chance
4. outnumber male (members of) staff two
5. at the outset of their trek
6. check the equipment prior to
7. to make cutbacks
8. rub salt in the wound

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 11. c |
| 2. b | 12. a |
| 3. d | 13. d |
| 4. c | 14. c |
| 5. a | 15. d |
| 6. b | 16. b |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. d | 18. b |
| 9. a | 19. c |
| 10. d | 20. d |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. b |
| 2. a | 12. b |
| 3. b | 13. b |
| 4. a | 14. c |
| 5. c | 15. c |
| 6. b | 16. c |
| 7. a | 17. a |
| 8. c | 18. c |
| 9. d | 19. b |
| 10. a | 20. b |

UNIT 9 (page 72)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 9. b |
| 2. b | 10. b |
| 3. a | 11. a |
| 4. a | 12. a |
| 5. b | 13. b |
| 6. a | 14. a |
| 7. b | 15. b |
| 8. a | |

Exercise B

1. get the roof mended
2. had her teeth cleaned
3. have you dancing
4. had her purse stolen
5. is having his eyes tested

PRACTICE (page 75)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 2. to be given | 9. be changed |
| 3. being made | 10. being sent |
| 4. has been achieved | 11. won't have been installed |
| 5. is not approved | 12. was composed |
| 6. be offended | |
| 7. will be succeeded | |
| 8. is / was / has been estimated | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 2. was erected | 7. was pulled down |
| 3. was designed | 8. was made |
| 4. be raised | 9. was slowed down |
| 5. is prevented | 10. to be held |
| 6. be purchased | |

Exercise C

2. *cannot be made passive*
3. The new Jim Carrey movie has been seriously underrated (by critics).
4. A new vaccine is thought to be able to prevent AIDS. / It is thought that a new vaccine could prevent AIDS.
5. The costume will need to be altered so that it fits him.
6. All tour participants will be provided with a detailed itinerary free of charge.
7. *cannot be made passive*
8. We were furious that we were made / at being made to wait in the airport lounge all night.
9. Antibiotics are generally prescribed for chest infections.
10. A sequel was being planned (by the studio) but it was never made because of budget issues.

Exercise D

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. get a firm to do | 5. had anyone tell |
| 2. had it coming | 6. had us doing |
| 3. get it all done | 7. had it stolen |
| 4. have them going | 8. have somebody send |

Exercise E

2. I
F – should not be left in direct sunlight
3. F
I – say there are rare birds in that forest
4. I
F – is felt that the design is old-fashioned
5. F
I – council's decision made me angry
6. I
F – not to be given any details of the project
7. F
I – didn't Annie get chosen for the team
8. I
F – should be / is / can be cleaned with a small brush

EXAM PRACTICE (page 77)

Exercise A

1. had Joe look the word
2. will be / are completed ahead of
3. to be no reason to tell / inform
4. of having their wedding organised by
5. had been under close observation
6. have been planning to book
7. never get this work done
8. is going to have something

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. has | 9. far |
| 2. being / now | 10. in |
| 3. to | 11. could |
| 4. from | 12. earlier |
| 5. not | 13. however |
| 6. Instead | 14. without |
| 7. by | 15. being |
| 8. these | |

UNIT 10 (page 78)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 2. weed | 7. twig |
| 3. trunk | 8. bud |
| 4. bark | 9. blossom |
| 5. branch | 10. bush |
| 6. stalk | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. Insects | 4. Amphibians |
| 2. Reptiles | 5. Birds |
| 3. Mammals | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. reptiles | 6. amphibians |
| 2. mammals, birds | 7. amphibians |
| 3. insects | 8. amphibians |
| 4. reptiles | 9. birds, reptiles |
| 5. amphibians | 10. birds |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 79)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1. to | 9. of |
| 2. of | 10. for |
| 3. of | 11. on |
| 4. to | 12. of |
| 5. to | 13. on |
| 6. in | 14. of |
| 7. with | 15. in, in |
| 8. on | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. 1. advocate – G | consent – G |
| 2. approve – G | endorse – G |
| 3. ban – R | permit – G |
| 4. bar – R | protest – R |
| 5. condemn – R | |
| 2. 2. ban | 7. protest |
| 3. endorsing | 8. condemned |
| 4. consent | 9. permit |
| 5. advocated | 10. abolish |
| 6. barred | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 2. puppy, bark | 6. chick, chirp |
| 3. calf, moo | 7. tadpole, croak |
| 4. cub, howl | 8. kid, bleat |
| 5. lamb, bleat | 9. foal, neigh |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. capture | 5. a. natural |
| b. capsize | b. physical |
| c. captivated | c. genuine |
| 2. a. conserve | 6. a. extinction |
| b. preserve | b. evolution |
| c. observed | c. extermination |
| 3. a. immigration | 7. a. poachers |
| b. Emigration | b. prey |
| c. migration | c. predators |
| 4. a. domestic | 8. a. evolved |
| b. docile | b. involved |
| c. tame | c. revolve |

Exercise E

Exercise F

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. deep-rooted | 5. left no stone unturned |
| 2. stems from | 6. cultivates |
| 3. field | 7. flourished |
| 4. digging around | 8. fertile |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. i | 6. c |
| 3. a | 7. d |
| 4. f | 8. e |
| 5. q | 9. b |

Exercise H

1. eradicate
 2. withdraw from
 3. exhausted
 4. cause a rival to feel nervous
 5. stopped participating
 6. praised
 7. expires
 8. continue to be enough
 9. exercising intensively
 10. become exhausted and ill

Exercise 1

- | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|
| 2. | e | 6. | h |
| 3. | b | 7. | f |
| 4. | i | 8. | c |
| 5. | a | 9. | g |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 82)

Exercise A

1. has branched out into (singing)
 2. has been a decline in
 3. her phobia stems from
 4. to protest against
 5. leave no stone unturned
 6. will be barred from (sitting)
 7. incensed by Jeffrey's insensitivity
 8. is of the utmost importance
 9. the expression of concern on
 10. were captivated by Gary's description
 11. has a habit of leaving
 12. have an aversion to putting

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 7. B |
| 2. A | 8. C |
| 3. D | 9. D |
| 4. A | 10. B |
| 5. D | 11. C |
| 6. A | 12. A |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. seed | 4. lay |
| 2. fertile | 5. demand |
| 3. bark | |

REVIEW 5 (page 84)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. be | 9. not |
| 2. to | 10. As |
| 3. have | 11. life |
| 4. them | 12. than |
| 5. are | 13. on |
| 6. the | 14. least |
| 7. get | 15. in |
| 8. kept | |

Exercise B

1. have people staring at them
 2. was thought to be no other
 3. was coated with sand as a
 4. have access to the contents
 5. had everyone in the audience singing

Exercise C

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. naturalist | 6. motherless |
| 2. significance | 7. captivity |
| 3. employment | 8. estimated |
| 4. tragic | 9. survival |
| 5. merciless | 10. discouraging |

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. d |
| 2. c | 12. b |
| 3. b | 13. c |
| 4. d | 14. a |
| 5. a | 15. b |
| 6. d | 16. c |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. a | 18. b |
| 9. d | 19. d |
| 0. b | 20. c |

Exercise E

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. b |
| 2. b | 12. b |
| 3. d | 13. b |
| 4. a | 14. a |
| 5. d | 15. d |
| 6. b | 16. a |
| 7. c | 17. b |
| 8. a | 18. d |
| 9. a | 19. c |
| 10. d | 20. a |

UNIT 11 (page 87)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 8. b |
| 2. b | 9. c |
| 3. a | 10. b |
| 4. c | 11. b |
| 5. d | 12. c |
| 6. a | 13. b |
| 7. d | 14. a |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. b |
| 2. a | 5. a |
| 3. a | 6. b |

PRACTICE (page 90)

Exercise A

2. Fiona said that those plants had to be kept somewhere sunny.
3. The personal assistant told Mrs Green (that) she had booked her an appointment for the next day.
4. The nurse told David that he mustn't get out of bed until the following morning.
5. she was really looking forward to her holiday.
6. he would be able to help me later that night
7. he would rather they didn't sign the contract
8. that the plane would be landing in half an hour

Exercise B

2. him if he was looking for work and he replied that he was.
3. Miss Harrison when she had first noticed those symptoms.
4. what time Mary was expecting the guests to arrive.
5. him to eat more fresh fruit.
6. that she ought to / should apply herself more.
7. me / us not to say anything about the party to John.
8. that he should donate the money to charity.

Exercise C

2. Dan reassured me that he would take care of my cat while I was away.
3. Helen urged me to send them my CV.
4. Mum suggested going on a cruise that year.
5. Debbie said that the plan was fine but pointed out that they had overspent their budget.
6. Anita refused to proofread a 500-page document for nothing.
7. The manager threatened to dismiss Sam if he didn't improve his attitude.
8. Jackie estimated that it would take them about a week to clear out the property.

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 2. pay | 5. be admitted |
| 3. be taken | 6. be granted |
| 4. be reopened | 7. keep |

Exercise E

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 2. refused | |
| 3. suggested | |
| 4. reassured | |
| 5. wondered | |
| 6. explained | |
| 7. warned | |
| 8. instructed / ordered / asked | |

Exercise F

1. 1. to hold – holding
getting – get
are they – they were
helping – to help
do you – you
2. 2. to
3. advised us to contact
4. that – if / whether
5. talking – talk

Exercise G

suggested answers

1. b. advised against installing more software.
2. a. implied that the performance was disappointing.
b. described the lead actor as magnificent.
3. a. explained that an allergy caused my sneezing.
b. said (that) taking medication would reduce the symptoms.
4. a. recommended we sit down / sitting down as a family to discuss the matter.
b. asked if we had talked / that we talk about the incident.

TEXT FEATURES (page 92)

Exercise A

1. whistling
2. length, climb
3. descendant, knight
4. science, laboratory, Wednesday
5. designer, height
6. several, neighbours, lights

Exercise B

sang,
all my life”
Liverpool,
is the city with
London has its
for *A Hard Day's Night*
guide
memory lane to sixties London.

Exercise C

1. 1. the experience – building shelters
2. kind of adventure – volunteering in remote areas
3. the only issue – environment

- | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| 2. 1. There | 5. tasks |
| 2. thinking | 6. the night before |
| 3. poncho | 7. the following morning |
| 4. garments | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 94)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. wonder | 9. had |
| 2. would | 10. a |
| 3. came | 11. out |
| 4. whether / if | 12. suggested |
| 5. were | 13. make |
| 6. no | 14. too |
| 7. and | 15. copying |
| 8. asked | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 5. d |
| 2. b | 6. d |
| 3. a | 7. d |
| 4. c | 8. b |

UNIT 12 (page 95)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. i | 7. j |
| 3. h | 8. k |
| 4. a | 9. g |
| 5. b | 10. f |
| 6. c | 11. d |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 2. vowels | 7. jargon |
| 3. consonants | 8. quotation |
| 4. slang | 9. slogan |
| 5. poetry, verse | 10. rumour |
| 6. anecdote | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. dissertation | 5. concisely |
| 2. posted online | 6. footnotes |
| 3. browse | 7. proofread |
| 4. outline | 8. manuscript |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 96)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 1. disclose | 5. return the, pay a |
| 2. tell, crack | 6. honour, break |
| 3. strike up, dominate | 7. voice, air |
| 4. voice, come in for | |
| 2. 1. disclose information | 3. honour a promise |
| 2. voice his opinion | 4. return the compliment |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. 2. j | 7. e |
| 3. b | 8. g |
| 4. f | 9. d |
| 5. c | 10. i |
| 6. a | |
| 2. 2. a | 4. e |
| 3. d | 5. b |
| 3. 1. hand-me-downs | 4. come-down |
| 2. downpour | 5. breakdown |
| 3. crackdown | |

Exercise C

1. **en-**: enact, enclose, encode, encourage, endanger, enforce, enlarge, enlighten, enrich, enslave, ensure, entrust
-en: brighten, broaden, darken, deaden, deepen, fasten, harden, lengthen, lighten, soften, strengthen, sweeten, thicken, tighten, toughen, weaken, widen, worsen

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 2. 2. tightened | 7. worsened |
| 3. thicken | 8. enclose |
| 4. broaden, deepen | 9. enforced |
| 5. widen | 10. encoded |
| 6. strengthened | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. résumé | 5. a. literary |
| b. biography | b. literate |
| c. summary | c. literal |
| 2. a. supplement | 6. a. subscription |
| b. compliment | b. prescription |
| c. complement | c. inscription |
| 3. a. acquire | 7. a. content |
| b. inquired | b. context |
| c. requires | c. consent |
| 4. a. explicit | |
| b. implicit | |
| c. illicit | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. antique – O | outmoded – O |
| archaic – O | out-of-date – O |
| contemporary – N | over the hill – O |
| innovative – N | primitive – O |
| juvenile – N | recent – N |
| latest – N | state-of-the-art – N |
| mature – O | up-to-date N |
| novel – N | veteran – O |
| novice – N | vintage – O |
| obsolete – O | |
| 2. archaic, obsolete, outmoded, out-of-date, over the hill
(also possible: juvenile, primitive) | |
| 3. 1. B | 5. B |
| 2. A | 6. A |
| 3. B | 7. A |
| 4. C | 8. D |

Exercise F

1. understand everything she says / secret reason for doing something, find extra meaning for her behaviour
2. decide it wasn't possible, explain in detail / was clear from his expression
3. emphasised / understanding what is meant but not said openly, a person who understands what someone else means or is thinking

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. a | 7. b |
| 3. f | 8. h |
| 4. g | 9. i |
| 5. c | 10. e |
| 6. j | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. e | 7. b |
| 3. h | 8. d |
| 4. f | 9. a |
| 5. g | 10. c |
| 6. j | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 100)

Exercise A

- is in his teacher's good books
- came in for criticism
- ruled out the possibility of
- having a word with
- was asked to stand down
- has a good command of

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. D |
| 2. D | 8. A |
| 3. B | 9. C |
| 4. D | 10. C |
| 5. A | 11. A |
| 6. A | 12. B |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. linguists | 6. speech |
| 2. significance | 7. characteristic |
| 3. choice | 8. weaken |
| 4. pronunciation | 9. controversial |
| 5. impossible | 10. encourage |

REVIEW 6 (page 102)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. that | 9. against |
| 2. in | 10. without |
| 3. of | 11. with |
| 4. been | 12. enable |
| 5. Their | 13. let |
| 6. what | 14. to |
| 7. it | 15. no |
| 8. be | |

Exercise B

- conversation
- mind
- issue
- read
- laid
- come

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. c |
| 2. a | 12. b |
| 3. c | 13. a |
| 4. a | 14. c |
| 5. b | 15. d |
| 6. d | 16. b |
| 7. b | 17. a |
| 8. c | 18. d |
| 9. d | 19. d |
| 10. c | 20. b |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 11. d |
| 2. d | 12. a |
| 3. d | 13. b |
| 4. d | 14. b |
| 5. b | 15. b |
| 6. a | 16. a |
| 7. c | 17. c |
| 8. b | 18. b |
| 9. b | 19. b |
| 10. c | 20. a |

UNIT 13 (page 105)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. c | 7. a |
| 2. a | 8. b |
| 3. b | 9. a |
| 4. a | 10. a |
| 5. c | 11. b |
| 6. b | 12. b |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. d | 5. a |
| 2. h | 6. e |
| 3. g | 7. c |
| 4. f | 8. b |

PRACTICE (page 108)

Exercise A

- wouldn't have recognised
- didn't work
- wouldn't have
- doesn't erupt
- will have
- wouldn't be going
- would seem
- would have guessed
- would have missed
- don't stop

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. c | 5. f |
| 3. b | 6. a |
| 4. e | |

Exercise C

- hadn't invested her money at the right time, she wouldn't be making a fortune now
- wasn't / weren't still ill, he would already have sent the invitations
- wasn't / weren't clever, she wouldn't have solved the puzzle so quickly
- be married to Peter if I hadn't been standing at that bus stop

Exercise D

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 2. But for | 7. were to |
| 3. If not | 8. happen to |
| 4. in case | 9. If correct |
| 5. were not for | 10. Otherwise |
| 6. provided that | |

Exercise E

- the wound become infected, you'll need to take antibiotics.
- I to be chosen as team captain, I'd do my best to get everyone training together.
- I applied for the scholarship, I might have got it.
- the government to reduce taxes on small businesses, unemployment would be reduced.
- you (happen to) see Jenny, please give her my regards.
- we not tried to fix the machinery ourselves, the repairs would have cost less.

Exercise F

- long as our expenses are paid, we will be willing to take part in the conference.
willing to take part in the conference if our expenses aren't paid.
- able to finish sooner if you had helped me
you helped me, I could have finished sooner.
- Tracy stops eating junk food, she can't expect to have clear skin.
eats junk food, she can't expect to have clear skin.
- you ever get the chance to come to Greece, you can stay with us.
to come to Greece, you can stay with us.
- you were offered freelance work, would you take it?
to be offered freelance work, would you take it?
- hadn't been for the driver's quick reaction, there would have been a tragedy.
for the driver's quick reaction, there would have been a tragedy.

EXAM PRACTICE (page 110)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. more | 9. by |
| 2. It | 10. their |
| 3. how | 11. anything |
| 4. take | 12. be |
| 5. if / when | 13. even |
| 6. been | 14. yet |
| 7. on | 15. ourselves |
| 8. longer | |

Exercise B

- if there were / was a decline
- in case of bad
- give me your word that
- it not been for your support
- had been more demand for
- to make a complaint about
- on condition (that) she agrees
- wouldn't have run out of

UNIT 14 (page 111)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. radiator | 5. shed |
| 2. bedsit | 6. hedge |
| 3. fence | 7. shutters |
| 4. lawn | 8. corridor |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 2. (real) estate | 5. community |
| 3. detached | 6. housing |
| 4. commuter | 7. interior |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. g | 6. e |
| 3. f | 7. d |
| 4. a | 8. b |
| 5. c | |

Exercise D

- traffic problems
- outer walls
- bad condition because of neglect
- buildings used as shops
- system and structures
- road going around the edge of a town
- carrying out a plan
- money paid by authorities as part of the cost
- owner of a property that is rented
- repair and improve

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 112)

Exercise A

- dom:** boredom, freedom, kingdom, martyrdom, stardom
-ship: championship, citizenship, companionship, dictatorship, friendship, kingship, leadership, membership, ownership, readership, relationship, scholarship, sponsorship
-hood: brotherhood, childhood, fatherhood, manhood, motherhood, neighbourhood, parenthood, sainthood, sisterhood

2. suggested answers

- companionship / friendship
- childhood
- motherhood / stardom
- a scholarship / sponsorship
- a kingdom / a dictatorship

Exercise B

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. outskirts | 5. a. inherited |
| b. districts | b. inhibited |
| c. suburbs | c. inhabited |
| 2. a. border | 6. a. preferable |
| b. boundary | b. preferential |
| c. barrier | c. preferred |
| 3. a. outdoor | 7. a. socialise |
| b. outward | b. popularise |
| c. exterior | c. civilising |
| 4. a. housekeeping | 8. a. totally |
| b. household | b. greatly |
| c. housewarming | c. generally |

Exercise C

- openings
- get your foot in the door
- on the threshold of
- came up against a brick wall
- unlocked
- opportunity knocks
- corridors of power
- the key to

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. e | 7. f |
| 3. h | 8. j |
| 4. a | 9. i |
| 5. d | 10. b |
| 6. c | |

6. must be taken into account
7. is the key to
8. an impressive command of / impressed everyone with his command of
9. looks out of place
10. odds are that you will

Exercise E

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. marble | 4. earthenware |
| 2. bronze | 5. brick |
| 3. concrete | 6. steel |

Exercise F

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 2. for | 8. out |
| 3. in | 9. at |
| 4. into | 10. in |
| 5. in | 11. within |
| 6. to | 12. in |
| 7. at | 13. of |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. c | 7. d |
| 3. a | 8. c |
| 4. b | 9. c |
| 5. b | 10. d |
| 6. a | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 115)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. C |
| 2. C | 8. D |
| 3. B | 9. B |
| 4. D | 10. B |
| 5. B | 11. A |
| 6. A | 12. B |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. civilisation | 6. dwelling |
| 2. ownership | 7. central |
| 3. inhabitants | 8. socialising |
| 4. household | 9. privacy |
| 5. security | 10. normally |

REVIEW 7 (page 116)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. so | 9. had |
| 2. on | 10. to |
| 3. long | 11. Had |
| 4. in | 12. have |
| 5. on / for | 13. them |
| 6. before / until | 14. through |
| 7. chance | 15. then |
| 8. are | |

Exercise B

1. been for its convenient location
2. to worsen, would they call
3. hadn't been built, it would
4. me to have my eyes examined
5. selling the property was out of

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 11. c |
| 2. c | 12. b |
| 3. b | 13. a |
| 4. a | 14. a |
| 5. c | 15. d |
| 6. d | 16. b |
| 7. b | 17. c |
| 8. c | 18. b |
| 9. b | 19. a |
| 10. a | 20. d |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. b |
| 2. c | 12. a |
| 3. c | 13. c |
| 4. a | 14. a |
| 5. a | 15. c |
| 6. b | 16. a |
| 7. c | 17. b |
| 8. a | 18. d |
| 9. b | 19. a |
| 10. c | 20. b |

UNIT 15 (page 119)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. wish | 8. were |
| 2. you would pay | 9. could |
| 3. was taking | 10. didn't |
| 4. had let us | 11. not to have spent |
| 5. had spent | 12. than |
| 6. didn't | 13. to see |
| 7. was done | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. a, b | 5. a, b |
| 2. b, a | 6. b, a |
| 3. a, b | 7. a, b |
| 4. a, b | |

PRACTICE (page 121)

Exercise A

suggested answers

1. could have made
2. looked out
3. hadn't given up
4. wouldn't get
5. wasn't / weren't being knocked down
6. could just pack
7. would brighten up
8. had booked

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. would rather | 5. wish |
| 2. as though | 6. high time |
| 3. hope | 7. would prefer |
| 4. time for | 8. wish to |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. weren't going | 6. could throw |
| 2. stay | 7. sprain |
| 3. hadn't been / gone | 8. gave up |
| 4. had brought | 9. were |
| 5. were emigrating | 10. had gone through |

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. d | 6. a |
| 2. b | 7. d |
| 3. a | 8. b |
| 4. a | 9. c |
| 5. c | 10. a |

Exercise E

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. high | 6. would |
| 2. would | 7. only |
| 3. had | 8. Imagine / Suppose / Supposing |
| 4. looks / looked | 9. not |
| 5. hope | 10. could |

TEXT FEATURES (page 123)

Exercise A

1. gynaecologist, anaesthetic
2. autobiography, archives
3. hygiene
4. rhythm
5. Aerobic, physical
6. sympathy, monarch
7. cynical
8. cholesterol, chronic

Exercise B

- “Le Parkour”
 (the obstacle course)
 (for example, handstands and spins)
 “doing the roof”
 “using the environment to express movement ... like a dance”
 “Spider-Man”

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1. 1. do so | 4. Such |
| 2. had | 5. did |
| 3. does so | 6. Such |
| 2. 1. b | 4. b |
| 2. a | 5. b |
| 3. a | 6. a |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 125)

Exercise A

1. he lived within reach of
2. it if Debbie took over
3. rather / sooner have made a reservation
4. had not been issued with
5. the building had not been pulled / torn / knocked
6. time they / we found a solution to
7. behaving / acting as though she were a
8. did not make changes in

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. wish / want | 9. on / doing |
| 2. working | 10. those / women |
| 3. would | 11. it |
| 4. fit | 12. kind |
| 5. out | 13. as / since / because |
| 6. time | 14. is |
| 7. was | 15. than |
| 8. did | |

UNIT 16 (page 126)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

2. hardware
3. substances
4. living organisms
5. working with computer programs
6. laboratory equipment
7. machinery

Exercise B

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. surveillance | 5. patent |
| 2. compound | 6. virtual reality |
| 3. hacking | 7. cyberspace |
| 4. emission | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. cell | 6. defective |
| 2. modify | 7. procedure |
| 3. artificial | 8. tamper |
| 4. hormone | 9. ethics |
| 5. vaccine | |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 127)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 2. a change | 5. improvements |
| 3. a mistake | 6. encouragement |
| 4. access | 7. an arrangement |

Exercise B

1. phase – gradually stop using
2. figure – be able to understand
3. taken – get something officially
4. gives – produces
5. sort – organise
6. singled – chose
7. try – test
8. filter – remove

Exercise C

1. 1. gaze
2. make out
3. glimpse
4. witness
2. 1. glanced
2. noticed
3. observe
4. overseen
3. 1. view
2. peer
3. stared
4. envisage

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. a. compromise | 4. a. advance |
| b. comprise | b. evolution |
| c. compiled | c. progress |
| 2. a. transformed | 5. a. typical |
| b. transferred | b. common |
| c. transplanted | c. ordinary |
| 3. a. discovered | 6. a. insert |
| b. invented | b. injecting |
| c. exploring | c. installed |

Exercise E

- 1. **-or:** animator, competitor, creator, curator, inventor, operator, supervisor, survivor, translator
 - ian:** beautician, comedian, electrician, historian, magician, politician, technician, vegetarian
 - er:** campaigner, consumer, explorer, hacker, lawyer, manufacturer, owner, researcher
 - ist:** activist, artist, biologist, dramatist, economist, environmentalist, geneticist, scientist, specialist, vocalist
 - 2. 1. actor, animator, artist, comedian, curator, dramatist, magician, vocalist
2. activist, campaigner, lawyer, politician
3. economist, lawyer, specialist, supervisor
 - 3. 2. accountant
3. representative
4. mechanic
5. spokesperson
6. dependent
7. detective
8. chairperson

Exercise F

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. | 1. clockwork | 5. hammer |
| | 2. spanner | 6. wheel |
| | 3. button | 7. screw |
| | 4. gear | |
| 2. | 2. a | 5. b |
| | 3. f | 6. c |
| | 4. e | |
| 3. | 1. hammer home | |
| | 2. throw a spanner in the works | |
| | 3. get into gear | |
| | 4. tools of the trade | |
| | 5. tighten the screws on | |
| | 6. run like clockwork | |

Exercise G

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 2. web | 7. monitor |
| 3. screens | 8. screen |
| 4. monitor | 9. monitoring |
| 5. web | 10. web |
| 6. screened | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 5. a |
| 2. a | 6. b |
| 3. b | 7. a |
| 4. b | 8. a |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 130)

Exercise A

1. has to be screened for
 2. ran like clockwork
 3. will have to reach a compromise
 4. singled out as (being)
 5. is typical of Jack to
 6. is comprised of

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 7. B |
| 2. B | 8. D |
| 3. D | 9. B |
| 4. B | 10. C |
| 5. A | 11. A |
| 6. C | 12. B |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. controversial | 6. installed |
| 2. permission | 7. movements |
| 3. campaigners | 8. tightened |
| 4. privacy | 9. criminals |
| 5. surveillance | 10. occasionally |

REVIEW 8 (page 132)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. make | 4. common |
| 2. time | 5. screen |
| 3. taken | 6. raise |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. only | 9. has |
| 2. who | 10. to |
| 3. had | 11. take |
| 4. For | 12. will |
| 5. by | 13. can |
| 6. out | 14. it |
| 7. this | 15. make |
| 8. sent | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. d |
| 2. d | 12. c |
| 3. b | 13. b |
| 4. a | 14. a |
| 5. b | 15. b |
| 6. a | 16. d |
| 7. d | 17. c |
| 8. a | 18. a |
| 9. a | 19. c |
| 10. c | 20. a |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. a |
| 2. a | 12. c |
| 3. b | 13. a |
| 4. c | 14. c |
| 5. b | 15. d |
| 6. b | 16. a |
| 7. d | 17. a |
| 8. c | 18. d |
| 9. c | 19. a |
| 10. b | 20. d |

UNIT 17 (page 135)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. rarely be | 9. It was in London |
| 2. what George thought | 10. lives |
| 3. What | 11. So |
| 4. as | 12. does she |
| 5. it will take | 13. yourself |
| 6. you exercise | 14. Were you |
| 7. Difficult though | 15. does it have |
| 8. aren't I | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. b |
| 2. c | 5. b |
| 3. c | |

PRACTICE (page 138)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 2. the bus leaves / is leaving | 6. does it |
| 3. do you plan | 7. haven't you |
| 4. was it | 8. makes you |
| 5. shall we | |

Exercise B

- No sooner had the aeroplane taken off than the twins started screaming.
- Only when I saw Clive last week did I realise how much weight he has lost.
- Never before had a book moved me so much.
- Little does the public realise that the police work hard to prevent crime, not just to solve cases.
- Rarely do you catch a glimpse of an owl in these woods.
- Under no circumstances may you enter the studio when the red light is on.
- Not only did the weather spoil my holiday, but I was ill too.

Exercise C

- the success of the advertising campaign that the product sold out within a week.
- so many inaccuracies in the report that the newspaper had to print an apology.
- on an astronaut's body are so great that above average physical fitness is required.
- any members of staff wish to take leave this month, they must submit their forms by tomorrow.
- everybody in this country were to contribute one euro, the charity would reach its target.
- we known the truth, we would never have trusted him with our money.
- was because we were reading the map upside down that we got lost.
- was (only) when she took her sunglasses off that I realised who she was.
- the fence sat a boy looking lost and alone.
- we did was go for a meal at our local Italian restaurant.
- though we were, we refused to give up the search.

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 2. itself | 6. What |
| 3. himself / herself | 7. as / though |
| 4. as | 8. Wherever |
| 5. do | |

Exercise E

- a scientist might
are they
would the resulting animal be
would they
should experiments like this be allowed
will anything

EXAM PRACTICE (page 140)

Exercise A

- no circumstances will Jane ever forgive
- do students get / have permission to leave
- was Harry's desire for
- did I have any intention of
- as the sea was
- draws me to this resort
- has taken out is
- the book had come out was

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. only | 9. do |
| 2. but | 10. why |
| 3. where | 11. himself |
| 4. So | 12. Is |
| 5. these | 13. not |
| 6. it | 14. on |
| 7. over | 15. should |
| 8. will | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. d | 7. b |
| 2. b | 8. b |
| 3. a | 9. d |
| 4. b | 10. a |
| 5. c | 11. c |
| 6. a | 12. a |

UNIT 18 (page 142)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------|------|
| 1. 1. c | 3. b |
| 2. d | 4. a |
| 2. 1. a | 4. d |
| 2. b | 5. c |
| 3. e | |
| 3. 1. b | |
| 2. c | |
| 3. a | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. f | 6. i |
| 3. g | 7. e |
| 4. a | 8. b |
| 5. d | 9. h |

Exercise C

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. b | 7. b |
| 2. b | 5. a | 8. b |
| 3. a | 6. a | 9. b |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 143)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. 2. snow | 6. land |
| 3. sun | 7. heat |
| 4. wind | 8. thunder |
| 5. water | 9. rain |
| 2. 2. rainfall | 6. thunderstorm |
| 3. snowflake | 7. sunlight / sunshine |
| 4. heatwave | 8. landslide |
| 5. waterfront | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. 2. talented | 6. sensitive |
| 3. shocked | 7. certain |
| 4. suitable | 8. confident |
| 5. anxious | |
| 2. 2. curious | 6. isolated |
| 3. familiar | 7. amazed |
| 4. beneficial | 8. deficient |
| 5. famous | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|--|--------------|
| 1. 2. wade | 4. dash |
| 3. march | 5. stroll |
| 2. possible answers | |
| 2. I would have to trudge / plod through the snow. | |
| 3. I might stagger. | |
| 4. I would stroll through / wander around the town. | |
| 5. I would stride down the street. | |
| 6. I would clamber up the slope / scramble up the hill. | |
| 7. I'd have to step carefully to avoid falling in the river. | |
| 8. I might shuffle forward slowly. | |
| 9. I'd probably dawdle on the way there. | |
| 3. 2. wade | 5. wandering |
| 3. trudged | 6. plodded |
| 4. clambering / scrambling | 7. tiptoe |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2. ground | 7. grounds |
| 3. hails | 8. plain |
| 4. grounded | 9. hailed |
| 5. ground | 10. hail |
| 6. plain | 11. grounds |

Exercise E

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. humid | 5. a. descent |
| b. damp | b. decent |
| c. soaking | c. descendant |
| 2. a. overcast | 6. a. aversion |
| b. overboard | b. diversion |
| c. overseas | c. conversion |
| 3. a. draught | 7. a. lookout |
| b. flow | b. outlook |
| c. current | c. overview |
| 4. a. harsh | |
| b. austere | |
| c. strict | |

Exercise F

1. **-ous:** cautious, courageous, dangerous, disastrous, glorious, harmonious, hazardous, humorous, infectious, luxurious, mountainous, mysterious, numerous, perilous, prosperous, rebellious
- ly:** costly, daily, friendly, hourly, lively, monthly, timely, weekly, yearly
- y:** breezy, bulky, chilly, choosy, dirty, foggy, gloomy, grassy, guilty, healthy, hilly, icy, messy, rainy, risky, rocky, salty, sunny, tasty, trendy, wealthy, windy
2. 1. gloomy / hilly / mountainous / rocky
2. ambitious / dangerous / hazardous / perilous / risky
3. daily / monthly / weekly
4. friendly / lively / trendy
5. chilly / foggy / gloomy / icy / rainy / windy

Exercise G

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. deluge + | pour + |
| drop - | sea + |
| drown + | storm + |
| dry - | torrent + |
| flood + | trickle - |
| 2. 1. showered | 4. wade |
| 2. flooding | 5. pour |
| 3. torrents | 6. sea |
| 3. 2. arrived for sale in large numbers | |
| 3. small number of people coming and going | |
| 4. stopped, run out | |
| 5. a small amount compared to what is needed | |
| 6. overwhelmed with work | |
| 7. increase (in) | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. g | 7. a |
| 3. f | 8. h |
| 4. j | 9. b |
| 5. i | 10. e |
| 6. c | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 146)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. were present at | |
| 2. on the grounds that | |
| 3. a flood of applications / applicants | |
| 4. of the railway was hailed as | |
| 5. aversion to heights is | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. B |
| 2. B | 8. D |
| 3. A | 9. A |
| 4. C | 10. D |
| 5. B | 11. C |
| 6. C | 12. A |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. environmentalists | 6. situated |
| 2. reduction | 7. windmills |
| 3. harmful | 8. optimistic |
| 4. sunlight | 9. costly |
| 5. alternative | 10. conservation |

REVIEW 9 (page 148)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. is | 9. if |
| 2. called | 10. for |
| 3. how | 11. What |
| 4. to | 12. only |
| 5. terms | 13. this |
| 6. much | 14. where |
| 7. on | 15. away |
| 8. but | |

Exercise B

1. run
2. peak
3. hardly
4. floods
5. grounds
6. wander

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 11. a |
| 2. b | 12. b |
| 3. a | 13. a |
| 4. d | 14. c |
| 5. c | 15. b |
| 6. a | 16. d |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. d | 18. c |
| 9. b | 19. d |
| 10. a | 20. c |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. b |
| 2. c | 12. a |
| 3. c | 13. c |
| 4. b | 14. b |
| 5. c | 15. c |
| 6. a | 16. a |
| 7. b | 17. b |
| 8. d | 18. d |
| 9. b | 19. c |
| 10. a | 20. a |

UNIT 19 (page 151)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

1. which
2. who
3. that
4. who
5. which
6. why
7. whose
8. to which
9. whom
10. –
11. where
12. when
13. which
14. who

Exercise B

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. a

PRACTICE (page 154)

Exercise A

2. Minoan Crete was a prosperous civilisation which / that was probably destroyed by a tidal wave.
3. The bank charged me £50, which was unfair.
4. The school is run by a Mrs Denton, whose husband was once mayor.
5. We visited the house where / in which my grandfather had been born.
6. The detectives finally caught up with the suspect for whom they had been searching for months.
7. Over 40 species of spiders, many of which are poisonous, live in this region.
8. The letter was addressed to a girl who doesn't live here anymore.

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. several of which | 6. wherever |
| 2. in which case | 7. a number of whom |
| 3. most of whose | 8. in spite of which |
| 4. both of whom | 9. about which |
| 5. at which time | 10. on top of which |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2. which is | 6. that was |
| 3. that have been | 7. which |
| 4. that was | 8. which has been |
| 5. who is | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. whom | 5. whatever |
| 2. point | 6. of |
| 3. why / when | 7. whose |
| 4. when | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. Consumed | 5. Criticised |
| 2. owning | 6. submitting |
| 3. flooding | 7. discussing |
| 4. Having packed | 8. washed |

Exercise F

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. known | |
| 2. Carrying | |
| 3. Employed | |
| 4. making | |
| 5. Having studied | |
| 6. Seeing | |
| 7. being instructed | |
| 8. taking | |
| 9. having been excluded / (being) excluded | |
| 10. produced | |

TEXT FEATURES (page 156)

Exercise A

1. stare : step
2. male : post
3. whole : opening
4. sole, plane : spirit / simple
5. pair : fruit
6. keys, there : docks / belonging to them
7. right, see : put words on paper / ocean
8. piece, warn : tranquility / past participle of wear

Exercise B

- 2. ?
 - 3. .
 - 4. !
 - 5. .
 - 6. ?

Exercise C

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 2. months | 7. (wooden) cabins |
| 3. a holiday | 8. tales |
| 4. Brits | 9. cabins |
| 5. cabin | 10. features |
| 6. cabin | 11. (bathroom) facilities |

can leave out:

2. ones	5. one	6. one	10. ones
---------	--------	--------	----------

can leave out:

EXAM PRACTICE (page 157)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. which | 9. for |
| 2. their | 10. that |
| 3. who | 11. rather |
| 4. Having | 12. are |
| 5. where | 13. what |
| 6. such | 14. whenever / if |
| 7. as / because / since | 15. those |
| 8. of | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. d | 5. a |
| 2. d | 6. c |
| 3. c | 7. d |
| 4. b | 8. a |

UNIT 20 (page 158)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. arch | 5. dome |
| 2. fabric | 6. pottery |
| 3. column | 7. statue |
| 4. lens | |

Exercise B

- | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|
| 2. | f | 6. | b |
| 3. | a | 7. | d |
| 4. | g | 8. | h |
| 5. | e | | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. canvas | 6. easel |
| 2. inspiration | 7. palette |
| 3. sketching | 8. shade |
| 4. erase | 9. masterpiece |
| 5. landscape | 10. flair |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 159)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 2. brush up on | 7. pick up |
| 3. touched up | 8. mixed up |
| 4. ease up on | 9. wind up |
| 5. cover up | 10. follow up |
| 6. hung up | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 2. mount | 7. bear |
| 3. restore | 8. read |
| 4. catch | 9. show |
| 5. focus | 10. pose |
| 6. draw | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. commission | 4. a. contemptuous |
| b. omission | b. contemporary |
| c. mission | c. temporary |
| 2. a. likeness | 5. a. demonstrated |
| b. likewise | b. represents |
| c. likelihood | c. indicate |
| 3. a. tangible | 6. a. ruins |
| b. visible | b. remainder |
| c. audible | c. leftovers |

Exercise D

Exercise E

1. 1. rectangular 5. rough
 2. oval 6. cylinder
 3. jagged 7. cube
 4. vertical

2. suggested answers

 1. I've got an oval clock, a square cushion and smooth sheets with vertical stripes.
 2. I draw spirals and circular shapes; sometimes I add diagonal lines.

Exercise F

- | | | |
|----|--------------|-------------|
| 1. | black – D | ray – L |
| | bleak – D | rosy – L |
| | brighten – L | shadow – D |
| | darken – D | shine – L |
| | gloomy – D | twinkle – L |
| | radiant – L | |

2. 1. b 5. b
2. a 6. a
3. a 7. b
4. b

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. f | 7. b |
| 3. h | 8. d |
| 4. e | 9. j |
| 5. a | 10. i |
| 6. g | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. going strong | 6. goes to show |
| 2. doesn't go with | 7. to go |
| 3. get going | 8. have a go |
| 4. going cheap | 9. all go |
| 5. went on and on | 10. making a go of |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 163)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. a |
| 2. a | 5. a |
| 3. c | 6. a |

Exercise B

1. light
2. picture
3. shape
4. drew
5. bright

Exercise C

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. B |
| 2. A | 8. A |
| 3. C | 9. D |
| 4. B | 10. A |
| 5. A | 11. C |
| 6. C | 12. D |

Exercise D

1. look on the bright side
2. bears a strong / striking resemblance to
3. caught a glimpse of Madonna
4. take an interest in
5. you don't mix up
6. goes to show

REVIEW 10 (page 165)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. technically | 6. characterised |
| 2. sculptures | 7. various |
| 3. theatrical | 8. brightened |
| 4. originality | 9. collaboration |
| 5. influential | 10. inspiration |

Exercise B

1. properties, neither of which
2. having read the script, I had
3. after moving away did Amy
4. is still drawing up
5. taken to restore consumers' confidence
6. saw Graham in a new light
7. to make a go of
8. were engrossed in
9. gave me her word that
10. poses a problem for

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 11. b |
| 2. a | 12. a |
| 3. b | 13. d |
| 4. c | 14. c |
| 5. d | 15. a |
| 6. c | 16. b |
| 7. a | 17. a |
| 8. b | 18. c |
| 9. d | 19. b |
| 10. b | 20. d |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. c |
| 2. c | 12. b |
| 3. a | 13. c |
| 4. a | 14. b |
| 5. d | 15. b |
| 6. b | 16. c |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. a | 18. c |
| 9. c | 19. d |
| 10. a | 20. a |

UNIT 21 (page 168)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 5. b |
| 2. b | 6. a |
| 3. b | 7. b |
| 4. a | 8. b |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. In spite of | 7. As |
| 2. Furthermore | 8. except |
| 3. so that | 9. owing to |
| 4. as well as | 10. so |
| 5. yet | 11. First of all |
| 6. In contrast to | 12. namely |

PRACTICE (page 171)

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. 2. so as not to | 4. that is |
| 3. However | 5. Contrary to |
| 2. 1. Not only | 3. On top of that |
| 2. also | 4. Due to |
| 3. 1. despite | 3. Still |
| 2. So | 4. instead of |

Exercise B

1. The bank increased its interest rate so that it would attract more customers.
2. Contrary to popular belief, cutting out a meal won't help you lose weight.
Although people believe that cutting out a meal will help them lose weight, it won't.
3. Unlike Tina, who found the play difficult to follow, I loved every minute of it.
Tina found the play difficult to follow, whereas I loved every minute of it.
4. As a result of installing electronic timekeeping systems, the train company improved punctuality.
The train company installed electronic timekeeping systems and in this way, they improved punctuality.

5. The proposal the architect submitted was so impressive / So impressive was the architect's proposal that she was awarded the commission. The architect submitted such an impressive proposal that she was awarded the commission.
6. No announcement about the epidemic was made, lest we cause panic. No announcement about the epidemic was made for fear of causing panic.

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 2. as / though | 6. Apart |
| 3. Even | 7. result |
| 4. contrary | 8. more |
| 5. all | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 5. b |
| 2. b | 6. a |
| 3. b | 7. a |
| 4. a | 8. b |

Exercise E

1. You know I would be willing to help with whatever problem you are having.
2. All the hotels were full so we stayed at a guesthouse instead.
3. Given that she is only five years old, her drawings are extremely good.
4. The plot lacks originality in places; nevertheless, the book is worth reading.
5. The board met to discuss two issues, namely staff salaries and flexible working hours.
6. The border is / was temporarily closed because of the conflict between the two countries.

EXAM PRACTICE (page 173)

Exercise A

1. except for Tom who showed no
2. fear of heights was due to
3. addition to being full of iron
4. such a (close) resemblance to
5. up his mistake for fear
6. no matter how unpleasant the
7. thought it is raining
8. despite having been seated

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. d | 6. b |
| 2. c | 7. b |
| 3. a | 8. b |
| 4. a | 9. c |
| 5. c | 10. c |

UNIT 22 (page 174)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. intake | 6. square meal |
| 2. culinary | 7. intolerance |
| 3. feast | 8. substitute |
| 4. mouth-watering | 9. wean |
| 5. polish off | 10. puree, mash up |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. crockery | 4. sieve |
| 2. cutlery | 5. frying pan |
| 3. saucepan | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 2. pinch | 7. stir |
| 3. Peel | 8. dough |
| 4. simmer | 9. Grease |
| 5. Drain | 10. pastry |
| 6. consistency | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. poultry | 6. calories |
| 2. food poisoning | 7. cholesterol |
| 3. processed | 8. food chain |
| 4. nutritious | 9. genetically modified |
| 5. fattening | 10. organic |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 175)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 2. pork | 7. wheat |
| 3. craving | 8. greedy |
| 4. spill | 9. casserole |
| 5. starve | 10. pulses |
| 6. staple | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 2. for | 12. with |
| 3. on | 13. in |
| 4. to | 14. for |
| 5. to | 15. for |
| 6. on | 16. by |
| 7. into | 17. in |
| 8. of | 18. in |
| 9. to | 19. in |
| 10. in | 20. with |
| 11. for | |

Exercise C

1. **-ment:** amazement, assessment, commitment, development, encouragement, equipment, improvement, investment, involvement, judgement, movement, replacement, requirement
2. **-ness:** awareness, bitterness, closeness, eagerness, effectiveness, foolishness, likeness, shyness, sweetness, tiredness, weakness, willingness
3. **-ful:** cupful, handful, houseful, spoonful
4. **-ure:** architecture, closure, departure, exposure, failure, literature, pleasure, pressure, seizure

2. 1. cupfuls / handfuls / spoonfuls
2. equipment / investment
3. architecture / literature
4. shyness / tiredness
5. closure / failure

Exercise D

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. 2. quench | 4. whet |
| 3. swallow | 5. watch |
2. Julie is weaning her baby onto solid food.
 3. Brad is watching his weight.
 4. Sue quenched her thirst.
 5. A taste of the icing on the cake whetted Ann's appetite for more.

Exercise E

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 2. fed | 5. eat |
| 3. heat | 6. splashed |
| 4. stirred | |

Exercise F

1. **small amount:** a pinch of, a drop of, a trace of, a touch of, meagre
large amount: tons of, loads of, abundant, ample, vast
small number: a minority of
large number: dozens of, loads of, innumerable, a majority of, countless, vast, tons of
small size: minuscule, minute
large size: gigantic, vast, immense

suggested answers

2. 2. loads of / a drop of oil
3. minute / minuscule
4. loads of / a vast amount of meat
5. a pinch of salt / pepper

3. 2. speck 4. touch
3. drop 5. pinch

Exercise G

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | a. dripped
b. splashing
c. dropped | 5. a. preservatives
b. conservative
c. addition |
| 2. | a. pour
b. leaking
c. spilled | 6. a. legible
b. eligible
c. edible |
| 3. | a. cookery
b. cook
c. cooker | 7. a. unlike
b. dissimilar
c. apart |
| 4. | a. spread
b. sprinkled
c. squeezing | |

Exercise H

1. 2. W
a. F b. F

3. W
a. T b. T

4. W
a. F b. T

5. F
a. T b. F

2. 1. stay afloat 4. took a large bite
2. piece of the pie 5. down the drain
3. eats into

Exercise 1

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. f | 6. g |
| 3. a | 7. h |
| 4. c | 8. b |
| 5. d | |

Exercise - I

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2. e | 6. a |
| 3. b | 7. c |
| 4. g | 8. f |
| 5. h | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 179)

Exercise A

1. whetted Rita's appetite for
 2. have a bite to eat
 3. has been transformed into
 4. are spoilt for choice
 5. put Ray in a quandary
 6. eats into my salary

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. D |
| 2. A | 8. B |
| 3. C | 9. A |
| 4. D | 10. D |
| 5. B | 11. C |
| 6. A | 12. D |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. majority | 6. illness |
| 2. encouragement | 7. sensibly |
| 3. disorders | 8. competition |
| 4. handful | 9. nutritionists |
| 5. desirable | 10. contents |

REVIEW 11 (page 181)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. B |
| 2. C | 8. B |
| 3. D | 9. C |
| 4. B | 10. A |
| 5. A | 11. D |
| 6. D | 12. C |

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------|----------|
| 1. to | 9. order |
| 2. have | 10. One |
| 3. last / past | 11. were |
| 4. more | 12. not |
| 5. be | 13. the |
| 6. so | 14. if |
| 7. in | 15. No |
| 8. are | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. d |
| 2. a | 12. d |
| 3. b | 13. d |
| 4. c | 14. a |
| 5. a | 15. b |
| 6. d | 16. a |
| 7. b | 17. b |
| 8. d | 18. c |
| 9. c | 19. d |
| 10. d | 20. a |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 11. b |
| 2. a | 12. d |
| 3. c | 13. b |
| 4. c | 14. a |
| 5. b | 15. d |
| 6. c | 16. b |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. a | 18. b |
| 9. d | 19. b |
| 10. c | 20. b |

UNIT 23 (page 184)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------|
| 1. systematic | 9. the blind |
| 2. travel | 10. more |
| 3. ten-mile | 11. sleeping |
| 4. absolutely | 12. by far |
| 5. necessary | 13. freely |
| 6. hard | 14. much |
| 7. bitter | 15. as |
| 8. a software engineer | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. a |
| 2. b | 5. a |
| 3. b | |

PRACTICE (page 187)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 2. further | 6. straight |
| 3. easily | 7. sillier |
| 4. best-looking | 8. highest-paid /
most highly paid |
| 5. cheaper | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 2. carefully planned | 6. brilliantly written |
| 3. curly-haired | 7. partly subsidised |
| 4. hard-working | 8. newly constructed |
| 5. 24-hour | |

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. well worth | 5. not so much |
| 2. conveniently located | 6. infinitely superior |
| 3. a bit less | 7. just as |
| 4. slightly more | 8. so large an |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| 1. far | 6. by far |
| 2. hardly | 7. incredibly |
| 3. much | 8. just |
| 4. even | 9. clearly |
| 5. more | 10. so |

Exercise E

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. b | 6. d |
| 2. c | 7. c |
| 3. a | 8. d |
| 4. d | 9. b |
| 5. b | 10. c |

Exercise F

1. 2. Otherwise – if you don't keep them in a safe place
 3. the latter – the skiing trip
 4. Likewise – in a similar way to most department stores
 5. the latter – the birds
 6. beforehand – before we made the journey
2. 1. In other words
 2. the latter
 3. despite
 4. thereby

EXAM PRACTICE (page 190)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. likely | 9. less |
| 2. those | 10. well |
| 3. It | 11. any |
| 4. in | 12. often |
| 5. wide | 13. by |
| 6. have | 14. there |
| 7. most | 15. a |
| 8. were | |

Exercise B

1. as one of the happiest days
2. seem quite as confident as she
3. is not so much attractive as
4. has been much less snow than
5. the person responsible for organising
6. easily the most challenging mountain
7. to become more and more difficult
8. (a) very stressful (one) for

UNIT 24 (page 191)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 7. a |
| 2. b | 8. b |
| 3. a | 9. a |
| 4. a | 10. a |
| 5. a | 11. a |
| 6. b | 12. b |

Exercise B

1. middle school, junior high school
2. Key Stage
3. freshman
4. sophomore
5. junior
6. senior
7. elementary school, primary school
8. graduation
9. A-levels
10. GCSE
11. high school
12. kindergarten, nursery school
13. tertiary education

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 192)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2. f | 7. d |
| 3. h | 8. i |
| 4. j | 9. a |
| 5. b | 10. e |
| 6. g | |

Exercise B

1. 2. more than normal
3. below
4. against
5. between
6. half
7. two
8. single
9. many
10. after
11. outside
12. opposite

2. 2. post / anti-war
 3. subtitles
 4. semi / subconscious
 5. prehistoric
 6. biannual
 7. hypermarket
 8. interpersonal
 9. counter / anticlockwise
10. hypersensitive
 11. anticlimax
 12. countermeasure
 13. semi-finals
 14. inter / multinational
 15. extraordinary
 16. extraterrestrial

3. 2. semi-finals
 3. subtitles
 4. Biannual
 5. anticlockwise / counterclockwise
 6. multinational
 7. extraterrestrial
 8. anticlimax

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 1. cons | 4. but |
| 2. weaknesses | 5. minuses |
| 3. curse | 6. drawbacks |
| 2. aid + | enhance + |
| ameliorate + | have an adverse effect - |
| be conducive to + | impair - |
| benefit (from) + | ruin - |
| detract from - | spoil - |

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 2. ideally | 6. adversely |
| 3. merely | 7. academically |
| 4. actually | 8. virtually |
| 5. intensively | |

Exercise E

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 2. grade | 8. degree |
| 3. marked | 9. terms |
| 4. terms | 10. mark |
| 5. terms | 11. terms |
| 6. mark | 12. grade |
| 7. marked / graded | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. put your finger on - H | under no illusions - S |
| open your eyes - S | handle - H |
| transparent - S | |
| more | |
| 2. 2. blind (S) | 5. grips (H) |
| 3. grasped (H) | 6. insight (S) |
| 4. concepts (H) | |

Exercise G

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 2. evaluate | 7. privileged |
| 3. lenient | 8. compulsory |
| 4. motivation | 9. tuition |
| 5. truancy | 10. facilitate |
| 6. cram | |

Exercise H

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 2. education | 7. fees |
| 3. exam | 8. research |
| 4. school | 9. student |
| 5. learning | 10. prodigy |
| 6. tutor | |

Exercise I

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2. dropped out of | 7. dragged on |
| 3. count towards | 8. dumbed down |
| 4. clamp down on | 9. messing around |
| 5. sucking up to | 10. picked up |
| 6. kick out | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 195)

Exercise A

1. may / might have an adverse effect on
2. it difficult to come to terms
3. get to grips with
4. needed to discover the extent of
5. clamping down on
6. take a close look at

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. C |
| 2. A | 8. D |
| 3. B | 9. B |
| 4. D | 10. B |
| 5. B | 11. A |
| 6. C | 12. D |

Exercise C

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. tuition | 6. conclusion |
| 2. childhood | 7. necessarily |
| 3. assessment | 8. insight |
| 4. failure | 9. constructive |
| 5. education | 10. academically |

REVIEW 12 (page 197)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. at | 9. himself |
| 2. capable | 10. play |
| 3. such | 11. more |
| 4. like | 12. later |
| 5. the | 13. dropped |
| 6. from | 14. towards |
| 7. despite | 15. no |
| 8. on | |

Exercise B

1. dropped
2. further
3. put
4. terms
5. course
6. go

Exercise C

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. c |
| 2. d | 12. a |
| 3. a | 13. d |
| 4. c | 14. d |
| 5. d | 15. b |
| 6. b | 16. c |
| 7. c | 17. a |
| 8. a | 18. b |
| 9. d | 19. d |
| 10. b | 20. b |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 11. b |
| 2. b | 12. d |
| 3. d | 13. c |
| 4. c | 14. a |
| 5. c | 15. c |
| 6. c | 16. b |
| 7. b | 17. b |
| 8. b | 18. a |
| 9. b | 19. b |
| 10. a | 20. c |

UNIT 25 (page 200)

WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Exercise A

- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| 1. an | 9. a |
| 2. The | 10. great |
| 3. – | 11. Diabetes is |
| 4. a | 12. Plenty |
| 5. the | 13. – |
| 6. fewer | 14. the |
| 7. whole | 15. some |
| 8. Neither | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. b |
| 2. b | 5. b |
| 3. b | |

PRACTICE (page 204)

Exercise A

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. ✓ | 4. X - are |
| 2. ✓ | 5. ✓ |
| 3. X - want | 6. ✓ |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. the, a, –, – | 5. the / a, –, – |
| 2. The, a, the, the | 6. an, the |
| 3. –, the, –, –, a, the | 7. the, –, – / the, the |
| 4. The, a, the / – | 8. –, –, – |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| The iguana is an | the marine |
| but a few | the Galapagos Islands |
| the pet trade | the only lizard |
| by an enemy | lives in the sea |
| The most | |

Exercise D

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. piece / bit | 7. couple |
| 2. each | 8. Any / A |
| 3. few | 9. too |
| 4. amount / deal | 10. whole / entire |
| 5. a | 11. the |
| 6. either | 12. the |

Exercise E

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. 1. any | 4. a |
| 2. a little | 5. the whole |
| 3. a few | |
| 2. 1. many | |
| 2. majority | |
| 3. entire | |

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| 3. 1. several | 3. some |
| 2. a lot of | 4. – |

Exercise F

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 2. nature is getting | |
| 3. the experiences, shape | |
| 4. damage was done | |
| 5. The nature, determines | |
| 6. travels, are | |
| 7. Damages were awarded | |
| 8. travel broadens | |
| 9. Experience is required | |
| 10. businesses are facing | |

EXAM PRACTICE (page 206)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. few | 9. his |
| 2. by | 10. which |
| 3. to | 11. also |
| 4. as | 12. who |
| 5. at | 13. the |
| 6. same | 14. One |
| 7. In | 15. still |
| 8. a | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. with great difficulty that we | |
| 2. spent the entire holiday complaining | |
| 3. are clamping down on | |
| 4. has been (very) little improvement in | |
| 5. student has benefited from | |
| 6. is what keeps me in | |
| 7. have the courage to go | |
| 8. has a dislike of | |

UNIT 26 (page 207)

TOPIC VOCABULARY

Exercise A

- | | |
|--------------------|------------|
| 1. current account | 6. grant |
| 2. withdrawal | 7. loan |
| 3. budgeting | 8. voucher |
| 4. income | 9. redeem |
| 5. overdraft | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. incentive scheme | 7. window shopping |
| 2. vending machine | 8. market research |
| 3. interest-free credit | 9. bargain hunting |
| 4. brand loyalty | 10. junk mail |
| 5. chain store | 11. mail order |
| 6. retail therapy | 12. inflation rate |

BOOST YOUR VOCABULARY (page 208)

Exercise A

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. reasonable | 4. instalments |
| 2. prosperous | 5. currency |
| 3. expenditure | 6. shares |

Exercise B

- | | |
|-------|--------------|
| 1. on | 5. on |
| 2. at | 6. on / with |
| 3. on | 7. for |
| 4. of | 8. on / upon |

Exercise C

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. laid | 7. round |
| 2. tailing | 8. rip |
| 3. selling | 9. made |
| 4. come | 10. taken |
| 5. paid | 11. wrote |
| 6. set | 12. put |

Exercise D

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 2. house | 6. acquiring |
| 3. absorb and retain | 7. obtain |
| 4. seized | 8. secure |
| 5. receive | 9. purchased |

Exercise E

1. **-ise:** categorise, characterise, commercialise, dramatise, economise, equalise, globalise, humanise, internalise, localise, memorise, moralise, neutralise, personalised, popularise, publicise, specialise, stabilise, subsidise, symbolise

-ify: diversify, exemplify, falsify, gratify, horrify, identify, intensify, mystify, personify, simplify, specify, typify

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 2. 2. specialise | 7. specify |
| 3. economise | 8. intensify |
| 4. publicise | 9. authorised |
| 5. clarify | 10. diversified |
| 6. simplified | |

Exercise F

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. no | 5. a grant |
| 2. a lot | 6. in debt |
| 3. discount | 7. lucrative |
| 4. economic | 8. splash out |

Exercise G

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. a |
| 2. a | 5. a |
| 3. b | |

Exercise H

1. branch
 2. charge
 3. ban
 4. figure
 5. credit
 6. commission
 7. capital
 8. brand

Exercise 1

2. take my custom elsewhere
 3. taken account of
 4. takings
 5. took out a loan
 6. made a fortune
 7. making the most of
 8. make ends meet
 9. make do
 10. take it lying down

EXAM PRACTICE (page 211)

Exercise A

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. B |
| 2. D | 8. D |
| 3. D | 9. A |
| 4. B | 10. A |
| 5. C | 11. A |
| 6. C | 12. B |

Exercise B

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. identity | 6. consumers |
| 2. popularising | 7. competitive |
| 3. advertising | 8. intensifying |
| 4. unintentionally | 9. falsifying |
| 5. imitation | 10. vendors |

Exercise C

1. given to you / issued on production
 2. taken their custom elsewhere because
 3. being temporarily housed
 4. get reduced rates in our shop
 5. authorisation is needed / required

REVIEW 13 (page 213)

Exercise A

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| 1. in | 9. is |
| 2. when / as | 10. how |
| 3. themselves | 11. to |
| 4. many | 12. of |
| 5. about | 13. few |
| 6. on | 14. a |
| 7. little | 15. the |
| 8. no | |

Exercise B

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. retirement | 6. specifying |
| 2. mystified | 7. invaluable |
| 3. savings | 8. options |
| 4. simplify | 9. security |
| 5. living | 10. economic |

Exercise C

- | | | | |
|-----|---|-----|---|
| 1. | a | 11. | c |
| 2. | c | 12. | d |
| 3. | c | 13. | a |
| 4. | a | 14. | c |
| 5. | b | 15. | d |
| 6. | a | 16. | b |
| 7. | d | 17. | a |
| 8. | d | 18. | d |
| 9. | b | 19. | d |
| 10. | d | 20. | a |

Exercise D

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 11. d |
| 2. a | 12. c |
| 3. c | 13. b |
| 4. b | 14. d |
| 5. a | 15. b |
| 6. b | 16. b |
| 7. c | 17. b |
| 8. a | 18. b |
| 9. b | 19. c |
| 10. b | 20. a |